

# RUBY BY EXAMPLE

CONCEPTS AND CODE

KEVIN C. BAIRD



```
er/bin/env ruby  
s Array  
  
ef matching_members(&some_block)  
find_all(&some_block)  
d  
  
atching_compound_members  
array.map do |some_block|  
members(&
```





## **RUBY BY EXAMPLE**



# **RUBY BY EXAMPLE**

## **Concepts and Code**

**by Kevin C. Baird**



**NO STARCH  
PRESS**

San Francisco

**RUBY BY EXAMPLE.** Copyright © 2007 by Kevin C. Baird.

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner and the publisher.



Printed on recycled paper in the United States of America

11 10 09 08 07 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

ISBN-10: 1-59327-148-4

ISBN-13: 978-1-59327-148-0

Publisher: William Pollock

Production Editor: Elizabeth Campbell

Cover and Interior Design: Octopod Studios

Developmental Editor: Tyler Ortman

Technical Reviewer: Pat Eyster

Copyeditor: Megan Dunchak

Composers: Christina Samuelli and Riley Hoffman

Proofreader: Publication Services, Inc.

Indexer: Nancy Guenther

For information on book distributors or translations, please contact No Starch Press, Inc. directly:

No Starch Press, Inc.

555 De Haro Street, Suite 250, San Francisco, CA 94107

phone: 415.863.9900; fax: 415.863.9950; info@nostarch.com; www.nostarch.com

*Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data*

Baird, Kevin C.

Ruby by example : concepts and code / Kevin C. Baird.

p. cm.

Includes index.

ISBN-13: 978-1-59327-148-0

ISBN-10: 1-59327-148-4

1. Object-oriented programming (Computer science) 2. Ruby (Computer program language) I. Title.

QA76.64.B27 2007

005.1'17--dc22

2007018653

No Starch Press and the No Starch Press logo are registered trademarks of No Starch Press, Inc. Other product and company names mentioned herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners. Rather than use a trademark symbol with every occurrence of a trademarked name, we are using the names only in an editorial fashion and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark.

The information in this book is distributed on an "As Is" basis, without warranty. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this work, neither the author nor No Starch Press, Inc. shall have any liability to any person or entity with respect to any loss or damage caused or alleged to be caused directly or indirectly by the information contained in it.

This book is dedicated to my parents, who bought  
the first computer I ever programmed.





# BRIEF CONTENTS

Acknowledgments .....	xvii
Introduction: What Is Ruby? .....	xix
Chapter 1: Interactive Ruby and the Ruby Environment .....	1
Chapter 2: Amusements and Simple Utilities .....	13
Chapter 3: Programmer Utilities .....	33
Chapter 4: Text Manipulation .....	51
Chapter 5: Number Utilities .....	71
Chapter 6: Functionalism with Blocks and Procs .....	99
Chapter 7: Using, Optimizing, and Testing Functional Techniques .....	121
Chapter 8: HTML and XML Tools .....	141
Chapter 9: More Complex Utilities and Tricks, Part I .....	161
Chapter 10: More Complex Utilities and Tricks, Part II .....	185
Chapter 11: CGI and the Web .....	205
Chapter 12: RubyGems and Rails Preparation .....	223
Chapter 13: A Simple Rails Project .....	237
Appendix: How Does Ruby Compare to Other Languages? .....	261
Index .....	267



# CONTENTS IN DETAIL

<b>ACKNOWLEDGMENTS</b>	<b>xvii</b>
------------------------	-------------

<b>INTRODUCTION: WHAT IS RUBY?</b>	<b>xix</b>
------------------------------------	------------

Acquiring and Configuring Ruby .....	xx
On a Unix or Unix-like System .....	xx
On a Windows System .....	xxi
Motivations for the Book .....	xxi
Conventions .....	xxii
Summary of Chapters .....	xxii

## 1

<b>INTERACTIVE RUBY AND THE RUBY ENVIRONMENT</b>	<b>1</b>
--	----------

Starting irb .....	2
Using irb .....	2
Expressions .....	2
Everything Is an Object .....	2
Integers, Fixnums, and Bignums .....	3
Addition, Concatenation, and Exceptions .....	4
Casting .....	4
Arrays .....	5
Booleans .....	6
Flow Control .....	6
Methods .....	8
Variables .....	9
Constants .....	10
Using the Ruby Interpreter and Environment .....	10

## 2

<b>AMUSEMENTS AND SIMPLE UTILITIES</b>	<b>13</b>
--	-----------

#1 Is It Payday? (check_payday.rb) .....	14
The Code .....	14
How It Works .....	14
The Results .....	16
#2 Random Signature Generator (random_sig.rb and random_sig-windows.rb) .....	16
The Code .....	16
How It Works .....	16
Running the Script .....	19
The Results .....	19
Hacking the Script .....	19
#3 The 99 Bottles of Beer Song (99bottles.rb) .....	20
The Code .....	20
How It Works .....	21

Running the Script .....	25
The Results .....	25
#4 Sound File Player (shuffle_play.rb) .....	25
The Code .....	26
How It Works .....	27
Running the Script .....	29
The Results .....	29
Hacking the Script .....	30
Chapter Recap .....	31

### 3

## PROGRAMMER UTILITIES

**33**

#5 What Is Truth? (boolean_golf.rb) .....	33
The Code .....	34
How It Works .....	34
Hacking the Script .....	36
Running the Script .....	36
The Results .....	36
#6 Making a List (array_join.rb) .....	36
The Code .....	37
How It Works .....	37
Running the Script .....	39
Hacking the Script .....	39
#7 Command-Line Interface (uses_cli.rb and simple_cli.rb) .....	39
The Code .....	40
How It Works .....	42
Running the Script .....	44
Hacking the Script .....	45
#8 Palindromes (palindrome.rb and palindrome2.rb) .....	45
The Code .....	45
How It Works .....	46
Hacking the Script .....	46
Running the Script .....	47
The Results .....	48
Chapter Recap .....	49

### 4

## TEXT MANIPULATION

**51**

#9 End-of-Line Conversion (dos2unix.rb) .....	51
The Code .....	52
How It Works .....	52
Running the Script .....	55
The Results .....	56
Hacking the Script .....	56
#10 Showing Line Numbers (line_num.rb) .....	57
The Code .....	57
How It Works .....	57
Running the Script .....	58
The Results .....	58

#11 Wrapping Lines of Text (softwrap.rb)	59
The Code	59
Running the Script	62
The Results	62
Hacking the Script	62
#12 Counting Words in a File (word_count.rb)	62
The Code	63
How It Works	64
Running the Script	64
The Results	64
#13 Word Histogram (most_common_words.rb)	65
The Code	65
How It Works	65
Running the Script	67
The Results	67
Hacking the Script	67
#14 Rotating Characters in a String (rotate.rb)	68
The Code	68
How It Works	68
Running the Script	69
The Results	69
Chapter Recap	70

## 5

<b>NUMBER UTILITIES</b>	<b>71</b>
#15 Computing Powers (power_of.rb)	72
The Code	72
How It Works	73
Running the Script	74
The Results	75
#16 Adding Commas to Numbers (commify.rb)	75
Inheritance	75
Modules	76
The Code	76
How It Works	78
Running the Script	81
The Results	81
#17 Roman Numerals (roman_numeral.rb)	81
The Code	82
How It Works	83
Running the Script	86
The Results	86
Hacking the Script	87
#18 Currency Conversion, Basic (currency_converter1.rb)	87
The Code	88
How It Works	89
Running the Script	90
The Results	90
Hacking the Script	90

#19 Currency Conversion, Advanced (currency_converter2.rb)	90
The Code	91
How It Works	93
Running the Script	97
The Results	97
Hacking the Script	98
Chapter Recap	98

## 6

### **FUNCTIONALISM WITH BLOCKS AND PROCS** **99**

#20 Our First lambda (make_incrementer.rb)	100
The Code	100
How It Works	101
The Results	101
#21 Using Procs for Filtering (matching_members.rb)	102
The Code	102
How It Works	102
Running the Script	103
The Results	103
#22 Using Procs for Compounded Filtering (matching_compound_members.rb)	103
The Code	104
How It Works	105
The Results	107
Hacking the Script	108
#23 Returning Procs as Values (return_proc.rb)	108
The Code	108
The Results	109
How It Works	109
#24 Nesting lambdas	111
The Code	111
How It Works	112
#25 Procs for Text (willow_and_anya.rb)	112
The Code	112
How It Works	115
Running the Script	118
The Results	118
Hacking the Script	119
Chapter Recap	119

## 7

### **USING, OPTIMIZING, AND TESTING FUNCTIONAL TECHNIQUES** **121**

#26 Basic Factorials and Fibonacci (factorial1.rb through fibonacci5.rb)	122
The Code	122
How It Works	123
The Results	123
Hacking the Script	124

#27 Benchmarking and Profiling (tests/test_opts.rb)	128
Benchmarking	128
The Code	128
How It Works	129
Running the Script	130
The Results	130
Profiling	131
Hacking the Script	132
#28 Converting Temperatures (temperature_converter.rb)	132
The Code	132
How It Works	134
The Results	136
Hacking the Script	136
#29 Testing temperature_converter.rb (tests/test_temp_converter.rb)	137
The Code	137
The Results	138
How It Works	139
Hacking the Script	139
Chapter Recap	140

## 8

### HTML AND XML TOOLS

141

#30 Cleaning Up HTML (html_tidy.rb)	141
The Code	142
How It Works	144
Running the Script	146
The Results	147
Hacking the Script	148
#31 Counting Tags (xml_tag_counter.rb)	148
The Code	149
How It Works	150
Running the Script	153
The Results	153
Hacking the Script	153
#32 Extracting Text from XML (xml_text_extractor.rb)	154
The Code	154
How It Works	155
Running the Script	155
The Results	155
Hacking the Script	156
#33 Validating XML (xml_well_formedness_checker.rb)	156
The Code	156
How It Works	157
Running the Script	158
The Results	158
Hacking the Script	158
Chapter Recap	159

## 9

### **MORE COMPLEX UTILITIES AND TRICKS, PART I** **161**

#34 Finding Codes in the Bible or <i>Moby-Dick</i> (els_parser.rb) .....	161
The Code .....	162
How It Works .....	164
Running the Script .....	167
The Results .....	167
Hacking the Script .....	168
#35 Mutating Strings into Weasels (methinks.rb) .....	168
The Code .....	168
How It Works .....	171
Running the Script .....	174
The Results .....	174
Hacking the Script .....	175
#36 Mutating the Mutation of Strings into Weasels (methinks_meta.rb) .....	176
The Code .....	177
How It Works .....	179
Running the Script .....	181
The Results .....	181
Hacking the Script .....	182
Chapter Recap .....	183

## 10

### **MORE COMPLEX UTILITIES AND TRICKS, PART II** **185**

#37 Overnight DJ (radio_player1.rb) .....	186
The Code .....	186
How It Works .....	187
The Results .....	189
Hacking the Script .....	190
#38 Better Overnight DJ (radio_player2.rb) .....	190
The Code .....	190
How It Works .....	191
The Results .....	192
Hacking the Script .....	193
#39 Numbers by Name (to_lang.rb) .....	193
The Code .....	194
How It Works .....	198
The Results .....	201
Hacking the Script .....	202
#40 Elegant Maps and Injects (symbol.rb) .....	203
The Code .....	203
How It Works .....	203
The Results .....	204
Hacking the Script .....	204
Chapter Recap .....	204



## 11

### CGI AND THE WEB

205

Common Gateway Interface .....	206
Preparation and Installation .....	206
#41 A Simple CGI Script (simple_cgi.rb) .....	207
The Code .....	207
How It Works .....	208
The Results .....	210
Hacking the Script .....	210
#42 Mod Ruby (mod_ruby_demo.rhtml and mod_ruby_demo.conf) .....	211
The Code .....	211
How It Works .....	213
The Results .....	214
Hacking the Script .....	214
#43 CSS Stylesheets, Part I (stylesheet.rcss) .....	215
The Code .....	215
How It Works .....	216
The Results .....	217
Hacking the Script .....	218
#44 CSS Stylesheets, Part II (stylesheet2.rcss) .....	218
The Code .....	218
How It Works .....	220
The Results .....	220
Hacking the Script .....	221
Chapter Recap .....	221

## 12

### RUBYGEMS AND RAILS PREPARATION

223

RubyGems .....	223
Installing RubyGems .....	224
Using RubyGems .....	224
Rails Preparation .....	227
What Is Rails? .....	228
Other Options for Installing Rails .....	228
Databases .....	229
The Structure of a Rails Application .....	229
Chapter Recap .....	235

## 13

### A SIMPLE RAILS PROJECT

237

Creating the Application .....	237
Initial Creation .....	238
Preparing the Database .....	238
Adding Data .....	238
Creating the Model and Controllers .....	240

Dissecting the Application .....	241
Dissecting the Photo Model .....	241
Dissecting the Controllers .....	242
Dissecting the Helpers .....	245
Dissecting the Album Controller's Views .....	251
Dissecting the Feed Controller's images View .....	254
Dissecting the Album Controller's Layout .....	256
Using CSS .....	257
Using the Application .....	257
Learning More About Rails .....	260
Chapter Recap .....	260

## **APPENDIX**

### **HOW DOES RUBY COMPARE TO OTHER LANGUAGES? 261**

C .....	261
Haskell .....	262
Java .....	262
Lisp .....	263
Perl .....	264
PHP .....	264
Python .....	265
Smalltalk .....	265
Summary of Ruby vs. Other Languages .....	266

## **INDEX**

**267**

## **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

The most fervent thanks are due to my wife, Jennifer Cornish, who put up with my focusing too much on this book while she was finishing up her doctoral dissertation.

Thanks to Jon Phillips, Michael Ivancic, Aubrey Keus, and Scott Bliss for helpful comments. Jon Phillips in particular gave very useful technical advice in the early stages of writing, and I think of him as the unofficial early tech reviewer. Thanks are obviously also due to the official tech reviewer Pat Eyler, whose influence made this is a much better book than it would otherwise have been.

Thanks as well to professors Richard Dawkins of Oxford University and Brendan McKay of the Australian National University for their cooperation in my referencing their work.

Finally, thanks to everyone at No Starch Press and to Matz for creating Ruby in the first place.



## INTRODUCTION: WHAT IS RUBY?

Ruby is “a dynamic, open source programming language with a focus on simplicity and productivity. It has an elegant syntax that is natural to read and easy to write.”<sup>1</sup>

It was released in 1995 by Yukihiro “Matz” Matsumoto. It is often described as either a very high-level language or a scripting language, depending on whom you ask. As such, it doesn’t require a programmer to specify the details of how the computer implements your decisions. Like other high-level languages, Ruby is often used in text-processing applications, including an increasing number of web applications. I hope that once you’ve become more acquainted with the language, you’ll agree that it does a good job of getting out of your way and simply letting you get some work done.

Ruby has a very interesting pedigree. Matz himself has said that the two most influential languages on Ruby’s design were Common Lisp and Smalltalk—they were so influential, in fact, that he has jokingly referred to Ruby as *MatzLisp*. On the other hand, some Ruby aficionados stress Ruby’s

---

<sup>1</sup> According to <http://ruby-lang.org>.

similarities with Smalltalk and Perl, as did David Heinemeier Hansson, creator of Rails, in a June 2006 *Linux Journal* interview. Hansson also describes Ruby as “a language for writing beautiful code that makes programmers happy.” I couldn’t agree more.<sup>2</sup>

**NOTE** *If you’re interested in learning more about Ruby’s heritage, see the appendix for a comparison of Ruby to other languages.*

## Acquiring and Configuring Ruby

But enough with the history—let’s set these questions aside and actually get Ruby installed. It’s flexible, expressive, and released under a free software/open source license. (The license is available online at <http://www.ruby-lang.org/en/about/license.txt>.)

### ***On a Unix or Unix-like System***

Users of Unix-like operating systems such as Mac OS X, the BSDs, and GNU/Linux variants have it easy. Many of these systems either come with Ruby pre-installed or make it available as a very convenient package.

If Ruby came pre-installed on your computer, it will probably include the Interactive Ruby Shell (irb) that we’ll use in the next chapter. If you’ve installed Ruby with a package manager, irb may come in a separate package, possibly with a specific version number as a part of the package name.

If your package manager does not include Ruby or if you’d like to use a more up-to-date version than what your package manager offers, you can simply browse to <http://www.ruby-lang.org> and click the Download Ruby link. Download the current stable release (1.8.4 at the time of this writing), which is a .tar.gz file. Then type the following commands as the superuser, also called root. (I’ll assume you’re using version 1.8.4, although it will probably be a later version when you download Ruby.)

---

```
cp ruby-1.8.4.tar.gz /usr/local/src/  
cd /usr/local/src  
tar -xzf ruby-1.8.4.tar.gz  
cd ruby-1.8.4
```

---

Then follow the instructions in the README file. The usual set of commands for installation is as follows.

---

```
./configure  
make  
make install
```

---

<sup>2</sup> For more on Ruby’s ancestry, refer to the Ruby-Talk archives (<http://blade.nagaokaut.ac.jp/cgi-bin/scat.rb/ruby/ruby-talk/179642>) and O’Reilly’s interview with Matz (<http://www.linuxdevcenter.com/pub/a/linux/2001/11/29/ruby.html>).

You should now have a working version of Ruby. You can test this by executing this command:

---

```
ruby --version
```

---

If it reports `ruby 1.8.4 (2005-12-24) [i486-linux]` or whichever version you downloaded and your system, everything worked.<sup>3</sup>

## ***On a Windows System***

If you use a Windows system, a One-Click Ruby Installer is available at <http://rubyinstaller.rubyforge.org/wiki/wiki.pl>. Simply follow the instructions there to download Ruby for your system. It's a comprehensive package—check the site for the most up-to-date list of its contents. At the time of this writing, it included the base language with various popular extensions, including SciTE (a syntax-highlighting text editor), FreeRIDE (a Ruby development environment), a help file containing Dave Thomas' book *Programming Ruby* (also called *The Pickaxe*), and the RubyGems package installer. It also comes with `irb`, which we'll explore in Chapter 1.

## **Motivations for the Book**

This book tries to be both useful in the immediate term and informative in the long term. These goals have a profound impact on how the book is organized.

It's also meant to be accessible to neophytes, but it focuses on programming paradigms and their impact on both language design and language use—topics common to academic programming books. These days, you can use any popular language for most tasks, but that doesn't mean that solving a given problem will be equally painless in every language. No language exists in a vacuum, and a discussion of a language like Ruby should acknowledge the decisions that went into its design. You'll find that it's a very flexible language that lets you combine different approaches in powerful ways. Biologists recognize hybrid vigor; so did Matz when he created Ruby.

**NOTE** *When I mention programming paradigms, I'm referring to three main types: imperative, object-oriented, and functional. Broadly speaking, imperative languages tell computers Do this, then do that, then do this next thing. Object-oriented languages define objects (types of things) that know how to perform methods (specific actions). Functional languages treat programming problems like mathematical relationships. Ruby is flexible, meaning that you can program in any of these styles; however, it is primarily object oriented, with some strong functional influence. This book focuses slightly more on the functional aspects of Ruby than some other books.*

---

<sup>3</sup> Ruby, like most open source languages, is under constant development. The code in this book uses Ruby version 1.8.4, which was the stable release at the time I wrote the scripts in this book. Ruby version 1.8.6 was released slightly before this book came out.

## **Conventions**

This book uses several conventions to distinguish among different types of information. When you encounter a new term for the first time, it will be shown in *italics*. Since this is a programming book, you'll often see small code samples in code font, as well. Code listings will be indicated like this:

---

```
puts "Hi, I'm code!"
```

---

## **Summary of Chapters**

Here's a bit about what you'll find inside the chapters:

### **Chapter 1: Interactive Ruby and the Ruby Environment**

This chapter describes Interactive Ruby (irb), and also introduces some key Ruby concepts.

### **Chapter 2: Amusements and Simple Utilities**

This chapter has our first stand-alone programs (or scripts) that continue introducing key Ruby concepts while accomplishing simple tasks.

### **Chapter 3: Programmer Utilities**

This chapter contains tools that are useful for developers in the form of library files intended to be used by other programs.

### **Chapter 4: Text Manipulation**

This chapter focuses on processing text.

### **Chapter 5: Number Utilities**

This chapter focuses on primarily numeric data, including pure math and moving into recursion.

### **Chapter 6: Functionalism with Blocks and Procs**

This chapter puts a heavy emphasis on functional programming, hinted at in earlier chapters.

### **Chapter 7: Using, Optimizing, and Testing Functional Techniques**

This chapter details testing, profiling, and optimizing your programs.

### **Chapter 8: HTML and XML Tools**

This chapter has a subset of text processing specifically meant for markup, like HTML and XML.

### **Chapters 9 and 10: More Complex Utilities and Tricks, Parts I and II**

These chapters both expand the scale of our programs using techniques introduced earlier in the book to tackle larger problems.

### **Chapter 11: CGI and the Web**

This chapter talks about the Common Gateway Interface (CGI) and how to embed Ruby code in web documents.



## **Chapter 12: RubyGems and Rails Preparation**

This chapter shows you how to use RubyGems, Ruby's package manager, and uses that system to install Rails, Ruby's main web development framework.

## **Chapter 13: A Simple Rails Project**

This chapter contains a sample Rails application, using it to discuss key design issues useful for any Rails developer.

Now let's dive in and start using Ruby for some interesting tasks. But before we start creating separate program files, we'll explore how Ruby works with the Interactive Ruby environment.



# 1

## INTERACTIVE RUBY AND THE RUBY ENVIRONMENT



In Ruby, as in most programming languages, we'll generally store programs in external files and execute them at once, as a unit.

However, Ruby also gives you the option of typing the lines of a program one at a time and seeing the results as you go along, using Interactive Ruby (*irb*); *irb* is a shell, similar to *bash* in a Unix or Unix-like system or the command prompt in Windows. Using *irb* will give you a good idea of how Ruby processes information, and it should also help you gain an understanding of Ruby's basics before you ever even write a program.

Who should read this chapter? If you've already used Ruby and also already know the meaning of the terms *expression*, *irb*, *flow control*, *variable*, *function*, *method*, and *constant*, you can probably just skim this chapter. (If you encounter anything unfamiliar later, you can always come back.) If you've never programmed before, you should read this chapter carefully. If you've already used a language with an interactive environment, like Lisp or Python, you can probably just look at the *irb* sessions to see how Ruby differs from the language you already know—it's likely that it does in some key ways.

The `irb` program is an example of a *read-eval-print-loop* (*REPL*) environment. This is an idea that comes from Ruby's ancestor Lisp. It means just what the name says: It *reads* a line, *evaluates* that line, *prints* the results of the evaluation, and *loops*, waiting to read another line. The shell gives you immediate feedback for every line you enter, which is an ideal way to learn the syntax of a language.

## Starting irb

Starting `irb` is very straightforward. On a Unix or Unix-like machine (such as GNU/Linux or Mac OS X), you can just type `irb` at the shell prompt. This should give you the following result:

---

```
$ irb
irb(main):001:0>
```

---

On a Windows machine, you'll choose **Start ▶ Run**, type `irb`, then click **OK**. You can also run the command `irb` directly from the command line.

## Using irb

Now that you've started it, `irb` is waiting for you to type your first line. *Lines* consist of one or more expressions.

### Expressions

As far as Ruby is concerned, an *expression* is just a bit of code that has a value. In fine computer programming tradition, let's see how `irb` reacts to the expression "Hello, world!"

---

```
irb(main):001:0> "Hello, world!"
=> "Hello, world!"
```

---

**NOTE** *This listing shows the line you need to type as well as how `irb` responds. Note also that `irb` shows you line numbers at the beginning of each line. I will occasionally refer to these numbers, as well.*

What has happened here? You typed "Hello, world!", and `irb` happily spat it right back at you. The interesting part of this is what isn't explicit. The expression you entered has a value in Ruby, and therefore in `irb`. "Hello, world!" is a *String*, which is a sequence of characters, usually enclosed with either single or double quotation marks. Let's prove it.

### Everything Is an Object

In Ruby, like its ancestor Smalltalk, everything is an *object*, which is just an instance of a class. "Hello, world!" happens to an instance of the class `String`.

Let's verify that in irb:

---

```
irb(main):002:0> "Hello, world!".class  
=> String
```

---

Objects have *methods* (called on an object as `some_object.some_method`), which are just actions an object can perform. The method called `class` simply reports which class something belongs to; in other words, the type of thing that it is. Since "Hello, world!" is a String, that's exactly what the `class` method reports when called on "Hello, world!". There are other types of objects besides Strings, of course.

**NOTE** *This book assumes that you are familiar with object orientation. If you're not, here's a crash description. An object is a thing. It could be any type of thing. Every object is an instance of a class; for example, the objects Glasgow, Cairo, and Buffalo would all be instances of the class City. The objects are distinct from each other, but they are the same type of thing. Monty Python and The Kids in the Hall would both be instances of the class Comedy Troupe, and so on. In Ruby, you will traditionally name instances with all lowercase letters and use underscores in the place of spaces; you will name classes with CamelCase. In actual Ruby code, the class ComedyTroupe would have instances (objects) called monty\_python and kids\_in\_the\_hall.*

## Integers, Fixnums, and Bignums

One other type of object (or class) is *Integer*, which is any number that is divisible by one. These should be familiar to you: 0, 1, -5, 27, and so on. Let's enter an Integer in irb.

---

```
irb(main):003:0> 100  
=> 100
```

---

**NOTE** *If you call the method `class` on an Integer, it will report either `Fixnum` or `Bignum`, not `Integer`. This stems from how Ruby stores numbers internally. Computers can operate faster if they don't waste space, so they have to worry about how much space numbers take up. However, computers also need to be able to handle very large numbers. Therefore, they compromise and store small numbers so that they take up little space, but they also store very large numbers, which inevitably take up more space. Sophisticated high-level languages like Ruby translate between these different types of numbers automatically, so you can just deal with numbers without worrying about these specific details. Isn't that handy? For example, `100.class` returns `Fixnum`, and `(100 ** 100).class` returns `Bignum`. That's because 100 is small enough to fit in a `Fixnum`, but the value of `(100 ** 100)` will only fit in a `Bignum`—it's too big for a `Fixnum`.*

We see that the number 100 has the value of 100 in irb, as you might expect. But we want to be able to do more than just see what we've typed, so let's do something with our number 100. Let's add it to 100.

---

```
irb(main):004:0> 100 + 100  
=> 200
```

---

You can see that irb has added these numbers correctly, and it shows you the result. In Ruby, `100 + 100` is an expression, just as `"Hello, world!"` and `100` by itself are expressions. The value of `100 + 100` is, naturally, `200`. Numbers have a method called `+`, which is how they add themselves to other numbers. That's precisely what we've done here.

## ***Addition, Concatenation, and Exceptions***

The `+` sign can do more than just add numbers. Let's add two other expressions:

---

```
irb(main):005:0> "Hello, " + "world!"  
=> "Hello, world!"
```

---

By adding the String `"Hello, "` to the String `"world!"`, we've created the new longer String `"Hello, world!"`. Strings don't perform addition, exactly. They use the `+` sign to do an operation called *concatenation*, which is just tacking one thing onto the end of another. In Ruby, the `+` sign means *Do whatever addition-like operations make the most sense for this class of object*. This allows you to just use the `+` sign and assume that Integers will add themselves in a reasonable “numbery” way, Strings will add themselves in a reasonable “stringy” way, and so on.

What happens when we try to add two different types of objects? Let's find out in irb.

---

```
irb(main):006:0> "Hello, world!" + 100  
TypeError: failed to convert Fixnum into String  
    from (irb):6:in '+'  
    from (irb):6
```

---

That expression didn't work out as well as the others. `TypeError` is an example of what Ruby (and many other languages) call an *exception*, which is a notice from a programming language that there has been an error. Our `TypeError` means that Ruby wasn't happy that we asked to add a String to a number.<sup>1</sup> Strings know how to add themselves to each other, as do numbers—but they can't cross types. When adding, we want both operands to be the same type.

## ***Casting***

The solution to this problem is an operation called *casting*, which is the conversion of something from one type to another. Let's see an example of casting in irb:

---

```
irb(main):007:0> "Hello, world!" + 100.to_s  
=> "Hello, world!100"
```

---

---

<sup>1</sup> Specifically a `Fixnum`, in our case.

We call the method `to_s` on `100` before trying to add it to "Hello, world!". This method stands for *to String*—as you may have guessed, it converts the object it is called upon into a String. By the time we need to add these two operands together, they are both Strings, and Ruby dutifully concatenates them.<sup>2</sup> Let's verify that `100.to_s` is a String:

---

```
irb(main):008:0> 100.to_s
=> "100"
```

---

So it is. But what happens when we want to convert something into an Integer? Is there a `to_i` method that we could call on the String "100"? Let's find out.

**NOTE** *Casting is common in strongly-typed languages, like Ruby. It's less common in weakly-typed languages, although it still can come up. Both approaches have their proponents.*

---

```
irb(main):009:0> "100".to_i
=> 100
```

---

We can, indeed. So we now know how to convert both Strings and Integers into each other, via either the `to_s` or `to_i` methods. It would be nice if we could see a list of all the methods we could call on a given object. We can do that too, with an aptly named method: `methods`. Let's call it on the Integer `100`:

---

```
irb(main):010:0> 100.methods
=> ["<=", "to_f", "abs", "-", "upto", "succ", "|", "/", "type", "times", "%",
"-@", "&", "~", "<", "****", "zero?", "^", "<=>", "to_s", "step", "[", ">",
"=", "modulo", "next", "id2name", "size", "<<", "*", "downto", ">>", ">=",
"divmod", "+", "floor", "to_int", "to_i", "chr", "truncate", "round", "ceil",
"integer?", "prec_f", "prec_i", "prec", "coerce", "nonzero?", "+@", "remainder",
"eql?", "===", "clone", "between?", "is_a?", "equal?", "singleton_methods",
"freeze", "instance_of?", "send", "methods", "tainted?", "id",
"instance_variables", "extend", "dup", "protected_methods", "=~", "frozen?",
"kind_of?", "respond_to?", "class", "nil?", "instance_eval", "public_methods",
"_send_", "untaint", "_id_", "inspect", "display", "taint", "method",
"private_methods", "hash", "to_a"]
```

---

You can see that both `+` and `to_s` are in the list of method names.<sup>3</sup>

## Arrays

Notice how the output of `methods` is enclosed with square brackets (`[]`). These brackets indicate that the enclosed items are the members of an *Array*, which is a list of objects. Arrays are just another class in Ruby, like String or Integer, and (unlike some other languages) there is no requirement for all members of a given Array to be instances of the same class.

---

<sup>2</sup> Technically, instead of casting, we've created an entirely new object that happens to be the String equivalent of `100`.

<sup>3</sup> By the way, you can chain methods together, such as `100.methods.sort`. If you try that in `irb`, you'll get the same list of methods as you'd get with `100.methods`, but in alphabetical order.

An easy way to convert a single item into an Array is to wrap it in brackets, like so:

---

```
irb(main):011:0> [100].class
=> Array
```

---

Arrays also know how to add themselves, as shown:

---

```
irb(main):012:0> [100] + ["Hello, world!"]
=> [100, "Hello, world!"]
```

---

The result is just another Array, comprised of all the elements of the added Arrays.

## **Booleans**

Along with String, Integer, and Array, Ruby also has a class called Boolean. Strings are sequences of characters, Integers are any numbers divisible by 1, and Arrays are lists of members. *Boolean* values can only be true or false. Booleans have many uses, but they are most commonly used in evaluations that determine whether to perform one action or an alternative. Such operations are called *flow control*.

**NOTE** *Booleans are named after the mathematician George Boole, who did much of the early work of formalizing them.*

## **Flow Control**

One of the most commonly used flow control operations is `if`. It evaluates the expression that follows it as either true or false. Let's demonstrate some flow control with `if`:

---

```
irb(main):013:0> 100 if true
=> 100
```

---

We just asked whether or not the expression `100 if true` is true. Since the expression `true` evaluates to a true value, we do get the value `100`. What happens when the expression evaluated by `if` isn't true?

---

```
irb(main):014:0> 100 if false
=> nil
```

---

This is something new. The expression `false` is not true, so we don't get the expression `100`. In fact, we get no expression at all—`irb` tells us it has no value to report. Ruby has a specific value that stands for the absence of a value (or an otherwise meaningless value), which is `nil`.

The value could be absent for several reasons. It could be an inexpressible concept, or it could refer to missing data, which is what happened in our example. We never told `irb` what to report when the evaluated expression was false, so the value is missing. Any value that might need to be represented



as *n/a* is a good candidate for a `nil` value. This situation comes up often when you are interacting with a database. Not all languages have a `nil`; some have it, but assume that it must be an error. Ruby is completely comfortable with `nil` values being used where appropriate.

The `nil` value is distinct from all other values. However, when we force Ruby to evaluate `nil` as a Boolean, it evaluates to `false`, as shown:

---

```
irb(main):015:0> "It's true!" if nil
=> nil
```

---

The only values that evaluate to false Booleans are `nil` and `false`. In many other languages `0` or `""` (a String with zero characters) will also evaluate to false, but this is not so in Ruby. Everything other than `nil` or `false` evaluates to true when forced into a Boolean.

**NOTE** *We have to explicitly cast Strings and Integers into each other with the `to_s` and `to_i` methods, but notice that we don't need to do this for Boolean values. Boolean casting is implicit when you use `if`. If you were to do explicit casting into a Boolean, you might expect a method similar to `to_s` and `to_i`, called `to_b`. There is no such method in Ruby yet, but we'll write our own in Chapter 3.*

Let's say we want a certain value if an evaluated expression is true (as we've done with `if` already), but that we also want some non-`nil` value when the evaluated expression is false. How do we do that? Here's an example in `irb`:

---

```
irb(main):016:0> if true
irb(main):017:1> 100
irb(main):018:1> else
irb(main):019:1* 50
irb(main):020:1> end
=> 100
```

---

That's our first multi-line expression in `irb`. It should be fairly straightforward, returning 100, because `true` evaluates to true. Let's try again, with a few differences:

---

```
irb(main):021:0> if false
irb(main):022:1> 100
irb(main):023:1> else
irb(main):024:1* 50
irb(main):025:1> end
=> 50
```

---

This time, since `false` evaluates as not true, the value of the multi-line expression is the value from the `else`, which is 50. This format is a bit wordier than the previous tests that just used `if`. We also need the `end` keyword to tell `irb` when we're done with the expression we started with `if`. If we wanted to do tests like these multi-line expressions often, retyping slight variations of the same basic idea over and over could become tedious. That's where methods come into play.

**NOTE** Notice that `irb` gives you some useful information in its prompt. The prompt often ends with a `>` symbol, which is usually preceded by a number. That number is how many levels deep you are, meaning the number of end statements you'll need to get back to the top level. You'll also notice that sometimes instead of ending with a `>` symbol, the prompt will end with an asterisk (`*`). This means that `irb` only has an incomplete statement and is waiting for that statement to be completed. Very useful.

## Methods

We touched on methods earlier, but we'll discuss them in more detail now. A *method* is just a bit of code that is attached to an object; it takes one or more input values and returns something as a result.<sup>4</sup> We call the inputs to a method the *arguments* or *parameters*, and we call the resulting value the *return value*. We define methods in Ruby with the keyword `def`:

---

```
irb(main):026:0> def first_if_true(first, second, to_be_tested)
irb(main):027:1> if to_be_tested
irb(main):028:2> first
irb(main):029:2> else
irb(main):030:2* second
irb(main):031:2> end
irb(main):032:1> end
=> nil
```

---

We just defined a method called `first_if_true`, which takes three arguments (which it calls `first`, `second`, and `to_be_tested`, respectively) and returns either the value of `first` or `second`, based on whether or not `to_be_tested` evaluates to `true`. We've now defined our earlier multi-line tests as something abstract that can be re-used with different values. Let's try it out.

**NOTE** Notice that the name of `first_if_true` tells you what it will do. This is a good habit to get into. Method names should tell you what they do. Clear, intuitive method names are an important part of good documentation. The same advice holds for variables, described later. By that criterion, `result` (as seen later) is not a very good name. It's okay for a simple example that merely introduces the concept of assigning into a variable, but it's unsuitably vague for real production code.

Remember that `first_if_true` tests the third value and then returns either the first value or the second value.

---

```
irb(main):033:0> first_if_true(1, 2, true)
=> 1
irb(main):034:0> first_if_true(1, 2, false)
=> 2
irb(main):035:0> first_if_true(1, 2, nil)
=> 2
irb(main):036:0> first_if_true(nil, "Hello, world!", true)
=> nil
```

---

<sup>4</sup>Ruby is object oriented, so it uses the term *method*. Languages with less of an object-oriented focus will call methods *functions*. A *method* is simply a function that is attached to an object.

```
irb(main):037:0> first_if_true(nil, "Hello, world!", false)
=> "Hello, world!"
```

---

Feel free to try out the `first_if_true` method in `irb` with different arguments, either now or later. It should give you a good idea of how Ruby processes expressions.

**NOTE** *While methods return values when they are used, the simple act of defining a method returns `nil`, as you can see.*

## Variables

What would happen if you wanted to use the output of one method as an input to another method? One of the most convenient ways to do so is with *variables*. Similar to algebra or physics, we just decide to refer to some value by name, like *m* for some specific mass or *v* for some specific velocity. We assign a value into a variable with a single = sign, as shown:

```
irb(main):038:0> result = first_if_true(nil, "Hello, world!", false)
=> "Hello, world!"
irb(main):039:0> result
=> "Hello, world!"
```

---

We assigned the value of `first_if_true(nil, "Hello, world!", false)` (which happens to be "Hello, world!") into a variable called `result`. We now have the value "Hello, world!" stored under the name `result`, which still evaluates as you'd expect it to, as you can see at line 39. We can now use `result` like we would any other value:

```
irb(main):040:0> first_if_true(result, 1, true)
=> "Hello, world!"
irb(main):041:0> first_if_true(result, 1, result)
=> "Hello, world!"
```

---

Notice how we can pass `result` through `first_if_true` and also evaluate it (as `to_be_tested`) for Boolean value. We can use it as a part of a larger expression, too:

```
irb(main):042:0> first_if_true( result, 1, (not result) )
=> 1
```

---

In the example on line 42, we've reversed the Boolean value of `result` with the keyword `not` before we pass it into `first_if_true`. We don't make any changes to `result` on line 42. We just create a new expression with `(not result)` that happens to evaluate to whatever the Boolean opposite of `result` is. The result itself stays unchanged.

**NOTE** *I've added some spaces just to make it easier to read which parentheses enclose the arguments to the method and which enclose the `(not result)` expression. Ruby and `irb` don't care about whitespace very much.*

## Constants

Sometimes we want to refer to a value by name, but we don't need to change it. In fact, sometimes we intend not to change it. Good examples from physics are the speed of light or the acceleration due to Earth's gravity—they don't change. In Ruby, we can define such values as *constants*, which must start with a capital letter. (By tradition, they are often entirely uppercase.) Let's define a constant and then use it:

---

```
irb(main):043:0> HUNDRED = 100
=> 100
irb(main):044:0> first_if_true( HUNDRED.to_s + ' is true', false, HUNDRED )
=> "100 is true"
```

---

We see that we can assign into a constant just like we did into a variable. We can then use that constant by name, as an expression or within a larger expression, as desired.

## Using the Ruby Interpreter and Environment

If you come from a Unix background, you're probably already familiar with the concept of command-line options and environment variables. If you're not familiar with these terms, they're just ways for the computer to keep track of external data, usually configuration options. Ruby uses *command-line options* and *environment variables* to keep track of things like how paranoid or lax it should be in relation to security or how verbose to be about warnings. We've already seen an example of this in the instructions for installing Ruby from a source download, when we executed this command:

---

```
ruby --version
```

---

As you'd expect, that just asks Ruby to report its version. You can find out the various command-line options that Ruby understands by executing this command:

---

```
ruby -h
```

---

Environment variables can store these command-line options as defaults; they can also store other information not specific to Ruby that Ruby may still find necessary to perform certain tasks. Users of Unix-like systems store their files inside what's called a *HOME* directory, which keeps their data out of the way of other users. The My Documents folder in Windows is similar. Another important environment variable is *ARGV*, which is an Array that keeps track of all of the arguments passed to Ruby. When you execute an external Ruby program, as you often will by using the syntax below, the program's name will be found in *ARGV*.

---

```
ruby some_external_program.rb
```

---

Let's move on to some specific example programs. We'll be dealing with many of the topics we've only touched on in this chapter in greater detail appropriate to each example.



# 2

## AMUSEMENTS AND SIMPLE UTILITIES



From the previous chapter, you should now be relatively comfortable with `irb` and how Ruby deals with various expressions. Now we'll try some Ruby programs that are stored in separate files and executed outside of `irb`. You can download all of these programs at <http://www.nostarch.com/ruby.htm>.

We'll run our programs with the `ruby` command, so when we want to run a script called `check_payday.rb`, we'll type `ruby check_payday.rb` either at the shell in a Unix-like system or at the command prompt in Windows. We'll also generally use the `-w` option, which means *turn warnings on*, making our example above become `ruby -w check_payday.rb`. It's just a safer way to operate, and it is especially useful when learning a new language. We'll also occasionally see Ruby Documentation (RDoc), which allows us to put relatively complex comments directly into our source code. We'll discuss that in relation to the `99bottles.rb` example, where we first use it.

## #1 Is It Payday? (check\_payday.rb)

This script is a simple utility that I use to remind myself when a payday is approaching. It is very much in the quick-and-dirty style, and intentionally so.

### The Code

---

```
❶ #!/usr/bin/env ruby
❷ # check_payday.rb

CONSTANTS ❸ DAYS_IN_PAY_PERIOD = 14
           SECONDS_IN_A_DAY   = 60 * 60 * 24

Variables ❹ matching_date = Time.local(0, 0, 0, 22, 9, 2006, 5, 265, true, "EDT")
           ❺ current_date = Time.new()

           difference_in_seconds = (current_date - matching_date)
           ❻ difference_in_days   = (difference_in_seconds / SECONDS_IN_A_DAY).to_i
           ❼ days_to_wait         = (
               DAYS_IN_PAY_PERIOD - difference_in_days
           ) % DAYS_IN_A_PAY_PERIOD

           if (days_to_wait.zero?)
           ❸ puts 'Payday today.'
           else
               print 'Payday in ' + days_to_wait.to_s + ' day'
               puts days_to_wait == 1 ? '.' : 's.'
           end
```

---

### How It Works

Line ❶ is a hint to the computer that this program is in Ruby. The line at ❷ is a comment meant for human readers that tells the name of the program. In Ruby, comments start with the # character and last until the end of the line.

### Defining Constants

We define two constants at ❸. While constants only need to *start* with a capital letter, I like to use all caps to make them stand out. (This is a common convention in many languages and a good habit to get into.)

The names of the constants `DAYS_IN_PAY_PERIOD` and `SECONDS_IN_A_DAY` should give you a good sense of what they mean—specifically, the number of days in a pay period and the number of seconds in a day. I get paid every two weeks, which is the same as every 14 days.

The definition for `SECONDS_IN_A_DAY` uses multiplication ( $60 * 60 * 24$ ), which is acceptable Ruby syntax, as you know from your experiments in `irb`. Representing these specific numbers as the result of multiplication instead of as one big final result is also more human readable, because a person reading this code will see and understand the relationship among 60 seconds in a minute, 60 minutes in an hour, and 24 hours in a day.



Why bother to define constants with more characters than the values they hold? While it doesn't make a huge difference in this program, it's a good habit to get into for larger programs.

**NOTE** *Constants are a very good idea. They allow you to avoid one of the sins of programming called magic numbers, which are examples of one of two programming sins: a literal value used repeatedly, or a literal value whose use is not obvious, even if it's only used once. Defining such a value once with a meaningful name makes your code more readable to both other programmers and yourself, after you've forgotten everything about your program. Again, constants are a very good idea.*

## Defining Variables

Having defined our constants, we define a variable at ④ called `matching_date` using Ruby's built-in `Time.local` method. This method takes 10 items as arguments, in order: seconds, minutes, hours, day of the month, month, year, day of the week, day number within the year (1 through 366), whether the date is within daylight saving time, and a three-letter code for the time zone. The values used here are for September 22, 2006, which is a day that happened to be a payday for me. The day number within a year has a maximum of 366 instead of 365, because leap years have 366 days.

At ⑤, we get the `current_date` using Ruby's built-in `Time.new` method, and then subtract `matching_date` from it to get the difference, in seconds. Because we are much more interested in the difference in days rather than the difference in seconds, we divide the `difference_in_seconds` by the number of `SECONDS_IN_A_DAY` to get the difference in days, and then we round down by converting that result into an Integer with the `to_i` method. That gives us a useful value for our `difference_in_days` variable.

The `difference_in_days` variable tells us the number of days since the last payday. However, because we really want our cash, we are more interested in how long we have to wait until the next payday. To find out, at ⑥ we subtract the number of days since our last payday (the `difference_in_days` variable) from the number of `DAYS_IN_A_PAY_PERIOD` to get a new variable at ⑦ called `days_to_wait`.

If `days_to_wait` has a value of zero, today must be payday, so at ⑧ we output that information using Ruby's built-in method `puts`. The `puts` method, which stands for *put string*, prints its String argument ('Payday today.', in our script) followed by an automatic carriage return, also called a *newline*. If `days_to_wait` is not zero, we use `puts` again to tell how many days we have to wait for payday, and as a convenience, we add the letter *s* to the word `day` if the number of days is plural.

**NOTE** *We call both `print` and `puts` without parentheses enclosing the argument(s). This is perfectly legal, unless there would be some ambiguity about either the boundaries of an expression or the specific arguments to a method.*

That's the whole program. There are more elegant ways to accomplish some of the tasks that this program does, but it introduces some new concepts, such as Constants, the `puts` method, and Dates. You can run it yourself and

compare what it outputs to what your own actual pay schedule is, altering the `matching_day` variable accordingly.

**NOTE** *Readers familiar with crontab may find it interesting that I run this on my machine with the following crontab entry: `ruby ~/scripts/check_payday.rb | mutt -s "payday" kbaird`.*

## The Results

Your result should be a message along the lines of *Payday in 10 days*, depending on the day you run the program.

## #2 Random Signature Generator (random\_sig.rb and random\_sig-windows.rb)

The next script generates dynamic content for email signatures, adding standard information, like a name and email address, to a random quotation drawn from a known file. The Unix and Windows versions need to be slightly different, so they have been separated into two distinct files. I'll talk about the Unix version first, but will include the source code for both files. In this example, we'll also see how Ruby handles complex assignments. That's a lot of information to cover.

### The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# random_sig.rb

① filename = ARGV[0] || (ENV['HOME'] + '/scripts/sig_quotes.txt')
② quotation_file = File.new(filename, 'r')
  file_lines = quotation_file.readlines()
③ quotation_file.close()
④ quotations = file_lines.to_s.split("\n\n")
⑤ random_index = rand(quotations.size)
⑥ quotation = quotations[random_index]
  sig_file_name = ENV['HOME'] + '/.signature'
⑦ signature_file = File.new(sig_file_name, 'w')
⑧ signature_file.puts 'Kevin Baird | kbaird@world.oberlin.edu | http://
  kevinbaird.net/'
  signature_file.puts quotation
  signature_file.close()
```

---

**Environment Variables;**  
**The File Object**

**The split Method**

### How It Works

At ❶, we assign a value to a variable called `filename`, but the value that goes into it is somewhat more complex than a single straightforward number or String. `ARGV` is an example of an environment variable. Environment variables are described in Chapter 1. For historical reasons, `ARGV` stands for *Argument Vector* and is an Array of the command-line arguments to any program when it is run.

That's not the whole line, though. Just as the equals sign is an operator that puts a value into something, the double-bar (||) is an operator that means *or*. Let's use `irb` to see how it works.

---

```
|| operator  irb(main):001:0> 0 || false
=> 0
irb(main):002:0> false || 0
=> 0
irb(main):003:0> nil || true
=> true
irb(main):004:0> nil || false
=> false
irb(main):005:0> false || nil
=> nil
```

---

An expression with the || operator evaluates whatever is to the left of it. If it is true, the whole expression has that value, whatever possible true value it happens to be. If the left side is false, the whole expression has the value on the right of the ||, whatever that value is—true, false, nil, whatever. Missing arguments are nil, and nil evaluates to false when tested by ||. The elements of ARGV start counting with zero, just like all Arrays in Ruby (and many other languages). Our filename variable is either the first argument to this program, or if there is no argument, it's set to all of that business within the parentheses: (ENV['HOME'] + '/scripts/sig\_quotes.txt').

**NOTE** *Windows users will need to use (ENV['HOMEDRIVE'] + ENV['HOMEPATH']) instead of ENV['HOME']. We'll talk more about that in the Windows version of the script.*

ENV is an environment variable, as the abbreviation suggests, and the parentheses indicate expression boundaries, just as in a math expression, like (5 + 2) \* 2 = 14. ENV['HOME'] is simply a way for you to get to the directory that belongs to a specific user. For my username, *kbaird*, this would be something like /home/kbaird, or /Users/kbaird under Mac OS X. The home directory is analogous to the My Documents folder in Windows.

ENV['HOME'] is a String, and in our expression, we add it to the String '/scripts/sig\_quotes.txt'. All this means is that our filename has a default value of sig\_quotes.txt, within the scripts directory, within the user's home directory. Now we know the name of the file to read quotations from, so let's use it.

Ruby creates new external File objects with File.new(), which takes two arguments: the name of the file and the manner in which you want to use that file. In this case, we want to read from the file, so at ❷ we give it a second argument of 'r', which naturally stands for *read*. We call this file quotations\_file and read its lines into a variable called file\_lines. Since we're now done with the file, we can close it, which we do at ❸.

The new variable file\_lines is an Array with each line of the quotations file as a single element. What do we do when we want longer quotations? We've taken care of that at ❹ by combining those lines into a String with our old friend the to\_s method, and turning it back into an Array with a method called split, which takes a breakpoint argument to break a String into chunks. Let's see it in action.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> 'break at each space'.split(' ')
=> ["break", "at", "each", "space"]
irb(main):002:0> 'abacab'.split('a')
=> ["", "b", "c", "b"]
```

---

In our program, we're breaking on a double line break, which is represented in Ruby, as in many other languages, with `\n\n`. We now have a variable called `quotations`, which is an Array, each member of which is a quotation from our external file.

We want to choose a random quotation, and elements of Arrays are conveniently stored with indices, so a very appropriate way to choose a random element from an Array is to generate a random number within the range of the Array's indices, and then read the element out of the Array at that index. That's precisely what we do at ⑤ with the `rand` method, into which we pass the size of the quotations Array. We place the specific quotation chosen into a variable at ⑥ with the apt name `quotation`.

Now that we have a quotation, what can we do with it? We want to write it out to our signature file. We usually print things with `puts`, which we used in “#1 Is It Payday? (`check_payday.rb`)” on page 14. Let's try it out in a new irb session.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> puts 'Hello, World!'
Hello, World!
=> nil
```

---

You'll notice that `puts` outputs whatever argument you give it, but the value it *returns* is `nil`. It's important to keep that distinction in mind. If you use `puts` on a file, it will print its argument to that file instead of printing to the screen. We already know that we can read from external files with a second argument of `'r'`. Similarly, we can write to an external file with a second argument of `'w'`, which is the way we open `signature_file` at ⑦. Let's take a look at the way `puts` behaves in irb.

**some\_file.puts**

---

```
irb(main):002:0> t = File.new(ENV['HOME'] + '/test_file.txt', 'w')
=> #<File:0xaca10>
irb(main):003:0> t.puts 'Write some content'
=> nil
irb(main):004:0> t.close
=> nil
```

---

The `puts` method continues to return `nil`, but take a look at a new file called `test_file` inside your home directory. It should now contain the text *Write some content*, proving that `puts` can easily print to a file, as well. Note that we use a filename that means *The file called .signature within the user's home directory*, which is the traditional location for email signature files. All that's left is to write a standard header at ⑧, add the randomly-chosen quotation, and then close the signature file.

If you use a Unix-like operating system, you can put a call to this program in a crontab,<sup>1</sup> as I do on my Debian machine. Windows users can modify the script to write a signature file with whatever name they choose, and then change the settings of their email program to use that signature file.

## Running the Script

This is run with `ruby -w random_sig.rb` (to assume the default `sig_quotes.txt` file), or `ruby -w random_sig.rb some_file`, replacing `some_file` with the name of your preferred version of `sig_quotes.txt`.

## The Results

Here are my results. The `$` denotes a bash prompt on my GNU/Linux system. I add an additional `cat ~/.signature` (which just shows the contents of `~/.signature`) to show the results, since the script writes to that file instead of printing to the screen.

---

```
$ ruby -w random_sig.rb extras/sig_quotes.txt ; cat ~/.signature
Kevin Baird | kcbaird@world.oberlin.edu | http://kevinbaird.net/
Those who do not understand Unix are condemned to reinvent it, poorly.
$ ruby -w random_sig.rb extras/sig_quotes.txt ; cat ~/.signature
Kevin Baird | kcbaird@world.oberlin.edu | http://kevinbaird.net/
"You cannot fight against the future. Time is on our side."
- William Ewart Gladstone
```

---

## Hacking the Script

Take a look at the Windows source code below, and try to figure out the changes before continuing on to my explanation.

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# random_sig-windows.rb

❶ home = "#{ENV['HOMEDRIVE']}" + "#{ENV['HOMEPATH']}"
❷ filename = ARGV[0] || (home + '\\scripts\\sig_quotes.txt')
quotations_file = File.new(filename, 'r')
file_lines = quotations_file.readlines()
quotations_file.close()
quotations      = file_lines.to_s.split("\n\n")
random_index    = rand(quotations.size)
quotation       = quotations[random_index]
❸ sig_file_name = home + '\.signature'
signature_file  = File.new(sig_file_name, 'w')
signature_file.puts 'Kevin Baird | kcbaird@world.oberlin.edu | http://
kevinbaird.net/'
signature_file.puts quotation
signature_file.close()
```

---

<sup>1</sup> A crontab is just a way for Unix machines to schedule operations. If you use a Unix-like operating system, just execute `man crontab` at the shell. If you use Windows, you can use Windows Scheduler with a batch file.

The only significant differences relate to the filesystem, which is how the operating system and programs access your machine's hard drive, CD-ROM drive, and so on. Windows uses a separate drive letter, which is represented by ENV[ 'HOMEDRIVE' ], and a path within that drive letter, which is represented by ENV[ 'HOMEPATH' ]. Because of the greater complexity of the Windows definition of *home*, we have put it into a variable in this version of the script at ❶. The only other differences are the use of backslashes rather than forward slashes at ❷ and ❸.

### #3 The 99 Bottles of Beer Song (99bottles.rb)

This script demonstrates basic Object Orientation by singing (okay, printing) the “99 Bottles of Beer” song. The content of the example may be a bit contrived, but the program itself reveals a great deal about naming conventions in Ruby. We'll be defining a Wall, on which there are bottles, the number of which repeatedly drops by one.

Here's the code. Classes are the basic building blocks in Ruby, so it's worthwhile for anyone curious about the language to understand them in some depth. We've already seen some built-in classes (String, Integer, and Array), so they're not a fundamentally new concept for you at this point. What is new is the ability to define completely novel classes of your own, as we do below.

#### *The Code*

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# 99 bottles problem in Ruby
```

#### Classes

```
❶ class Wall
```

#### Instance Variables

```
❷ def initialize(num_of_bottles)
  @bottles = num_of_bottles
❸ end
```

#### Predicate Methods

```
=begin rdoc
Predicate, ends in a question mark, returns <b>Boolean</b>.
=end
❹ def empty?()
  @bottles.zero?
end
```

#### Destructive Methods

```
❺ def sing_one_verse!()
  puts sing(' on the wall, ') + sing("\n") + take_one_down! + sing(" on the
wall.\n\n")
end
```

```
⑥ private

  def sing(extra='')
  ⑦   "#{@bottles > 0} ? @bottles : 'no more'} #{@bottles == 1} ? 'bottle' :
    'bottles'} of beer" + extra
    end

  =begin rdoc
  Destructive method named with a bang because it decrements @bottles.
  Returns a <b>String</b>.
  =end
  ⑧ def take_one_down!()
    @bottles -= 1
    'take one down, pass it around, '
    end

end
```

---

## How It Works

We define classes using the keyword *class* followed by whatever name we choose, which we do at ❶ for the class *Wall*. Classes must start with an uppercase letter, and it is traditional to use mixed case, as in *MultiWordClassName*. Our class is called *Wall*, which conjures up a real-world object in a reader's mind. This is the wall in the song on which the bottles sit.

It is also traditional to define a class in a file with the same name by using all lowercase letters and underscores between the words, if the name consists of multiple words (i.e., *multi\_word\_class\_name.rb*). This is just a convention, but it is a widely followed one, and if you decide to use Rails, using this convention will make your life much easier.

If our wall just sat there and did nothing, there would be little point in creating it. We want our wall to be able to take some sort of action. These actions are methods, just like those we've already encountered. We've already defined functions with the *def* keyword. Now we'll do so within a class—this attaches the function we're defining to that class, making it a *method* of that class.

Every class should have a method called *initialize*, which is what that class uses when it creates itself. From the outside, we call the method *new*, but the class itself uses the name *initialize*. (We'll talk about why that distinction exists shortly.) Our wall's *initialize* method, defined at ❷, takes one argument called *num\_of\_bottles*. It then sets the value of a variable called *@bottles* equal to whatever *num\_of\_bottles* is. Why does *@bottles* have the *@* sign in front of it? The *@* sign is how Ruby indicates that something is what's called an *instance variable*.

An *instance variable* is just a characteristic of some thing. If we have a class called Person, each person could have characteristics like a name, an age, a gender, and so on. These characteristics are all good examples of instance variables, because they could (and do) differ from person to person. Just as a Person has an age, a Wall has a certain number of bottles on it. Our wall happens to have 99 bottles on it, because we've told it to have that many. Let's try a different number of bottles in irb. You can bring external content into an irb session with the `-r` command-line flag, which stands for *require*.

---

```
$ irb -r 99bottles.rb
irb(main):001:0> other_wall = Wall.new(10)
=> #<Wall:0xb2708 @bottles=10>
```

---

We can see from the returned value that `@bottles` is set to 10 in the case of our new variable, `other_wall`. Both `wall` and `other_wall` are examples (or instances) of the class `Wall`. They differ in key ways, such as the number of bottles they hold.

All we want to do when we create a new wall is set its number of bottles, so at ❸ we declare the end of the method after setting the value of `@bottles`. After we've created our wall, we'll ask the wall if it has any bottles left. We will implement this with a method called `empty?`, which we define at ❹. Note the question mark, which is a perfectly legitimate part of the method's name. Ruby has inherited a tradition from its ancestor Lisp of naming methods with a question mark when they return either *true* or *false*. Such methods that only return a Boolean are called *predicates*. It should be clear that a wall is either empty or not empty, so the `empty?` method is a predicate, since it will return either true or false.

We also include some RDoc at ❺, before the definition of the `empty?` method. The way to indicate RDoc comments is to have the text `=begin rdoc` flush left, with no whitespace before it. Ruby will consider everything after `=begin rdoc` and before `=end`, also flush left with no preceding whitespace, to be a comment meant to be read by a human, not something to be executed. RDoc allows HTML-like tagging, as shown in the boldfaced `Boolean` in our script. RDoc also allows a variety of other markup options, which we'll discuss in greater detail later.

The instance variable `@bottles` is a number, represented as an instance of `Integer` in Ruby. Integers have a built-in method called `zero?`, which simply tells us whether or not that `Integer` is zero. This is an example of a predicate that was already there for us to use, and it follows the question mark naming convention. Our definition of `empty?` for the class `Wall` also uses parentheses to show that it doesn't accept any arguments. It's often a good idea to refer to methods using parentheses, even in cases like this where there are no arguments involved. The main reason for doing so is to make it clear that you're dealing with a method and not a variable. Since you can define both methods and variables, and both are made of lowercase letters, the parentheses help Ruby distinguish between the two.

A song is made to be sung, so we want to tell the `Wall` how to do so. We'll define a method at ❻ called `sing_one_verse!`. Just as `empty?` uses a question mark, `sing_one_verse!` ends with an exclamation point (also called a *bang*),



which indicates that the method is destructive. *Destructive* methods change the state of their object, which means that they perform some action on their object that persists after the method has been called.

The verse that `sing_one_verse!` has the responsibility to output has some internal repetition, so it only makes sense to break up that repetition and abstract it. We do this with the `sing` method, which takes an optional String argument called `extra`. This optional argument represents any additions to some boilerplate about the number of bottles remaining. The one-line expression at ❷, inside the `sing` method, has some things we haven't seen before.

Sometimes we want to have the value of an expression appear inside a String. This process is called *interpolation*, and Ruby does it, as we'll show here in `irb`:

### Interpolation

---

```
irb(main):001:0> my_var = 'I am the value of my_var'
=> "I am the value of my_var"
irb(main):002:0> "my_var = my_var"
=> "my_var = my_var"
irb(main):003:0> "my_var = #{my_var}"
=> "my_var = I am the value of my_var"
irb(main):004:0> 'my_var = #{my_var}'
=> "my_var = \#{my_var}"
```

---

When we use double quotation marks and wrap an expression within `{}`, the expression is evaluated before it is inserted into the String. When we use single quotation marks or omit the `{}` wrapper, all the text simply appears literally, even if that text happens to be a valid expression, such as the name of a variable. The combination of double quotation marks and the `{}` wrapper is a way to tell Ruby that you want interpolation to occur.

**NOTE** *If you want to have double quotation marks within a String that uses interpolation, you can use `%Q`, like this: `%Q[I am an interpolating String. Call me "#{ 'Ishmael' }"]`. Note that the delimiter does not have to be a bracket and could be conceivably any character. Common choices are `[`, `{`, and `!`.*

The `sing` method also does some testing based on the number of bottles left. This determines the specific output that it returns. Critical to this is the fact that we can interpolate any expression, not just variables. The first expression within the interpolation at ❷ is a test that checks if the value of `@bottles` is greater than zero. If it is, that first expression evaluates to `@bottles`, otherwise it evaluates to the String `'no more'`. We do this with what we call the *ternary operator*. Let's look at the ternary operator a bit in `irb` as well.

### Ternary Operator

---

```
irb(main):001:0> true ? 'I am true' : 'I am false'
=> "I am true"
irb(main):002:0> false ? 'I am true' : 'I am false'
=> "I am false"
```

---

The ternary operator examines whatever is to the left of the question mark; it evaluates to whatever immediately follows the question mark if the examined expression is true, and evaluates to whatever follows the colon otherwise. You can think of it as another way to implement flow control that

is sometimes more convenient than an if test. The next expression at ⑦ that uses a ternary evaluates to either the word *bottle* or the word *bottles*, as appropriate in English for the number of bottles the wall currently has. We then concatenate information that says that these are bottles of beer, rather than some other liquid, and add the extra argument. Since the argument defaults to the empty string, and concatenating the empty string onto something has no visible effect, we're safe when there is no argument.

**NOTE** *Actually, this is just a ternary operator. It just happens to be the most common one, and therefore, it often gets special naming treatment. It is the only built-in ternary operator in Ruby.*

After singing a verse, we take a bottle of beer down with `take_one_down!`, the method defined at ⑧, again named with a bang. We've grouped together the actions of taking a bottle away and reporting that fact, which seems to make sense, conceptually. Since Ruby methods return the last expression evaluated, this method returns the String `'take one down, pass it around, '`, which gets incorporated into the entire verse inside `sing_one_verse!`.

We finish all of these method definitions with the `end` keyword, and use `end` again to finish the class definition. So we're done—except for the word *private*, which we define at ⑨. To see how this works, let's open up irb again and instantiate a new Wall.

---

```
$ irb -r 99bottles.rb
irb(main):001:0> wall = Wall.new(99)
=> #<Wall:0xb7d2e628 @bottles=99>
irb(main):002:0> wall.sing
NoMethodError: private method 'sing' called for #<Wall:0xb7d2e628 @bottles=99>
    from (irb):2
    from :0
irb(main):003:0> wall.take_one_down!
NoMethodError: private method 'take_one_down!' called for #<Wall:0xb7d2e628 @bottles=99>
    from (irb):3
    from :0
irb(main):004:0> wall.empty?
=> false
```

---

The only class that can access methods that we've defined after the appearance of the word *private* is the class itself. The other methods that can be accessed from the outside are called *public* methods. Why the distinction? It allows us to define an interface for an object that doesn't change. We can mess around under the hood and change everything about how the class actually accomplishes its responsibilities, while no one outside the class has any idea that anything has changed.

Using classes in this way is especially useful when working on larger projects with other programmers. You can define your class, complete with public methods that your other team members know about, and write little stub versions of those methods that return legal values with some temporary hard-coded approach. This allows your colleagues to start work on their classes,

which might depend on the output of your class' methods, even before you have written the real versions of those methods. This is very convenient.

By the way, the new versus initialize distinction we saw earlier is a public versus private distinction. The initialize method is automatically private, and the (public) new method of any object automatically calls the (private) initialize method of that same object. That's why we create an initialize method when we write completely new classes.

## Running the Script

Let's try this one out in irb with `irb -r 99bottles.rb`. Note that this will output all 99 verses of this song, so don't be surprised when you see it happen.

## The Results

---

```
$ irb -r 99bottles.rb
irb(main):001:0> wall = Wall.new(99)
=> #<Wall:0xb3040 @bottles=99>
irb(main):002:0> wall.sing_one_verse! until wall.empty?
```

---

Here's a brief section of the output:

---

```
99 bottles of beer on the wall, 99 bottles of beer
take one down, pass it around, 98 bottles of beer on the wall.

98 bottles of beer on the wall, 98 bottles of beer
take one down, pass it around, 97 bottles of beer on the wall.

97 bottles of beer on the wall, 97 bottles of beer
take one down, pass it around, 96 bottles of beer on the wall.
...
2 bottles of beer on the wall, 2 bottles of beer
take one down, pass it around, 1 bottle of beer on the wall.

1 bottle of beer on the wall, 1 bottle of beer
take one down, pass it around, no more bottles of beer on the wall.

=> nil
```

---

## #4 Sound File Player (`shuffle_play.rb`)

In this script, we'll make a program that plays music files in a shuffled order. We explored classes in the previous example, and we'll learn more about them here. What happens when we want to have a class that is very similar to an existing class? We have several options.

**NOTE** *This version is fairly Unix-centric. You can download a Windows version that uses the Winamp player at <http://www.nostarch.com/ruby.htm>.*

In Ruby, we know that everything is an object, which is just another way of saying that it's a member (or instance) of a class. We know about well-defined classes like Arrays, Strings, Integers, and so on. All of these are what we call

*open classes*, meaning that we can add code to existing classes. For example, we could change all of the Arrays in our programs so that they have a new method, and that change would affect any and all Arrays. We don't have to create a new special type of Array to add this hypothetical new method.

**NOTE** *Old hands at Object Orientation will recognize the creation of a new type of class that is otherwise similar to an existing class as using inheritance. We'll address inheritance in Ruby in a later chapter.*

Our shuffle player will need to deal with a list of files. The built-in class Array is very well-suited to acting as a list of items, so we'll base our player around an Array of files. In doing so, we'll also add some behavior to all Arrays that will make it easier to deal with the shuffled playback we want to implement.

## The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# shuffle_play

Open Classes      class Array

                  =begin rdoc
                  Non-destructive; returns a copy of self, re-ordered randomly.
                  =end
                  ❶ def shuffle()
Blocks; The       sort_by { rand }
sort_by Method    end

                  =begin rdoc
                  Destructive; re-orders self randomly.
                  =end
                  ❷ def shuffle!()
The replace      replace(shuffle)
Method           end

                  =begin rdoc
                  While we're here, we might as well offer a method
                  for pulling out a random member of the <b>Array</b>.
                  =end
                  ❸ def random_element()
                  shuffle[0]
                  end

                  end # Array

                  ###

                  class ShufflePlayer

                  ❹ def initialize(files)
                  @files = files
                  end
```

```

=end
Plays a shuffled version of self with the play_file method.
=end
❶ def play()
    @files.shuffle.each do |file|
        play_file(file)
    end
end

❷ private

=end rdoc
Uses ogg123, assumes presence and appropriateness.
=end
def play_file(file)
    system("ogg123 #{file}")
end

end # ShufflePlayer

###

❸ sp = ShufflePlayer.new(ARGV)
sp.play()

```

The each  
Method

The system  
Method

---

## How It Works

We use two different class definitions in this example: one in which we open the Array class to add behavior to it, and another in which we create a completely novel class called ShufflePlayer. One key method that we add to the Array class at ❶ is shuffle. Arrays already have two methods that are very handy: sort\_by and rand. You'll notice that sort\_by is followed by the opening brace character ( { ), then the rand method, then the closing brace ( } ). This content between the opening and closing braces is a *block*, which is central to how Ruby transforms or iterates over collections of data, like Arrays (among other things). The sort\_by method is a sorting operation that takes a block argument, which determines the manner in which the sorting should occur. By calling the rand method within our block, we ask our Array to sort its elements randomly, which is how Arrays accomplish the shuffle method after Ruby reads this method definition.

**NOTE** *Perlrs (or JAPHs) might be interested to know that sort\_by uses a Schwartzian Transform under the hood. Also, the numbers generated by random are technically pseudo-random, not truly random. The difference isn't critical for the purposes of this script.*

All Arrays can now shuffle themselves in our code. This is all we need for our Array, but since this book is about informing people about Ruby as much as it is about accomplishing tasks like playing shuffled audio files, we'll continue the discussion. Our Arrays will also be able to shuffle themselves with a method defined at ❷ called shuffle!, similar to but distinct from the method called shuffle (without the bang). You recently learned that methods with an ending

bang are destructive, meaning that they change state in the calling object. We accomplish this change of state by using the `replace` method, which transforms the calling object into whatever argument it receives. The `shuffle` method returns a shuffled version of the calling Array. Since we pass that shuffled Array into the `replace` method, it is a very simple way to create a destructive method called `shuffle!`, which is precisely what we've done.

It's very easy to add the `random_element` method, as well, which we do at ❸. Since a shuffled version of an Array is in a random order (by definition), returning any member out of that shuffled Array will produce a random element. Here we return the first element, but we could return the last element, or any other element. Returning the first element is a good choice, though, because an Array with any members at all will definitely have a first member.

With a few short methods, we've dramatically added to the capabilities of all Arrays. We'll make use of those capabilities within our new `ShufflePlayer` class. Since `ShufflePlayer` is a completely new class, we need to define its `initialize` method (❹), which takes an argument called `files` and assigns it into an instance variable called `@files`. If you look at ❺, near the end of the program, you see that we instantiate a new `ShufflePlayer` with `ARGV` as the `files` argument.

Once a `ShufflePlayer` exists, we want it to play files in shuffled order. We do so with the `play` method, defined at ❻. Within `ShufflePlayer`, `@files` is an Array of filenames. We opened up the Array class, adding the `shuffle` method to all Arrays. Therefore, `@files` can call the method `shuffle` on itself. Since it's a public method, other objects can call `shuffle` on Arrays, as well. That's what `ShufflePlayer` does in our example. Since the return value of the `shuffle` method is also an Array, it can also call all of the methods of an Array, including `shuffle` again. Instead of reshuffling, however, we'll call a method called `each`, which takes a block describing what to do to or with each element of the Array.

We delimit blocks with braces, right? Sometimes. We could have implemented our `play` method like this:

---

```
def play()
  @files.shuffle.each { |file| play_file(file) }
end
```

---

However, I chose to do it as I did to demonstrate the different ways you can use blocks in your code. Blocks can either start with `{` and end with `}`, or start with `do` and end with `end`. Different Ruby coders have different ideas about how best to notate blocks, but the convention seems to be that the brace delimiters are more appropriate for one-line blocks, and the `do` and `end` delimiters are more appropriate for multi-line blocks. This is the convention I will use in this book, and the one I use in my personal code. Ruby itself, however, doesn't really care.

**NOTE** *The different ways of delineating blocks have different precedences, for those who are curious. This means that Ruby will evaluate blocks delineated with `{` and `}` before evaluating blocks delineated with `do` and `end`. This fits well with how they are commonly used.*

Note that when we call each, we have the word *file* within two pipe characters. Ruby coders who like American football sometimes call this the *goalpost*. The *goalpost* just tells the code within the each method what each element should be called within the block. Conceptually, it resembles an argument to a method, and later in the book, we'll blur that distinction even more. In this case, we're asking the ShufflePlayer to loop through each element of @files, call that element file, and call some method called play\_file, taking file as an argument.

Since we never need to call play\_file from the outside, we can make it a private method, as shown at ⑥. All play\_file does is take an argument called file and use a method called system at ⑦ in order to play that file argument using the ogg123 program. As you might guess, system goes outside of Ruby and asks the operating system to do something—like play an audio file.

**NOTE** *I have a large number of files in Ogg Vorbis audio format, so I use the ogg123 program to play them. You can certainly replace ogg123 with mpg321 or any other command-line audio player.*

The play\_file method makes several assumptions, of course. It assumes that every file it's asked to play will be playable with ogg123. It assumes that a command like ogg123 *some\_file\_name* will be understandable by the operating system. Most glaringly, it assumes that there is a program called ogg123 on the computer that runs this program. I wrote this program to play audio files on my computer at work, where it was safe for me to make these assumptions. This allowed the program to be much shorter, because it didn't have to worry about checking for the existence of ogg123, and so on.

## Running the Script

You run this script as either `ruby -w shuffle_play.rb some_ogg_files or ./shuffle_play.rb some_ogg_files.`

## The Results

Now that I have explained our script, let's try it out. These examples are within a bash shell in Linux, and use the long-winded version of shuffle\_play.rb. The specific output you'll see will depend heavily on the files you choose to play (represented by *some\_ogg\_files* in "Running the Script" above). Since the shuffling is pseudo-random, successive runs will also probably be different, even on the same set of files.

---

```
$ ./shuffle_play.rb ~/Documents/Audio/Music/Rock/King_Crimson/Discipline/*.ogg
```

```
Audio Device: OSS audio driver output
```

```
Playing: /home/kevinb/Documents/Audio/Music/Rock/King_Crimson/Discipline/03-Matte_Kudasai.ogg  
Ogg Vorbis stream: 2 channel, 44100 Hz
```

```
Title: Matte Kudasai
Artist: King Crimson
Album: Discipline
Date: 1981
Track number: 03
Tracktotal: 07
Genre: Prog Rock
Comment: Belew, Fripp, Levin, Bruford
Comment: Belew, Fripp, Levin, Bruford
Copyright 1981 EG Records, Ltd.
Musicbrainz_albumid:
Musicbrainz_albumartistid:
Musicbrainz_artistid:
Musicbrainz_trackid:
Time: 00:05.74 [03:43.52] of 03:49.25 (164.5 kbps) Output Buffer 96.9%
```

---

Or on another directory:

---

```
$ ./shuffle_play.rb ~/Documents/Audio/Music/Jazz/The_Respect_Sextet/
The_Full_Respect/*.ogg
```

Audio Device: OSS audio driver output

```
Playing: /home/kevinb/Documents/Audio/Music/Jazz/The_Respect_Sextet/
The_Full_Respect/08-Carrion_Luggage.ogg
Ogg Vorbis stream: 2 channel, 44100 Hz
Title: Carrion Luggage
Artist: The Respect Sextet
Album: The Full Respect
Date: 2003
Track number: 08
Tracktotal: 18
Genre: Jazz
Composer: Red Wierenga
Copyright 2003 Roister Records
License: http://respectsextet.com/
Time: 00:20.64 [05:15.00] of 05:35.64 (151.4 kbps) Output Buffer 96.9%
```

---

In these examples, the bash shell expands the filenames from \*.ogg before it ever gets to Ruby. All of those files are the arguments to our ShufflePlayer, which then plays them all in shuffled order, meaning that once it's done with one file, it continues on to all the others without repeating any files. We'll look at another approach to shuffled playback of audio files in two programs designed for radio station use later in the book.

## ***Hacking the Script***

Incidentally, if you're interested in shorter programs, this entire program could be replaced by these two lines:

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
ARGV.sort_by { rand }.each { |f| system("ogg123 #{f}") }
```

---



You could just have the second line if you always called the program as an argument to the Ruby interpreter, like

---

```
ruby short_shuffle.rb some_file.ogg
```

---

I don't think that extreme brevity at the expense of clarity is a goal to strive for, however, and I won't be coding toward that end in this book. Brevity is particularly inappropriate for a book that means to teach people about programming, except to demonstrate alternative formats for the same functionality, as done here.

## Chapter Recap

What was new in this chapter?

- Dates
- Constants versus magic numbers
- Expressions with the `||` operator
- `ENV['HOME']`
- External file access, both reading and writing, using `File.new`
- Splitting Strings into Arrays
- Printing with `puts`
- Generating (pseudo-)random numbers
- Running Ruby programs at the command line
- Defining and instantiating new Classes
- Instance variables: `@i_am_an_instance_variable`
- Ruby method naming conventions: `predicate?`, `destructive!`
- Introduction to RDoc
- Expression interpolation within Strings: `"#{interpolate_me}"`
- Ternary operator: `(expression ? if_true : if_false)`
- Access control
- Open classes
- Using `ARGV`
- Using the `each` method with blocks
- The `system` method

That's a great deal of non-trivial information. If you're relatively new to programming, have made it this far, and feel fairly comfortable with the content up to this point, you've accomplished something significant and praiseworthy. Congratulations. If you're an old hand, hopefully this chapter has given you a good idea of how Ruby does some things you've already done in other languages.



# 3

## PROGRAMMER UTILITIES



This chapter is primarily geared toward tools that reveal more about Ruby, making the programmer's job both easier and more interesting. We'll revisit a few topics we broached in a cursory fashion earlier in the book, this time giving them more attention.

### #5 What Is Truth? (`boolean_golf.rb`)

Back in Chapter 1, we talked about how various languages convert data from one type to another. You'll remember that this process is called *casting*, and Ruby generally requires programmers to do this explicitly, while some other languages provide shortcuts that implicitly cast data.

The one major exception to this policy in Ruby is the *Boolean* type, which is either true or false. However, we noted earlier that you can also use a `to_b` method, making data conversion in Ruby completely consistent, in that it is always explicit. We'll be doing a variation on the notion of the `to_b` method in the program below, which we call `boolean_golf.rb`. The name is inspired by a practice in the Perl community in which programmers try to accomplish a

given task with as few keystrokes as possible—they score it like golf. This script accomplishes its task as succinctly as possible, without being illegibly terse.

## The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# boolean_golf.rb

=begin rdoc
This is intended merely to add handy true? and false? methods to every
object. The most succinct way seemed to be declaring these particular
methods in this order. Note that to_b (to Boolean) is an alias to the
true?() method.
=end
```

### Superclasses

```
class Object

  ❶ def false?()
    not self
  end

  ❷ def true?()
    not false?
  end

  ❸ alias :to_b :true?
end
```

### Meta- programming; Symbols

---

## How It Works

This program takes advantage of Ruby's support for open classes and adds new behavior to the Object class. Object is what old hands at Object Orientation call a superclass. *Superclasses* are ancestors of other classes. In Ruby, Object happens to be the ultimate superclass, because it's the ancestor of every other class in Ruby. This status means that methods you add to Object will be available to every single variable of any kind, at any time afterwards. This is extremely powerful, as you might expect.

The methods we're adding are the explicit casting to Boolean methods already discussed. When we introduced the concept, we called our hypothetical method `to_b`. The program above has that method, but gets to it in a roundabout way. The first method defined in the program (at ❶) is `false?`. Remember that a method that returns a Boolean is a *predicate*, and Ruby follows the Lisp tradition of naming predicates so that they end in question marks. The `false?` method uses Ruby's implicit Boolean casting inside itself—it just forces its calling object into an implicit Boolean test with the `not` operator, which also reverses the Boolean value. Therefore, `false?` is the opposite of `to_b`.

Let's show that in irb:

---

```
$ irb -r boolean_golf.rb
irb(main):001:0> true.to_b
=> true
irb(main):002:0> false.to_b
=> false
irb(main):003:0> nil.to_b
=> false
irb(main):004:0> true.false?
=> false
irb(main):005:0> false.false?
=> true
irb(main):006:0> nil.false?
=> true
```

---

You can see that `to_b` reports whether its calling object is considered `true` by Ruby. The `false?` method does the opposite—it returns `false` when Ruby considers the calling object `true`, and `true` when Ruby considers the calling object `false`. You can also try calling these methods on other objects, as well as calling the `true?` method (❷) on these and any other values. You'll find that `true?` returns the same values as the `to_b` method. This program defines `true?` in a similar manner to `false?`, except instead of reversing `self`, it reverses the output of `false?`.

The methods `true?` and `false?` look familiar because they've been defined in the usual way. At ❸, we define `to_b` in a different way. Ruby gives us a the option of doing what's called *metaprogramming*, which allows us to manipulate our objects while we're still in the process of defining them. In this case, we're defining `to_b` as an alias to the method `true?` that we just created. The code is quite readable, isn't it? You might be curious about why we precede the names of the methods with a colon. In this use of `alias`, `:true?` and `:to_b` are instances of the `Symbol` class, which are preceded with a colon. We'll talk about `Symbol` in later chapters. At the moment, just remember that we define aliases with the keyword `alias`, the `Symbol` version of the new name (with an initial colon), and the `Symbol` version of the old name (with an initial colon), in that order. We'll show that in our existing irb session.

**NOTE** *Metaprogramming is a general term for writing programs that create or manipulate other programs. In our case, we write a program that manipulates itself, which is perhaps a little conceptually weird. It's very powerful, however, and is used extensively in Rails. Technically, a compiler or interpreter is an example of metaprogramming, because it allows you to write a short program in a high-level language (like Ruby), which creates a program in a lower-level language (usually C) under the hood, which is then executed. Another example of a different sort of metaprogramming in this book is a script called `methinks_meta.rb`, which we'll see in “#35 Mutating Strings into Weasels (`methinks.rb`)” on page 168.*

## Hacking the Script

In this irb session, we just make a not-terribly-useful alias for `to_i` with the cumbersome name `make_me_into_an_integer`. However, it does nicely demonstrate how to define aliases. We have accomplished several tasks. We added new methods to every single object in Ruby. These methods allow us to be completely pedantic about Boolean casting—in other words, we now have methods for explicit casting into Boolean values. While doing so, we refreshed our knowledge of method naming conventions and also learned a bit about both aliases and metaprogramming.

---

```
irb(main):007:0> class String
irb(main):008:1> alias :make_me_into_an_integer :to_i
irb(main):009:1> end
=> nil
irb(main):010:0> '5'.make_me_into_an_integer
=> 5
```

---

## Running the Script

The easiest way to run this is with irb.

---

```
$ irb -r boolean_golf.rb
irb(main):001:0> true.true?
=> true
irb(main):002:0> true.false?
=> false
irb(main):003:0> nil.false?
=> true
```

---

## The Results

This library file only returns either `true` or `false`, as demonstrated above.

## #6 Making a List (array\_join.rb)

In the previous script, we added new methods to allow explicit Boolean casting to every Object in all of Ruby. In this example, we create a new method that is a slight variation on a method that already exists. In this case, we're altering the way that Arrays can represent themselves as Strings.

When we talk about lists in natural speaking, we often separate the last item from the item before it with the word *and*. This is not how Ruby handles Arrays by default. Let's verify that in irb:

---

```
irb(main):001:0> a = [0, 1, 2]
=> [0, 1, 2]
irb(main):002:0> a.join(' ')
=> "0 1 2"
irb(main):003:0> a.join(',')
```

The `join` Method

```
=> "0, 1, 2"
irb(main):004:0> a.join('')
=> "012"
```

---

We're creating a variant of the method `join`, which is available to all Arrays and whose behavior we see above in the `irb` session. It takes the items of the Array, concatenating them together into a String, with the argument to the `join` method between each item, but not before the first item or after the last item. That's the behavior of `join`. How can we make our own `join` that adds the String and before the last item? Here's how.

## The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# array_join.rb

class Array

  ❶ def my_join(separator1=' ', separator2=' and ')
    modified_join(separator1, separator2)
  end

  ❷ protected

  ❸ def modified_join!(separator1, separator2)
    last_one = self.pop()
    join(separator1) + separator2 + last_one.to_s
  end

  ❹ def modified_join(separator1, separator2)
    self.dup.modified_join!(separator1, separator2)
  end

end
```

Protected  
Methods

The `pop`  
Method

The `dup`  
Method

## How It Works

In our open class modification of `Array`, we define a new method at ❶ called `my_join` that takes two separator arguments. It calls another method, `modified_join`, with whatever our two separator arguments are.

The `modified_join` method hasn't been defined yet and doesn't need to be called except within the `my_join` method. You might think that it can be a *private* method, and so would expect to see the word *private* before the method definition. Instead, at ❷ you see the word *protected*. Why couldn't it just have been *private*? We'll find out very shortly.

The `modified_join` method is defined at ❹ simply as calling the new destructive method `modified_join!` on a duplicate of the calling object. We get a duplicate of the calling object simply by using the `dup` method. We define the destructive method `modified_join!` at ❸. It takes two separator arguments, just like all of our new methods in this program. It defines a new local variable

called `last_one`, which is the value of the object calling the method `pop` on itself. *Pop* is a standard term in many languages for the operation of removing the last item from an Array. Here's an example of popping in action, continuing our existing irb session:

---

```
irb(main):005:0> a
=> [0, 1, 2]
irb(main):006:0> a.pop
=> 2
irb(main):007:0> a
=> [0, 1]
irb(main):008:0> a.pop
=> 1
irb(main):009:0> a
=> [0]
irb(main):010:0> a.pop
=> 0
irb(main):011:0> a
=> []
```

---

You can see that the Array called `a` is modified whenever it calls the method `pop` on itself. Why, you might ask, isn't this method called `pop!`, since it's destructive? That's a good question. The answer is convention—*pop* is an established term for this operation from languages that precede Ruby. If this convention bothers you, just remember that Ruby has ancestors, just like a real human spoken language does. Think about the spelling rules in English. They make little sense after the fact, but make perfect sense when you realize that English is the product of Norman soldiers trying to pick up Saxon barmaids a thousand years ago.

Ruby depends on its ancestors similarly to how a spoken language does, and given the choice between breaking either the convention of naming destructive methods with exclamation marks or of agreeing with precedent from other languages, Matz has decided to make Ruby play nicely with others.

Now we have our last item in a separate variable called `last_one`, and since `pop` is destructive, that item has been removed from the calling Array after `pop` has occurred. We're satisfied with the way the original version of `join` works on all items before the last one, so we can just call the plain old `join` on those items. We add our second separator, and then add our last item that we popped off, making sure that it is a String (and therefore willing to be concatenated) by calling the `to_s` method on it.

So what was all that business about using `protected` instead of `private`? The reason we used `protected` is that inside the (non-destructive) `modified_join` method, our Array doesn't call the (destructive) `modified_join!` method on itself. Instead, it calls `modified_join!` on a duplicate of itself. It's no longer the same object, and the duplicate won't allow another instance to call one of its private methods. So what do we do? Should there be a way for an Array to call a method on another Array that isn't available to an Integer, a String, or a Symbol? There is, and that's exactly what the `protected` access control keyword is for. Below is some irb action showing how the program works.



## Running the Script

---

```
$ irb -r array_join.rb
irb(main):001:0> a = [0, 1, 2]
=> [0, 1, 2]
irb(main):002:0> a.join(', ')
=> "0, 1, 2"
irb(main):003:0> a.my_join(', ')
=> "0, 1 and 2"
irb(main):004:0>
```

---

## Hacking the Script

Once you've tried that and are comfortable with it, change protected to private and try to run it again. It should fail on you, as shown here.

---

```
$ irb -r array_join.rb
irb(main):001:0> a = [0, 1, 2]
=> [0, 1, 2]
irb(main):002:0> a.join(', ')
=> "0, 1, 2"
irb(main):003:0> a.my_join(', ')
NoMethodError: private method 'modified_join!' called for [0, 1, 2]:Array
    from ./array_join.rb:14:in 'modified_join'
    from ./array_join.rb:7:in 'my_join'
    from (irb):3
    from :0
irb(main):004:0>
```

---

That private method error is the reason we want our non-public methods in this program to be protected, rather than private. That should give you basic understanding of Ruby's access control: public, private, and protected.

## #7 Command-Line Interface (uses\_cli.rb and simple\_cli.rb)

The program uses\_cli.rb understands command-line options, which are configuration options that you can use to make the script behave in different ways, depending on the specific values chosen. It uses specific options that have become somewhat standard, such as -h or --help. Options in the form with a single hyphen and a single letter are *short options*, while those with a double hyphen and a full word are (unsurprisingly) called *long options*. Let's look at the code for uses\_cli.rb.

**NOTE** *I think there is enough pedagogical value to rolling your own command-line parser to make it worthwhile, especially in a book like this. However, I should note that there are two fine built-in CLI parsers in Ruby: GetOptLong (Motoyuki Kasahara, <http://www.sra.co.jp/people/m-kasahr/ruby/getoptlong>) and OptionParser (Nobu Nakada, <http://optionparser.rubyforge.org>). I only include the URLs for information purposes; they are built in to the Ruby Standard Library, so you don't need to download them.*

## The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# use_cli.rb

=begin rdoc
Please refer to the SimpleCLI Class for documentation.
=end
```

**Require**

- ❶ `require 'simple_cli'`
- ❷ `cli = SimpleCLI.new()`  
`cli.parse_opts(ARGV)`

---

There isn't a whole lot here, and the script gives us almost no information, except at ❷, where it suggests that we need to look inside the `SimpleCLI` class for documentation. Why the redirection? For an example this straightforward, it's a fair question. The Holy Grail of computer programming is the notion of reusable code. There are many ways to accomplish that end, but one of the most enduringly successful ways is to have external libraries of functions that are reasonably abstract, which is the role played by the `simple_cli.rb` file in our example. Some other specific file can then use that library file, as we do at ❶ in `uses_cli.rb` with the `require` keyword, which takes a String argument that is the name of an external file without the `.rb` extension. This makes the code in that external file available to the file doing the requiring—it's analogous to running `irb` with the `-r` flag. Therefore, at ❷ we can easily instantiate an instance of `SimpleCLI` that we call `cli`, to which we pass all of the command-line options used by `uses_cli.rb`.

If we want to understand how `SimpleCLI` works, we'll have to look at its code. Note that some of the methods in `SimpleCLI` are *stubs*, meaning that they don't do anything worthy of real production code, but they demonstrate that the options are being parsed appropriately. If you find this example useful as a scaffold or guide for your own code that you want to take command-line options, you simply replace both the types of options and their specific implementations as your needs dictate. These are only examples. Here, we instantiate `SimpleCLI` and then call its `parse_opts` method with every command-line option used in `uses_cli.rb`. Let's see what that method does by looking at `simple_cli.rb`.

**NOTE** *The help and version command-line options have become fairly standardized, and their inclusion is generally appreciated.*

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# simple_cli.rb

=begin rdoc
Parses command line options.
=end
class SimpleCLI
```

Hashes

```
❶ # CONSTANTS

OPTIONS = {
  :version => ['-v', '--version'],
  :help    => ['-h', '--help'],
  :reset   => ['-r', '--reset'],
}
```

Here Docs

```
❷ USAGE =<<END_OF_USAGE
```

This program understands the following options:

```
-v, --version : displays the current version of the program
-h, --help    : displays a message with usage instructions
-r, --reset   : resets the program
```

With no command-line options, the program performs its default behavior.

```
END_OF_USAGE
```

```
VERSION = "Some Project version 0.01 (Pre-Alpha)\n"
```

```
# METHODS
```

```
❸ def parse_opts(args)
  return option_by_args(args[0]) if understand_args?(args)
  # options are not understandable, therefore display_usage
  display(USAGE)
end

❹ private

❺ def display(content)
  puts content
end

def do_default()
  puts 'I am performing my default behavior'
end

❻ def option_by_args(arg)
  return display(VERSION) if OPTIONS[:version].include?(arg)
  return display(USAGE)   if OPTIONS[:help].include?(arg)
  return reset()          if OPTIONS[:reset].include?(arg)
  do_default()
end

def reset()
  puts 'I am resetting myself.'
end

❼ def understand_args?(args)
  # works in Ruby1.8
  OPTIONS.keys.any? { |key| OPTIONS[key].include?(args[0]) }
```

The any?  
Method

The include?  
Method

```
❶ =begin works in Ruby1.6
  return true unless args
  return true unless args[0]
  return true if args[0].size.zero?
  OPTIONS.keys.each do |key|
    return true if OPTIONS[key].include?(args[0])
  end
  return false
=end
end

end
```

---

## How It Works

This file, `simple_cli.rb`, is a basic definition of a class called `SimpleCLI`, of course, with `RDoc` before the class definition and some useful constants right away at ❶. We've seen constants before, but we declare these constants inside of a class definition. This is actually the preferred way to use constants in Ruby. You often want to encapsulate methods inside an object, and the same is true for constants. Your code for some physics calculation cares about the speed of light, whereas your payday notification program cares about the number of days in a pay period. In our case, the command-line parser cares about what `OPTIONS` it can understand and the `USAGE` message it should report.

The `OPTIONS` constant is a new type of data structure called a Hash. *Hashes* are lookup tables, and are very similar to functions, in a way. You pass something into a Hash, and you receive one thing from it. That one thing never changes unless you either change what you pass into the Hash, or you change the internals of the Hash. As you can see, you declare a Hash with braces. The items to the left of the `=>` are the *keys* of the Hash, while the items to the right of the `=>` are the *values* of the Hash. If you pass in one of the keys, the Hash will return the matching value.

**NOTE** *Note that the one thing you receive could be a composite data type. For example, in our `OPTIONS` Hash, the values you receive are Arrays. The point is that you'll always receive the same Array for a given input value.*

Let's demonstrate in `irb`. The way to refer to a constant within a class is with the syntax `Class::CONSTANT`, so let's do that. Keep in mind that the Array `["-v", "--version"]` is the value of `SimpleCLI::OPTIONS` class associated with the key `:version`. That means that if you pass in the Symbol `:version`, you receive the Array `["-v", "--version"]`.

---

```
$ irb -r simple_cli.rb
irb(main):001:0> SimpleCLI::OPTIONS[:version]
=> ["-v", "--version"]
irb(main):002:0> SimpleCLI::OPTIONS[:help]
=> ["-h", "--help"]
irb(main):003:0> SimpleCLI::OPTIONS[:reset]
=> ["-r", "--reset"]
```

---

It works. If you compare our results in `irb` with the declaration of the `Hash` in the code, you shouldn't be surprised by what we got. Hashes are critically important data structures. I am particularly fond of defining them as constants within a class, so you'll see this practice repeated many times in the course of the book.

**NOTE** *There are several reasons why I often have Constants within a class that are Hashes. They're within a class because they need to be accessible within that class, but not outside it. The reason they're often Hashes is that I often find (for whatever reason) that simple lookup tables are useful data structures to have. After you've read some of the functional programming information, you may find it interesting to define both lambdas and Procs as class constants as well. I find myself often doing so.*

The declaration of the `USAGE` constant at ❷ looks a bit odd, with the equals sign followed by two left arrows. However, this is a very useful tool for multi-line text called a `here doc`. With a `here doc` declaration, the programmer can say that an expression should continue across multiple lines until a specific marker is reached—`END_OF_USAGE`, in this case. This is very handy for large amounts of verbatim text that you would otherwise have to build using multiple `print` or `puts` statements.

Next is a more straightforward constant called `VERSION`, which is a regular String. Its definition uses double-quote characters, because we want a newline character (notated by `\n`) at the end. The following two statements would print the same thing; the `\n` is just the way to include the newline within the String.

---

```
puts 'Some Project version 0.01 (Pre-Alpha)'\nprint "Some Project version 0.01 (Pre-Alpha)\n"
```

---

We have our constants, so let's move on to our methods. The main one (and in fact, the only public one) is `parse_opts`, defined at ❸. It parses options, and its implementation should be fairly readable at this point. It returns the result of calling the `option_by_args` method if it understands the args, and otherwise passes its own `USAGE` message into the `display` method. I like method names that tell you what they're supposed to do. If you care about the details, you can look inside to learn more, but the name should give you the basic information you need up front.

All of our methods, other than `parse_opts`, are private (❹), because they only need to be called by a `SimpleCLI` instance on itself. The `display`, `do_default`, and `reset` methods starting at ❺ should be pretty straightforward to you. These are the methods that you would change to do something more useful in real production code. The major logic of the class occurs in the remaining methods `option_by_arg` (❻) and `understand_args?` (❼). We know `understand_args?` is a predicate by the question mark at the end of its name, so it will be returning either `true` or `false`.

The `option_by_args` method checks each key of the `OPTIONS` constant, and if it finds a match, returns with the appropriate behavior. This means that it will not continue checking keys after it finds a match, so the order of the keys

is important. It checks for matches using an Array predicate method called `include?`, which simply returns `true` if the argument is found in the Array and `false` if it is not. This makes it very easy to have command-line aliases like `-v` and `--version` which mean the same thing, because either one will cause `include?` to return `true`. If `option_by_args` gets no matches, it performs its default behavior.

Key to all of this is whether or not the instance of `SimpleCLI` understands its arguments. In Ruby 1.8, which this book assumes you're using, it's easy to determine that question using another predicate method called `any?`. It takes a block and returns `true` if the contents of that block evaluate to `true` for any of the elements of the calling object, which is usually an Array. Let's demonstrate in `irb`:

---

```
$ irb
irb(main):001:0> a = [0, 1, 2]
=> [0, 1, 2]
irb(main):002:0> a.any? { |i| i > 1 }
=> true
irb(main):003:0> a.any? { |i| i > 2 }
=> false
```

---

In our case, we're checking if it's true that the Array value returned from the `OPTIONS` Hash includes the first argument to the `understand_args?` method for any of the keys of the `OPTIONS` Hash. As you can see, Hashes have a method called `keys` that returns all of their keys as a single Array. If our `any?` test returns `true`, that means that `SimpleCLI` knows how to react to the argument it received. The nice thing about this setup is that to make `SimpleCLI` understand more options, we just add more data to the `OPTIONS` Hash. The `understand_args?` method never has to change, only its input does. Programmers call this *data-driven programming*, and generally think highly of the practice.

That's our command-line parsing example. Let's run this using the options shown. Just like in `irb`, I'll show the output.

## Running the Script

---

```
$ ./uses_cli.rb -r
I am resetting myself.
$ ./uses_cli.rb -v
Some Project version 0.01 (Pre-Alpha)
$ ./uses_cli.rb -h
```

This program understands the following options:

- v, --version : displays the current version of the program
- h, --help : displays a message with usage instructions
- r, --reset : resets the program

With no command-line options, the program performs its default behavior.

```
$ ./uses_cli.rb
I am performing my default behavior
$ ./uses_cli.rb --reset
I am resetting myself.
$ ./uses_cli.rb --version
Some Project version 0.01 (Pre-Alpha)
$ ./uses_cli.rb --help
```

This program understands the following options:

```
-v, --version : displays the current version of the program
-h, --help    : displays a message with usage instructions
-r, --reset   : resets the program
```

With no command-line options, the program performs its default behavior.

---

## ***Hacking the Script***

I mentioned Ruby1.8, which provides the `any?` method. One of the machines I used while writing this book only has Ruby1.6. I've included some alternative code inside a modified RDoc section at ❸ to show just how convenient it is to have `any?` available to us. As you can see, RDoc can be useful for things other than final comments.

## **#8 Palindromes (palindrome.rb and palindrome2.rb)**

I'm rounding out this chapter with a few shorter examples pertaining to palindromes, which are bits of text that are the same when reversed as they are when read normally. Usually, we allow cheating to ignore spaces, capitalization differences, and punctuation, so *A man, a plan, a canal, Panama* qualifies as a palindrome under those conditions. While working on this book, I was reading another programming book that contained a discussion about palindromes. "Great!" I thought. "I'll add a `palindrome?` predicate method to all Strings. It'll be a nice simple bit to have in the chapter in which I talk about text." So I started thinking about breaking Strings into individual characters, writing a method that would compare characters an equal distance from each end of the String, and all the other things you'd need to do in some other languages. Then I realized how easy it is to implement this method in Ruby.

### ***The Code***

---

```
class String

  def palindrome?()
    (self == self.reverse)
  end

end
```

The reverse  
Method

## How It Works

That's it. Such an easy solution was staring me in the face the whole time. Strings can reverse themselves, and the definition of a palindromic String is that it is the same as itself reversed. This is when I realized that this example belongs in this chapter, because of the incredible relative ease of this task and what it implies about programmers being able to roll their own libraries.

Easy as it was to do, this version of a palindrome isn't entirely satisfactory. For one thing, it doesn't work for our example sentence. We need a version of the `palindrome?` predicate that is a bit more complex. Here it is. I'm placing the "Hacking the Script" subsection earlier in this section because I use it to demonstrate some ideas in the "Running the Script" and "Results" subsections, as I hope will become clear.

## Hacking the Script

The file `palindrome2.rb` is a bit more complex, as you'll see. But given what it does, it's still pretty simple in Ruby, compared to some other languages.

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# palindrome2.rb

=begin rdoc
Gives every <b>String</b> the ability to identify whether it is a
a palindrome. This version ignores all non-alphabetic characters,
making it suitable for longer text items.
=end

class String

  ❶ DUAL_CASE_ALPHABET = ('a'..'z').to_a + ('A'..'Z').to_a

  =begin rdoc
  Contrast this with some other languages, involving iterating through each
  string index and comparing with the same index from the opposite end.
  Takes 1 optional Boolean, which indicates whether case matters.
  Assumed to be true.
  =end
  ❷ def palindrome?(case_matters=true)
    letters_only(case_matters) == letters_only(case_matters).reverse
  end

  private

  =begin rdoc
  Takes 1 optional Boolean, which indicates whether case matters.
  Assumed to be false.
```



**The find\_all  
Method**

```
=end
❸ def letters_only(case_matters=false)
  just_letters = split('').find_all do |char|
    DUAL_CASE_ALPHABET.include?(char)
  end.join('')
  return just_letters if (case_matters)
  return just_letters.downcase
end

end
```

---

This file has the shebang telling us that it should be run in Ruby, even though it is a library file, rather than a file that will be directly executed. Why is that? The main reason is that it would otherwise start with RDoc, which we wouldn't want bash to try to interpret. With the shebang, this will automatically be run by Ruby if it is accidentally executed at the command line. If you're extra paranoid, you could add the first line to `palindrome.rb`, as well.

**NOTE** Shebang is the standard Unix geek pronunciation of `#!/`, which one often finds at the beginning of scripts.

In this program, we want to be able to test palindromes such that we ignore all non-letters and also have the ability to ignore case if we choose to. This is easy enough to do. Our new String has a private method called `letters_only` that does what you expect it to: It compiles a new String consisting only of those characters that pass `DUAL_CASE_ALPHABET.include?`, where `DUAL_CASE_ALPHABET` (❶) is an Array of all letters, both upper- and lowercase. If it receives a `case_matters` argument that is true, it returns those letters as they are, otherwise it returns an all-lowercase version of those letters, which we accomplish with the `downcase` method. The `split` method breaks a String into chunks (each character, in this case), and the `join` method sews them back together with a delimiter, which in this case is the empty String.

The `letters_only` method at ❸ is handy enough that in our `palindrome?` predicate (❷), all we need to do is compare its output to the reverse of its output, and we have our more flexible palindrome detector. Let's see it in action.

## Running the Script

I have written a test program called `test_palindrome.rb` that I keep in a separate directory called `tests/`. Here is the file, followed by a bash session in which I run it.

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# test_palindrome.rb
puts "Band\tPal?\tPal?"
bands = %w[abba Abba asia Asia]
bands.each do |band|
  puts "#{band}\t#\t#{band.palindrome?}\t#\t#{band.palindrome?(false)}"
end
```

---

## The Results

---

```
$ ruby -r palindrome2.rb tests/test_palindrome.rb
Band   Pal?   pal?
abba   true   true
Abba   false  true
asia   false  false
Asia   false  false
```

---

I started thinking about musical groups that both start and end with the letter *A*. I didn't get very far—but far enough to demonstrate the program, anyway. Note that we require `palindrome2.rb` at the command line, rather than with an explicit `require` keyword inside `test_palindrome.rb`. We can also do testing in `irb`, of course.

---

```
$ irb -r palindrome2.rb
irb(main):001:0> 'Ika Yaki'.palindrome?
=> false
irb(main):002:0> 'Ika Yaki'.palindrome?(false)
=> true
irb(main):003:0> 'ika yaki'.palindrome?
=> true
```

---

We see that Japanese grilled squid (*Ika Yaki*) is either properly recognized as a palindrome or not, depending on the parameters we tell the `palindrome?` predicate to use. These String-related operations should get us properly prepped for the next chapter, which deals with text manipulation in greater detail. Before, that, however, we should review what was new in this chapter.

**NOTE** *If you try `ruby -r palindrome.rb tests/test_palindrome.rb`, the test script will fail. Can you figure out why? The reason has to do with arguments.*

## Chapter Recap

What was new in this chapter?

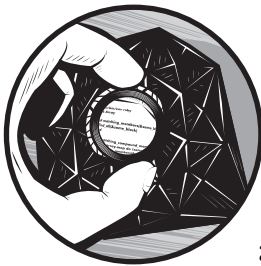
- Making new predicates for explicit Boolean casting
- Method aliases
- Superclasses
- Metaprogramming
- The Symbol class
- Arrays and the join method
- The protected level of access control
- The dup and pop methods
- Making command-line interface flags
- Library files for reusable code
- Class constants
- The Hash class
- Hash keys and values
- The here doc declaration
- Newline characters within Strings
- Using Array.include? to test for membership
- The any? predicate
- The Hash.keys method
- A bit on Ruby1.8 vs. Ruby1.6 and the any? predicate
- Palindromes and reversing Strings
- Extracting the letters from Strings
- Changing the case of Strings

That's even more than the last chapter, which was hardly holding your hand. Congratulations again. Let's move on to some more complex treatment of Strings in the next chapter.



# 4

## TEXT MANIPULATION



Text is the basic format for storing configuration data, web content, email, as well as data written in XML (eXtensible Markup Language) and YAML (YAML Ain't Markup Language) which we'll be looking at in greater detail later. It's important for a programming language to deal with text easily and efficiently. Luckily, Ruby meets this requirement. This chapter includes several scripts that demonstrate Ruby's approach to some common text-oriented problems.

### **#9 End-of-Line Conversion (`dos2unix.rb`)**

If you've never had to deal with end-of-line (EOL) differences among operating systems, consider yourself fortunate. Microsoft, Apple, and the various Unix-like operating systems (such as the BSDs and GNU/Linux systems) all disagree about how a text file should show the end of a line. This is further complicated by Apple's transition to a Unix-like operating system with Mac OS X, which is very similar to FreeBSD. Unix-like systems mark the

end of a line with the *line feed* character (also called *newline*); in interfaces that predate the cathode-ray tube (CRT), this character indicated that the paper should move up a line so that there would be more blank paper on which to print. On the other hand, older Macintosh systems (pre-Mac OS X) indicated the end of a line with the *carriage return* character, which indicated that the printer should move back to the left side to start printing again (this assumes you are using a language that is written left to right, like English). Windows (and DOS) systems, on the third hand, mark the end of a line with a carriage return followed by a line feed.

**NOTE** *Some Internet protocols also use the Windows EOL convention, despite often being hosted on Unix-like machines. Go figure.*

Why the difference? One could argue that the Windows approach makes the most sense—if we’re modeling the physical action of something like a typewriter, then both a carriage return and a line feed would be needed. However, the Unix-like and Macintosh approaches have the benefit of only using one character. This is an important savings, given how often newlines appear in text documents, and it was even more important in the early days of computers when both RAM and storage were much more limited and expensive than they are now.<sup>1</sup>

Today, most text editors and similar programs can deal with these differences without too much difficulty, so the end-of-line compatibility problem is generally no more than a nuisance. But why put up with a nuisance when you don’t have to? We can write a Ruby program that converts DOS or old-style Mac EOLs to Unix EOLs for us.

## The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# dos2unix.rb
# converts line feeds from DOS (or old-style Mac) to Unix format
❶ ARGV.each do |filename|
  contents_file = File.open(filename, 'r')
❷  contents = contents_file.read()
  contents_file.close()
❸  contents.gsub!(/\r\n?/, "\n")
  replace_file = File.new(filename, 'w+')
❹  replace_file.puts(contents)
  replace_file.close()
end
```

---

Regular  
Expressions

## How It Works

My pro-Unix biases are clear from both the name and purpose of this program. Let’s see what it does. At ❶, we start looping through the arguments to the script, calling each `filename` in turn. We open and close that argument

---

<sup>1</sup> This is also the reason many Unix commands are so short: `rm` for *remove*, `cp` for *copy*, and so on.

(currently called `filename`) as we've done before, reading its contents into the creatively named variable `contents`. We do some magic with `gsub!` at ❸, and then write contents into a new file (❹) called `replace_file`. What's the magic at ❺? Let's look at it again.

---

```
contents.gsub!(/\\r\\n?/, "\\n")
```

---

We're calling a method called `gsub!` on our `contents` String. We know that `gsub!` (which stands for *global substitution*) is a destructive method because of its exclamation-mark ending, and it looks like it takes two arguments. The first argument is enclosed in regular slashes, and the second argument is a newline String. The first argument is a *regular expression*, which is a special kind of variable that can describe the contents of a piece of text without knowing everything about it. Regular expressions (*regexes* for short) allow you to test for conditions like *Does this text consist entirely of digits?*, which you could imagine might be useful before using the `to_i` method of a String. Regexes also allow tests like *Are there exactly seven words in the text?* or *Do all words in this text start with a capital letter?*, as well as many others.

Regexes accomplish tasks by defining descriptors for characters as well as groupings and the number of occurrences of those characters. As you can see in the code, regexes are delineated with slashes. This practice of using slashes is not specific to Ruby; it is common in other languages as well. The question mark in the regex does not mean a literal question mark appearing in the text; instead, it means that whatever preceded it is optional, occurring zero or more times. Let's try out some regexes in `irb`. We'll use a new operator called `=~`, which is similar to `==`. Instead of testing for exact equality, though, it tests whether or not the regular expression matches any part of the String we call it on. It returns the first point at which a match occurs if the question the regex represents (i.e., *Does this text consist entirely of digits?*) is true for that String; it returns `nil` if there is no match.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> letters = 'abcde'
=> "abcde"
irb(main):002:0> letters =~ /a/
=> 0
irb(main):003:0> letters =~ /b/
=> 1
irb(main):004:0> letters =~ /e/
=> 4
irb(main):005:0> letters =~ /x/
=> nil
```

---

We have our String, `letters`, which is just the first five letters of the alphabet. We then test whether the letter `a` appears anywhere in `letters`. It does, right at the beginning, so our test returns zero. Why? Because that is the index within the String where the first match occurs—remember that we start counting with zero, not one. Since the next letter is `b`, when we test for the presence of `b` within `letters`, we should get a result that is one higher than the value when we tested for `a`. We do. Jumping ahead to the letter `e`, we have a match at the last index, which is the fifth letter and has the index of four,

again because we start counting with zero. When we test for a letter that does not appear in letters, we get the return value `nil`.

That's simple matching. Now let's use that question mark.

---

```
irb(main):006:0> letters =~ /aa/?  
=> 0  
irb(main):007:0> letters =~ /ax?/?  
=> 0
```

---

At first, line six seems similar to line two. Line seven is more interesting, in that the optional second letter is a new letter that does not appear in letters at all. In both cases, the second letter precedes a question mark, which makes it optional. On line six, we are asking if our String (consisting of the first five letters) has an *a* followed by zero or more *as*. It does, starting at index zero, so that is our return value. We then ask if our String has an *a* followed by zero or more *xs*. It does, starting at index zero. Let's continue.

---

```
irb(main):008:0> letters =~ /ab?/?  
=> 0  
irb(main):009:0> letters =~ /bc?/?  
=> 1  
irb(main):010:0> letters =~ /b?/?  
=> 0
```

---

Line eight asks if letters has an *a* followed by any optional *bs*, which it does at index zero. Line nine asks if letters has a *b* followed by any optional *cs*, which it does at index one. Line ten asks if letters has any optional *bs*, which it does at index zero. The lesson is clear—matching optional characters is very enthusiastic, and the complete absence of a character matches zero or more occurrences of any character. Be very careful with your use of the question mark, especially as a regex argument used by a destructive method. Here's another demonstration of a match for zero occurrences of a character:

---

```
irb(main):011:0> letters =~ //  
=> 0
```

---

There's nothing at the beginning of letters. Matching on nothing is conceptually odd, but it can be very useful when you want to break a String into an Array of each of its characters. You may recall we used the `split` method matching the empty string in our script `palindrome2.rb` (Chapter 3) to deal with each letter in the String in turn.

Now we've done our matching. I said earlier that `gsub` stands for *global substitution*, so let's do some substituting, again in `irb`.

#### The `gsub` Method

---

```
irb(main):012:0> letters.gsub(/a/, 'x')  
=> "xbcde"  
irb(main):013:0> letters.gsub(/ab?/, 'x')  
=> "xcde"  
irb(main):014:0> letters.gsub(/ac?/, 'x')  
=> "xbcde"
```

---



You can see that `gsub` finds the portion of the `String` that matches the first argument and returns a result in which the first argument is replaced by the second argument. Now let's review the differences between destructive and non-destructive methods, as they relate to these substitutions.

---

```
irb(main):015:0> letters
=> "abcde"
irb(main):016:0> letters.gsub!(/ac?/, 'x')
=> "xbcde"
irb(main):017:0> letters
=> "xbcde"
```

---

The non-destructive version leaves the original `letters` alone, as you'd expect, while the destructive version makes permanent changes to `letters`. The `gsub!` method also returns `nil` if it is unable to comply, as shown in `irb`:

---

```
irb(main):001:0> foo = 'abcd'
=> "abcd"
irb(main):002:0> foo.gsub(/a/, 'b')
=> "bbcd"
irb(main):003:0> foo.gsub!(/a/, 'b')
=> "bbcd"
irb(main):004:0> foo.gsub(/a/, 'b')
=> "bbcd"
irb(main):005:0> foo.gsub!(/a/, 'b')
=> nil
```

---

This interlude barely scratches the surface of regular expressions—they're tremendously useful. I'll certainly explain the specific regexes used in the scripts in this book, but there's a lot more to learn about them. If you want to explore regular expressions further, an excellent resource is Jeffrey Friedl's *Mastering Regular Expressions* (O'Reilly, 2006) and its companion website, <http://regex.info>. This is the definitive text on the subject of regular expressions. It has a slight Perl bias, although its respect for Ruby seems to increase with every new edition. Since the implementation of regular expressions in many languages (including Ruby) is inspired by Perl, the Perl-specific content is easily transferable to Ruby, largely because the two languages' treatment of regular expressions is so similar in the first place.

How does all this relate to our script, `dos2unix.rb`? The `\r` `String` stands for the carriage return character—the one used on older Macintosh systems to indicate a line break. The `\n` `String` is the newline character, which is used on Unix-like systems and after a carriage return on Windows systems to indicate a line break. This substitution finds all occurrences of a carriage return, as well as any optional newlines that follow it, and replaces them with a single newline.

## ***Running the Script***

Execute this as `ruby -w dos2unix.rb file_to_modify`.

## The Results

When I look at my sample file `extras/DOS_file.txt` in my text editor of choice (vim), it looks like this:

---

```
I am a DOS file.^MI am a DOS file.
```

---

The `^M` is how vim displays a `\r` character on my system. After running the script with `ruby -w dos2unix.rb extras/DOS_file.txt`, the results are

---

```
I am a DOS file.  
I am a DOS file.
```

---

## Hacking the Script

What if you want to convert to one of the other line break formats? To convert a file to Windows EOL format, you can replace the line at ❸ in `dos2unix.rb` with the following line, which essentially means *Replace all occurrences of either a carriage return or a newline with a carriage return followed by a new line.*

---

```
contents.gsub!(/(\r|\n)/, "\r\n")
```

---

For a nostalgic Mac that wants to go back to its pre-OS X line breaks, you can convert to the old Apple format by replacing the line at ❹ with this line; this will replace all optional carriage returns followed by a mandatory new-line with just a carriage return.

---

```
contents.gsub!(/\r?\n/, "\r")
```

---

The parentheses in a regex are similar to the parentheses in Ruby—they indicate a grouping that should be considered a single entity. The *pipe* character (also called the *vertical bar*) in a regex indicates a choice between what is on either side of it.

**NOTE** *Subexpressions that are grouped together by parentheses within a regular expression are also captured into specific variables, depending on the programming language's implementation of regular expressions. You can read more in Friedl's book if this topic interests you.*

You can also accomplish a DOS-to-Unix EOL conversion with a one-liner:

---

```
ruby -pi -e 'gsub(/\r\n?/, "\n")' some_file
```

---

Sometimes a quick-and-dirty solution is all you need. If you're curious about the implementation of this one-liner, you can consult the Ruby man page (`man ruby`) for more about the `-p` flag (which provides a shortcut for dealing with the lines of a file), the `-i` flag (which specifies in-place editing of a file), and the `-e` flag (which specifies that a command should be executed).



```
7, 8, 9, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):007:0> get_format(has100items)
=> "%03d"
```

---

You can see that the numeral part of the format changes; it is always equal to the digits taken up by the size of the Array. Incidentally, you can also see how the Array class implements multiplication. One way would have been to multiply each member of the Array by the operand outside of the Array, but that would only work when each member of the Array knows how to be multiplied by something. Instead, the Array just duplicates itself as many times as the value of the operand. If you multiply an Array by one, you should get an equivalent Array.

```
irb(main):008:0> has10items * 1
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):009:0> (has10items * 1) == has10items
=> true
```

---

We see that we do.

The `get_output` method (❷) starts by establishing the necessary format and setting a variable called `output` to the empty String. You can guess that we'll be concatenating other Strings onto it.

We do that at ❸ with a new Array method called `each_with_index`. This method is very similar to the `each` method that we've already seen, except that it also gives us the appropriate index number. We'll call the given element of lines by the name `line`, and we'll refer to the index number as the letter `i`. We then use a new method called `sprintf` that formats data into Strings (❹). It takes two arguments: the first is the format to use, and the second is the data to be formatted. We want to format the index number `i` using the output of the `get_format` method.<sup>2</sup> The purpose of this operation is to calculate the number of digits needed for the maximum line number we'll be displaying (the width), and format each line number according to that width. This formatting ensures a prettier output.

Each line of our output consists of `sprintf`'s output, a colon, a space, and the original line. All of this happens with the first argument on the command line.

## Running the Script

You can run with `ruby -w line_num.rb some_file`, replacing `some_file` with the file to which you want to add line numbers.

## The Results

---

```
$ ruby -w line_num.rb line_num.rb
01: #!/usr/bin/env ruby
02: # line_num.rb
```

---

<sup>2</sup> Actually, we format the value of  $i + 1$ ; we want to call the first line number one, but the index value is zero, because computers start counting with zero.

```

03:
04: def get_lines(filename)
05:   return File.open(filename, 'r').readlines
06: end
07:
08: def get_format(lines)
09:   return "%0#{lines.size.to_s.size}d"
10: end
11:
12: def get_output(lines)
13:   format = get_format(lines)
14:   output = ''
15:   lines.each_with_index do |line,i|
16:     output += "#{sprintf(format, i+1)}: #{line}"
17:   end
18:   return output
19: end
20:
21: print get_output(get_lines(ARGV[0]))

```

---

If your text file has one 100 or more lines, the pre-colon portion of this output will automatically add as many characters as needed to accommodate its new requirements. That's all there is to it.

## # 1 1 Wrapping Lines of Text (softwrap.rb)

Sometimes you may have a text file that you want to perform whitespace compression on, such as converting all repeated spaces into a single space. The script below assumes that all double line breaks should be preserved and that all single line breaks should be converted into spaces. Each group of repeated spaces should also be converted into a single space. Let's dive right in.

### *The Code*

---

```

#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# softwrap.rb

=begin rdoc
"Softwrap" a filename argument, preserving "\n\n"
between paragraphs but compressing "\n" and other
whitespace within each paragraph into a single space.
=end
❶ def softwrap(filename)
❷   File.open(filename, 'r').readlines.inject('') do |output,line|
❸     output += softwrap_line(line)
❹   end.gsub(/\t+/, ' ').gsub(/ +/, ' ')
end # softwrap

```

The inject  
Method

```

=end rdoc
Return "\n\n" if the <b>String</b> argument has no length after being
chomped (signifying that it was a blank line separating paragraphs),
otherwise return the chomped line with a trailing space for padding.
=end
❹ def softwrap_line(line)
❺   return "\n\n" if line == "\n"
❻   return line.chomp + ' '
end # softwrap_line

❼ puts softwrap(ARGV[0])

```

---

We define a `softwrap` method (❹) that takes a filename argument and then call `softwrap` on the first command-line argument to the script. The script then calls the `readlines` method upon the opening of a file, as we've done many times already. Usually, as in the previous script, we would assign that result into an Array of lines. This time, we call a new method called `inject` that you can see takes an argument (the empty String, in our example) and a block; we define two variables within the block in the process (❺).

In our example, we're calling those two variables `output` and `line`. The name `line` is familiar enough. The name `output` is apt, as the `inject` method assumes that the first block-level variable should start with the value of the argument to `inject` that preceded the block—the empty String, in this case. The `inject` method is remarkable in that modifications of the output variable persist from each iteration to the next. At ❺ we append `softwrap_line(line)` onto `output` each time through the iterations within `inject`, and the appends are remembered each time. The `inject` method is very useful for any sort of appending or successive operations. Let's look at how it operates on some numbers in `irb`.

---

```

irb(main):001:0> nums = [1, 2, 3, 4]
=> [1, 2, 3, 4]
irb(main):002:0> nums.inject(0) { |sum,number| sum += number }
=> 10
irb(main):003:0> nums.inject(0) { |product,number| product *= number }
=> 0
irb(main):004:0> nums.inject(1) { |product,number| product *= number }
=> 24

```

---

On line one we define a variable that holds the digits from one to four. One operation that `inject` seems well suited for is adding a list of numbers; we do that on line two. The `inject` method can handle any operation, though, so let's try multiplication on line three. When we do this, we get a result of zero. The reason is that our initial value for `product` is zero, so any multiplication after that will get us nowhere. On line four, we set the initial value to one, which is more appropriate for multiplication, and we get a result that makes sense.

The `inject` method is your first real taste of *functional programming*, a style of programming in which operations are treated as mathematical functions and side effects are minimized. We'll see much more of `inject` and similar

methods in later chapters. For now, all we need to concern ourselves with is the fact that it collects each line, passes line through the `softwrap_line` function, and then appends the result onto output.

**NOTE** *Remember that side effects are persistent changes made to something (anything) apart from the value returned. In Ruby, methods that have side effects generally end with an exclamation mark, as we've seen already. Methods with no side effects return some value that you requested, but leave the object on which the method was called in the same state it was in before you called the method.*

What does `softwrap_line` do? The name suggests that it performs the soft-wrapping operation (however we are about to define it) on one line at a time.

The method definition starts at ④, where it takes in a line. At ⑤, we return right away if our new line variable is only a carriage return, since this would indicate a real break that we want to preserve. In all other cases, we return the chomped line plus a space character (⑥), which is how this script implements the actual wrapping. We do this `softwrap_line` operation on every line, appending it onto the `inject`'s output variable at ③ as described earlier. Our block for `inject` is of the `do/end` variety, rather than one that uses the brace characters.

We see something new at ⑧—a method called on the keyword `end`.<sup>3</sup> There's no reason we shouldn't see this, though. Everything in Ruby is a object, and the the result of our `inject` method is whatever has accumulated into its output variable. In our script, it's a String, so the value of our `inject` block can respond to any String methods, such as `gsub`.

The first `gsub` at ⑧ searches for any grouping of tab characters (represented within the regular expression as `"\t"`) and replaces the set of them with a space. The plus sign within the regular expression is similar to the question mark we've seen before, except that instead of meaning *Zero or more of the preceding thing* it means *One or more of the preceding thing*. This regular expression replaces one tab with one space, three tabs with one space, and so on. Let's try something similar in `irb`. I'll use letters rather than tabs in the `irb` example because they'll be easy to read in a printed book. The question mark was just for a review and to show the difference between it and the plus sign within a regular expression.

**The + sign  
in Regular  
Expressions**

---

```
irb(main):001:0> s = 'abcde'  
=> "abcde"  
irb(main):002:0> s.gsub(/ab+/, 'ba')  
=> "bacde"  
irb(main):003:0> s.gsub(/abb+/, 'ba')  
=> "abcde"  
irb(main):004:0> s.gsub(/abb?/, 'ba')  
=> "bacde"
```

---

So we replace tabs (if there are any) with a space. The output of the first `gsub` is also a String, so it can respond to any String methods, such as another `gsub`. This time we want to replace any occurrences of one or more spaces

---

<sup>3</sup>More precisely, the method is being called on the result of the code concluded by `end`.

with a single space—basically just compressing the whitespace. The last line of the script at ❷ shows that we do all of this on the first filename argument to the script.

## Running the Script

This script is run with `ruby -w softwrap.rb some_file`, where *some\_file* is the file whose whitespace will be compressed. Note that this script does not modify the original file, but rather outputs the changed version, just like a non-destructive method in Ruby.

## The Results

Here's the result of calling this script on itself:

---

```
$ ruby -w softwrap.rb softwrap.rb
#!/usr/bin/env ruby # softwrap.rb

=begin rdoc "Softwrap" a filename argument, preserving "\n\n" between
paragraphs but compressing "\n" and other whitespace within each paragraph
into a single space. =end def softwrap(filename) File.open(filename,
'r').readlines.inject('') do |output,line| output += softwrap_line(line)
end.gsub(/\t+/, ' ').gsub(/ +/, ' ') end # softwrap

=begin rdoc Return "\n\n" if the <b>String</b> argument has no length after
being chomped (signifying that it was a blank line separating paragraphs),
otherwise return the chomped line with a trailing space for padding. =end def
softwrap_line(line) return "\n\n" if line == "\n" return line.chomp + ' ' end
# softwrap_line

puts softwrap(ARGV[0])
```

---

## Hacking the Script

The successive `gsub` calls on line ❸ could have been expressed with a more complex regular expression instead: `gsub(/(\t| )+/, ' ')`.

## #12 Counting Words in a File (`word_count.rb`)

It's often handy to know the number of words in a file. Word count is a standard feature in word-processing programs, but if you're not using a word processor, obtaining a word count might not be so easy. I originally wrote this script when I was working on a project using an XML-based document production system called *DocBook* (<http://www.docbook.org>) and wanted to have a word count that roughly corresponded to those you could get from a word processor. The Unix command `wc` counts words, but the numbers it reported didn't necessarily match what a word processor might report; the main reason probably had to do with issues like whether words with fewer than a certain number of letters should count as a "word" in the word processor's counter. I knew the approximate ratio of the word processor's



word count versus the output of `wc` (I call this the *fudge factor*), and I could certainly do the math, but I wanted something that would do all of this for me automatically. Let's take a look.

## The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# word_count.rb

class String

  ❶ def num_matches(thing_to_match)
    return self.split(thing_to_match).size - 1
  end # num_matches

end # String

  ❷ BAR_LENGTH = 20

  # to match these calculations with the output of some word processors
  ❸ FUDGE_FACTOR = 0.82

  ❹ def word_count(files)
    output = ''
    total_word_count = 0
    ❺ files.each do |filename|
      file_word_count = word_count_for_file(filename)
      output += "#{filename} has #{file_word_count} words.\n"
      total_word_count += file_word_count
    end # each file
    ❻ return output +
      '- ' * BAR_LENGTH + "\n" +
      "Total word count = #{total_word_count}" +
      " (#{(total_word_count * FUDGE_FACTOR)})"
  end # word_count

  ❼ def word_count_for_file(filename)
    f = File.new(filename, 'r')
    contents = f.read()
    f.close()
    spaces = contents.num_matches(' ')
    breaks = contents.num_matches("\n")
    false_doubles = contents.num_matches(" \n")
    double_spaces = contents.num_matches(' ')
    hyphens = contents.num_matches('-')
    false_doubles += double_spaces + hyphens
    words = spaces + breaks - false_doubles + 1
    return words
  end # word_count_for_file

puts word_count(ARGV)
```

---

### Multiplying Strings

## How It Works

We start out by adding a new method called `num_matches` to the `String` class (❶). It simply returns the number of times the argument appears within the calling `String`. I also define top-level constants called `BAR_LENGTH` (❷), which is just for visual formatting, and `FUDGE_FACTOR` (❸), which I already noted is the ratio between the two different word-counting programs I was working with.

We then define the `word_count` method (❹), which takes the `files` argument. You'll notice on the last line of the script that this program takes an arbitrary number of filenames as its argument, which is different from our earlier scripts that would only deal with a single file at a time. The `word_count` method defines local variables called `output` and `total_word_count`, setting them to useful defaults for a `String` and an `Integer`, respectively. We then loop through the files (❺), assigning the proper values into `file_word_count` and `output` and accumulating each `file_word_count` into the `total_word_count`. The `output` variable now has a description of each file's count. We return that, followed by a line consisting of the hyphen character multiplied by the `BAR_LENGTH` constant (❻). Multiplication of `Strings` is very similar to multiplication of `Arrays`, which we've already seen. We add a `String` consisting of 20 hyphen characters to the overall expression returned. The returned expression closes with the total multiplied by the `FUDGE_FACTOR` constant in parentheses.

Before finishing with this script, we need to understand how it calculates the word count for each file. Let's examine the `word_count_for_file` function (❼). It opens by getting the contents out of the file being worked on. It then uses some quick-and-dirty calls to the `num_matches` method on the `contents` variable to get counts for spaces, line breaks, and so on. It then calculates the number of words in the `contents` `String` using those rough numbers.

There are more accurate ways to count words in a `String`, many of which use techniques described in Jeffrey Friedl's *Mastering Regular Expressions*. However, this script is intended for quick, approximate results, given that it uses a fudge factor. This script shows that just adding one new method to an existing class can be very handy even for a short, back-of-the-envelope task. We'll see more of that in later scripts, as well.

## Running the Script

You can run this script with `ruby -w word_count.rb some_file`, where `some_file` is the file whose word count you want to compute.

## The Results

Here is the result of calling this file on itself:

---

```
$ ruby -w word_count.rb word_count.rb
word_count.rb has 132 words.
-----
Total word count = 132 (108.24)
```

---

Notice how the script reports both the literal and fudged word counts.

## #13 Word Histogram (most\_common\_words.rb)

And now for something that most word processors don't do: finding the most commonly used words in a document. Like the previous script, it adds an additional "helper" method to an existing built-in class to simplify the job for our new main method. Let's take a look.

### The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
#most_common_words.rb

class Array

  ❶ def count_of(item)
  ❷   grep(item).size
  ❸   #inject(0) { |count,each_item| item == each_item ? count+1 : count }
    end

  end

  ❹ def most_common_words(input, limit=25)
    freq = Hash.new()
    sample = input.downcase.split(/\W/)
    sample.uniq.each do |word|
  ❺   freq[word] = sample.count_of(word) unless word == ''
    end
    words = freq.keys.sort_by do |word|
  ❻   freq[word]
    end.reverse.map do |word|
  ❼   "#{word} #{freq[word]}"
    end
    return words[0, limit]
  end

  ❽ puts most_common_words(readlines.to_s).join("\n")
```

---

The grep  
Method

The map  
Method

### How It Works

The new method of Array is called `count_of` (❶); it takes an argument called `item` and returns the number of times that `item` is found within the Array in question. The default implementation of this method (❷) uses an Array method called `grep`, which takes an argument and returns all elements that match that element. Since we want the count of items matching the condition (and not those items themselves), we call the `size` method on the return value of `grep`.

The line at ❸ shows a way to accomplish the same task using the `inject` method, which we've already covered.

At ❹ we define the `most_common_words` method; it takes a mandatory `input` argument and an optional `limit` argument, which defaults to 25. We define a new Hash variable called `freq`, which will store the frequency of each word.

We define an Array called `sample`, which consists of a case-insensitive input, broken at each whitespace portion (the `\W` in the regular expression means *any whitespace*). We loop through each unique word in the sample, adding its frequency to the `freq` Hash. I chose to skip the empty string, not counting it as a word (❸).

Once we've constructed the `freq` Hash, we want to use our `limit` argument. We loop through the keys of `freq` (which are the actual words themselves) and sort them by their frequency of appearance (❹). We want to see the most common words, rather than the least common words, so we reverse that sorted list, and `map` an operation onto it.

The `map` operation is very common in the world of functional programming. It's often used as an alternative to looping, so in Ruby, we'll often find that we want to use either the `each` method or the `map` method for a given task, depending on our needs. Generally, if you want to make destructive changes to a list of items, use `each`; if you want to make a new list of transformed items, use `map`. Let's try `map` in `irb`. I've been showing you lots of `irb` examples with digits, so now I'll show you a quick way to create an Array of them. Ruby has a class called *Range*, which indicates the items from a given starting point to a given endpoint. We'll use that class to construct an Array.

---

## Ranges

```
irb(main):001:0> digit_range = 0..9
=> 0..9
irb(main):002:0> digit_range.class
=> Range
irb(main):003:0> digits = digit_range.to_a
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):004:0> digits.map { |num| num + 1 }
=> [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10]
irb(main):005:0> digits.map { |num| num + 10 }
=> [10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19]
irb(main):006:0> digits.map { |num| num * 2 }
=> [0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18]
irb(main):007:0> digits.map { |num| num ** 2 }
=> [0, 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64, 81]
irb(main):008:0> digits
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):009:0> digits.map! { |num| num ** 2 }
=> [0, 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64, 81]
irb(main):010:0> digits
=> [0, 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64, 81]
```

---

As you can see, `map` is very convenient for any sort of transformation of a list of items that can be expressed with a simple description, such as *double all of these things* on line six, or *square all of these things* on line seven. Remember that `map` is non-destructive (as shown on line eight) unless you call it with the exclamation mark (as shown on lines nine and ten). We'll `map` an operation onto the words, sorted in reverse order by frequency of appearance in our sample text. The operation to be mapped (❺) is the outputting of a String consisting of the word itself followed by a space character, followed by the frequency of that word.

All of this occurs within the assignment into the `words` variable on the same line as ⑤, so each member of the Array called `words` is a String that is the result of the ⑦ operation. At ⑧, we return a subsection of the `words` Array, starting at the beginning, and limit it to a length equal to the `limit` argument. Since the output of the `most_common_words` method is an Array and we want to print it as a String, we do a `join` with a newline at ⑨, making each Array item a separate line.

## ***Running the Script***

We call this script with `ruby most_common_words.rb filename_to_analyze`, calling `readlines.to_s` on the `filename` argument, which provides the input to analyze. Let's try it on itself.

## ***The Results***

---

```
$ ruby most_common_words.rb most_common_words.rb
word 9
end 6
freq 5
do 3
sample 3
most_common_words 3
count 3
item 3
0 2
count_of 2
words 2
input 2
def 2
limit 2
each_item 2
split 1
unless 1
1 1
downcase 1
map 1
rb 1
array 1
ruby 1
usr 1
each 1
```

---

## ***Hacking the Script***

Just as an aside, you could also implement `count_of` using this line:

---

```
dup.delete_if { |i| i != item }.size || 0
```

---

## #14 Rotating Characters in a String (rotate.rb)

We'll close with a simple program that rotates the order of characters within a String. We'll accomplish this via a method that takes a character (meaning a String of length one) argument. The String to be rotated will try to keep rotating until the character argument appears at index 0. If the character is not found at all, it will return `nil`.

### The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# rotate.rb

class String

  ❶ def rotate(char)
  ❷   return nil unless self.match(char)
  ❸   return self if (self[0] == char[0])
  ❹   chars = self.split(//)
      return ([chars.pop] + chars).join('').rotate(char)
  end

  ❺ def rotate!(char)
      replace(rotate(char))
  end

end
```

---

Recursion

### How It Works

This program introduces a concept called *recursion*, which (like `map`) is used frequently in functional programming, often as an alternative to looping. A *recursive operation* is one that is partly defined in terms of itself. Let's explore the concept in our `rotate.rb` script.

The definition of the main `rotate` method that we add to the String object is at ❶. I said earlier that if the character argument (called `char`) is not found within the main String (here called `self`), the `rotate` method will return `nil` (❷). If `char` is the initial character within the String, we don't need to do any rotating, so it will return the main String under those conditions (❸). The numeral 0 within braces is not an anonymous Array—it's a method of `self` that returns the first character of a String. We call that method on both the `self` String and the single-character String `char`. When those two Strings are equal, we know that the `self` String starts with the requested rotation character.

**NOTE** We use an index of zero within the braces to return the first character in the String on line ❸ because Ruby (like many languages) starts counting indexes at zero, not one.

We know that if we've gotten this far without returning, we have a String that is eligible for rotation (because it contains `char`), and needs to be rotated

to match (because it doesn't start with `char`). We perform the rotation by defining a new variable called `chars` (❹), which is an Array of each character within the String. We use the `pop` method at ❺ to remove the last character from `chars`, remembering that `pop` is destructive (despite the lack of an exclamation mark, for historical reasons). The `chars` Array now contains all the characters except the one that was just popped off. If we add those Arrays together, putting the Array containing the popped character first, we've just created a new Array in which the last member has been moved from the end to the front, shifting all other members back.

We wrap the popped character in brackets so that we can more easily add the two Arrays (the popped off character and the remaining characters, respectively). Since the `rotate` method will eventually return a String, we `join` our Array elements with an empty String separator. This produces a String that has been rotated once. Are we done? Not really.

## Recursion

The rotation works well, but it might not be enough. What if we need to rotate multiple characters before we find a match? There's an easy way to do that; it's called the `rotate` method—you know, the method we're still in the process of defining. We can just call `rotate` on our newly created String.

We already know that our newly created String will pass the test at ❷. We're mainly interested in whether or not it needs further rotation. That's the test at ❸. If only one rotation was needed, this second call to the `rotate` method will return the newly created String, and since the second call to `rotate` was within a return call on the line at ❹, the main call to `rotate` will return that value, as well.

If only one rotation was not enough to find a match, our second call to the `rotate` method will do the same shifting of characters (starting at ❹) that we just discussed, culminating in yet another call to `rotate`, this time on a String that has been rotated two characters' worth, and so on.

Each successive time `rotate` is called, the String to be operated on is one step closer to our desired result. This is very common in recursion, which we will be discussing in greater depth in later chapters. As you can see at ❹, we also define a destructive version called `rotate!`.

## Running the Script

Let's look at some output using `irb` with `irb -r rotate.rb`.

## The Results

---

```
$ irb -r rotate.rb
irb(main):001:0> 'I am a String.'.rotate('a')
=> "a String.I am "
irb(main):002:0> 'I am a String.'.rotate('S')
=> "String.I am a "
```

---

In each case, the String on which rotate is called has its characters shifted until the character asked for is the first character in the String. That's it for this chapter's scripts.

## Chapter Recap

What was new in this chapter?

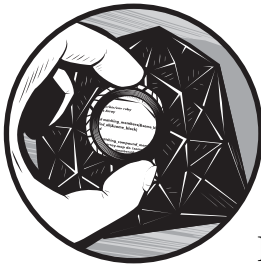
- End-of-line differences among operating systems
- Regular expressions, including the ? counter
- The sprintf method
- Multiplication of Arrays
- The inject method
- Regular expressions with the + counter
- Objects as the results of blocks
- Calling successive methods on the output of methods (“chaining” methods)
- Using new methods of Open Classes in quick scripts
- Multiplication of Strings
- The grep method
- The map method
- The Range class
- Recursion

That's quite a bit, including some important new functional concepts like recursion and a few very handy functional methods. You'll need these concepts as we move on. Let's proceed to some more complex treatment of numbers in Chapter 5.



# 5

## NUMBER UTILITIES



Numbers are fundamental for all computers and programming languages, and Ruby is no exception. In this chapter's scripts, we'll deal with useful data that is primarily numeric but is otherwise quite diverse. We'll explore some pure math, following up with recursion, which I introduced in Chapter 4. We'll also do some type conversion, whereby numbers will be represented in different ways that are convenient for human users. We'll also do some unit conversion, specifically monetary units.<sup>1</sup> While doing all of this, we'll also delve further into metaprogramming, Hashes, using external libraries, and two distinct formats for data storage in external files: XML (eXtensible Markup Language) and YAML (YAML Ain't Markup Language). That's a lot of ground to cover, so let's get started.

---

<sup>1</sup>We'll make a temperature converter in Chapter 7, since it depends on concepts we haven't covered yet.

## #15 Computing Powers (power\_of.rb)

This is the most purely mathematical of this chapter's scripts, and it deals with exponentiation. Before we get too far into the script itself, let's use `irb` to explore how Ruby handles exponentiation:

### Exponentiation

---

```
irb(main):001:0> 2 ** 2
=> 4
irb(main):002:0> 2 ** 3
=> 8
```

---

As you can see, the way to express “to the power of” in Ruby is with the double asterisk. Since both the number raised to some power and the power itself are expressions, they can also be more complex, like this:

---

```
irb(main):003:0> 2 ** (1 + 2)
=> 8
irb(main):004:0> 8 ** (1.0/3.0)
=> 2.0
```

---

You can raise a number (called the *base*) to a given exponent easily with the `**` operator. As you can see in line four in the above code, when you want to reverse a traditional exponentiation, you can use a reciprocal power.

**NOTE** *We use floating-point numbers for the exponent in ❶, because we don't want our expression to be rounded down to zero.*

If you have the base and the exponent, you can find the missing result. If you have the result of the exponentiation and the exponent, you can undo your operation to find the base by using the reciprocal of the exponent. What if you know the base and the result, and want to find the exponent? That's what this script is for. Let's take a look.

### The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# power_of.rb

class Integer

  =begin rdoc
  Add a simple <b>Integer</b>-only method that reports the
  exponent to which the base must be raised to get self.
  =end

  ❶ def power_of(base)
    # return nil for inapplicable situations
    return nil unless base.is_a?(Integer)
    ❷ return nil if (base.zero? and not [0,1].include?(self))

    # deal with odd but reasonable
    # numeric situations
```

### Recursion

### The is\_a? Method

```

    ③ return 1      if base == self
    ④ return 0     if self == 1
    ⑤ return false if base == 1
    ⑥ return false if base.abs > self.abs

    ⑦ exponent = (self/base).power_of(base)
    ⑧ return exponent ? exponent + 1 : exponent
  end

end

```

---

The abs Method

## How It Works

We want this operation to be a method that can be called on any Integer, so we take advantage of Ruby's open classes and simply add a new method. We have the standard boilerplate and RDoc up to the method definition at ①, which shows that it takes an argument called `base`. The lines up to and including ② cause our `power_of` method to exit early under conditions that are not appropriate for it to do its job. We return the `nil` value when asked to find a power in relation to a base that isn't even an Integer, because that question is meaningless. We also return `nil` when the base is zero and the result is neither zero nor one, because zero raised to any power will always be either zero or one, making that question also meaningless.

There will certainly be other situations where our response is meaningful. We return 1 at ③ if the base and the result of the exponentiation (`self`) are the same value, because any number to the power of one will be itself. We return 0 at ④ if `self` is one, because any number raised to the zero power will equal one. This is confusing for many people. How can something multiplied by itself zero times be anything?

The answer lies in what's called the *multiplicative identity*, which is how mathematicians describe the fact that any number times one equals one times that number as well as that number itself. You can always assume with any standard multiplication that there could be any number of "times one" additions to your multiplication, and it won't matter. We can also see this in `irb`:

---

```

irb(main):005:0> (42 * 1) == (1 * 42)
=> true
irb(main):006:0> (1 * 42) == (42 * 1)
=> true
irb(main):007:0> (42 * 1) == 42
=> true
irb(main):008:0> (1 * 42) == 42
=> true

```

---

Since you can always assume a "times one" for anything multiplied by itself twice, or by itself once, you can similarly assume it for something multiplied by itself zero times, which is all raising something to the zero power means. Therefore, raising something to the zero power will result in a value of one.

At ⑤, we return false if the base is one. This is because one can never be raised to a power that will result in a value other than one. How do we know that our result isn't one? Because we would have already returned a zero at ④ if self was one. At ⑥, we also return false if the absolute value of the base (acquired through calling base.abs) is greater than the absolute value of self. We do this because you can't raise a base to an Integer power and get a result with a smaller absolute value than your original base.

Everything from ① to ⑥ deals with the odd cases—either meaningless situations or situations that let us know we're finished, otherwise known as *exit conditions*. What happens next? If a given number is a power of a given base, it means that that number divided by the base is also a power of the base, but the exponent will be one lower. Let's demonstrate in irb.

---

```
irb(main):009:0> 3 ** 3
=> 27
irb(main):010:0> 3 ** 2
=> 9
irb(main):011:0> 27 == 9 * 3
=> true
```

---

Three to the third power is 27, three to the second power is nine, and 27 is equal to nine times three. If we're trying to find an exponent and none of our base cases apply, we can simply divide self by the base, try to get the power of the new divided value relative to the same base, and remember to add one to our new result if it turns out to be an Integer.

That's exactly what we do at ⑦ and ⑧. We define a new variable called exponent, which is the result of calling the power\_of method on self divided by base. The exponent variable will either be nil, false, or an Integer. How do we know this? Because we return either nil up to ②, false at ⑤ or ⑥, or an Integer.

All Integers have true Boolean values, so we can test with our standard ternary operator, as we do at ⑨. If exponent evaluates to true, it's an Integer (because both nil and false would evaluate to false in the Boolean ternary operation). We therefore return it, remembering to add one, because we've already divided by the base once. If exponent evaluates to false, we want to simply return that value: either false or nil.

What happens in our new call to power\_of on self divided by the base at ⑦? It goes through all the same tests from ① to ⑥, and if none of those apply, it divides the new value of self by the base again, remembering to add yet another one to the eventual result. All of this happens inside each iteration of the power\_of method—the first version of it up at the top level doesn't need to know or care about how many other iterations of power\_of end up being called. This is what recursion is all about.

## Running the Script

You can try out this script in irb by requiring it at the command line with irb -r power\_of.rb or by entering require 'power\_of.rb' once you're in irb. Remember that this script can only handle Integers, so 2.power\_of(4) will return false, rather than 0.5.

## The Results

Here is a sample irb session with some output.

---

```
$ irb -r power_of.rb
irb(main):001:0> 1.power_of(1)
=> 1
irb(main):002:0> 1.power_of(2)
=> 0
irb(main):003:0> 4.power_of(2)
=> 2
irb(main):004:0> 2.power_of(4)
=> false
```

---

## #16 Adding Commas to Numbers (commify.rb)

A standard way of formatting numbers is to present them with commas (or some other delimiter) separating each group of thousands. Our next script does that by adding a method called `commify` to all numbers. You might think that we could do this by opening the `Integer` class and adding a new method to it, as we did in `power_of.rb`. This is certainly a reasonable approach, except that we may want to use `commify` on floating-point numbers as well. What's the solution?

### Inheritance

The answer deals with an object-oriented concept called *inheritance*. We discussed this earlier in Chapter 3 when we added methods to the `Object` class. Inheritance is what allows all other classes to use methods of the `Object` class, because these other classes *inherit* from `Object`. Inheritance is a factor in our `commify` script as well. Let's examine the inheritance hierarchy of some number classes in `irb`.

#### The ancestors Method

---

```
irb(main):001:0> Integer.ancestors
=> [Integer, Precision, Numeric, Comparable, Object, Kernel]
irb(main):002:0> Float.ancestors
=> [Float, Precision, Numeric, Comparable, Object, Kernel]
irb(main):003:0>
```

---

We've used a method called `ancestors` that can be called not on an instance of a class, but on the class itself. It returns an Array of all of the ancestors of the class on which it is called (by *ancestors* I simply mean the classes from which it inherits). You may find it useful to consider inheritance through a biological metaphor, in which each class is a species and the ancestor classes are that species' ancestor species. We can see that both the `Integer` class and the `Float` class inherit directly from something called *Precision*.

Precision must be a class—some kind of number, right? Not exactly. Let's continue in `irb`.

---

```
irb(main):003:0> Integer.class
=> Class
irb(main):004:0> Float.class
=> Class
irb(main):005:0> Precision.class
=> Module
```

---

We see that `Integer` is a *class*, something that can be instantiated. So is `Float`. That's no surprise. `5` is an `Integer`, and `3.14` is a `Float`. But `Precision` is something called a `Module`, not a `Class` at all. What are `Modules` for?

## Modules

Let's continue with our biological metaphor. Both humans and bats are mammals, so if we called `Human.ancestors` and `Bat.ancestors`, we would have significant overlap—humans and bats have shared ancestors, specifically earlier mammals. If we called `Bird.ancestors`, there would be less overlap with either of the others, because birds are not mammals. However, bats and most birds can fly, which you could think of as a method, in object-oriented terms. We could define `Bat.fly` and `Bird.fly` separately, but there is another option available to us.

We can thus define the ability to fly (along with related characteristics and behaviors) and add that ability to existing classes. That process is called *mixing in*, and it's how Ruby deals with the problem of assigning the same methods to different classes with distinct ancestor classes, like our `Bat` and `Bird` example.

We do this by defining the ability to fly as a module, perhaps called `Flyable`. `Modules` are similar to classes, except that they don't get instantiated. We'll write our own modules later in Chapter 10. For now, keep in mind that the `Precision` module adds behavior to both `Integer` and `Float`, just like our hypothetical `Flyable`. `Flyable` grants the ability to fly to those organisms it's mixed into, and `Precision` grants the ability to do precise calculations to those numbers it's mixed into.

`Modules` are open, just like classes, so we can add new behavior to the `Precision` module, just as we did earlier to the `Object` class. Let's take a look at the `commify.rb` script.

## The Code

### Modules

---

```
module Precision

  ❶ # What character should be displayed at each breakpoint?
  COMMIFY_DELIMITER = ','

  # What should the decimal point character be?
  COMMIFY_DECIMAL = '.'
```

```

# What power of 10 defines each breakpoint?
COMMIFY_BREAKPOINT = 3

# Should an explicit '0' be shown in the 100ths place,
# such as for currency?
COMMIFY_PAD_100THS = true

=begin rdoc
This method returns a <b>String</b> representing the numeric value of
self, with delimiters at every digit breakpoint. 4 Optional arguments:

```

1. `delimiter` (<b>String</b>): defaults to a comma
2. `breakpoint` (<b>Integer</b>): defaults to 3, showing every multiple of 1000
3. `decimal_pt` (<b>String</b>): defaults to '.'
4. `show_hundredths` (<b>Boolean</b>): whether an explicit '0' should be shown in the hundredths place, defaulting to <b>true</b>.

```
=end
```

### Optional Arguments

```

❷ def commify(args = {})
❸   args[:delimiter]      ||= COMMIFY_DELIMITER
   args[:breakpoint]     ||= COMMIFY_BREAKPOINT
   args[:decimal_pt]     ||= COMMIFY_DECIMAL
   args[:show_hundredths] ||= COMMIFY_PAD_100THS
❹   int_as_string, float_as_string = to_s.split('.')

   int_out = format_int(
     int_as_string,
     args[:breakpoint],
     args[:delimiter]
   )

   float_out = format_float(
     float_as_string,
     args[:decimal_pt],
     args[:show_hundredths]
   )
❺   return int_out + float_out
end

private

=begin rdoc
Return a <b>String</b> representing the properly-formatted
<b>Integer</b> portion of self.
=end
❻ def format_int(int_as_string, breakpoint, delimiter)
   reversed_groups = int_as_string.reverse.split(/(\d{#{breakpoint}})/)
   reversed_digits = reversed_groups.grep(/\d+/)
   digit_groups   = reversed_digits.reverse.map { |unit| unit.reverse }
   return digit_groups.join(delimiter)
end

```

```

=end rdoc
Return a <b>String</b> representing the properly-formatted
floating-point portion of self.
=end
❷ def format_float(float_as_string, decimal_pt, show_hundredths)
  return '' unless float_as_string
  output = decimal_pt + float_as_string
❸ return output unless show_hundredths
❹ output += '0' if (float_as_string.size == 1)
  return output
end

end

```

---

## How It Works

Starting at ❶, we define some useful constants, just like we do for a class. Each definition is preceded by some comments explaining what the constant is for. I mentioned that the `commify` method will insert commas at every grouping of a thousand. This is customary in the United States, but many other countries use a period in place of a comma and use a comma to separate units from floating-point portions (for which the United States uses a period). These constants are preset for the US notation that is useful for me, since I live here, but you can easily customize them to match what's appropriate for your home country.

After some RDoc that explains the input parameters in the form of a single Hash, at ❷ we get to the definition of the `commify` method, our only public method. It accepts a Hash argument called `args` to override the default configuration constants, as shown at ❸. Note that the `||=` operation means that if `args` asks for an override (meaning it has a value in itself for the appropriate Symbol, such as `:delimiter` for the `delimiter`), we use what's in `args`. Otherwise, we fall back to the Module's appropriate constant. At ❹, we split the Integer and Float portions of `self`, although keep in mind that they are both instances of the String class, despite the fact that they represent numbers. Ruby allows us to assign into two different variable names at a time, as we do here.

**NOTE** *Symbols make great Hash keys, and that's a convention you'll see a great deal in both my scripts and in the whole Ruby community. You'd have a terrible time trying to do anything in Rails without respecting this convention. Symbols work particularly well for this job because they can be used as names or labels for things, and they take up an extremely small amount of memory.<sup>2</sup>*

We then define a variable called `int_out` and give it the value of a method called `format_int`. We do the same for `float_out`, and finally return the concatenation of those two Strings at ❺. You can see that the real work occurs within the formatting methods (`format_int` and `format_float`), both of which are private.

---

<sup>2</sup> My technical reviewer, Pat Eyler, wisely asked me to stress that the *reason* Symbols take up so little space is because each Symbol only takes up space once, and all subsequent instances merely refer to that same memory space again, instead of duplicating it, as would happen with a String or other type of object.



## The `format_int` Method

The `format_int` method at ❹ is the more conceptually complicated of the two methods. Let's open `irb` again and step through this method's operations. First, let's define some variables representing the inputs to the method.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> int_as_string = '186282'  
=> "186282"  
irb(main):002:0> breakpoint = 3  
=> 3  
irb(main):003:0> delimiter = ','  
=> ", "
```

---

Next, let's split our `String` at the appropriate breakpoints, using a regular expression representing any group of digits that is the appropriate length. The notation `{x}` within a regular expression means *X instances of whatever is to the left*, so `a{3}` means *Three instances of the letter a*. We also use string interpolation so that we can use our breakpoint argument for the number of digits to break on. We want to go from right to left, so we'll use the `reverse` method prior to breaking up the `String` into an `Array`.

---

```
irb(main):004:0> reversed_groups = int_as_string.reverse.split(/(\d{#{breakpoint}})/)  
=> ["", "282", "", "681"]
```

---

Then we want to extract only those `Array` members that are genuine number groups, which we can do easily enough with another regular expression `/\d+/` (meaning *Consisting of one or more digits and nothing else*) and the `grep` method, which finds all members of an `Array` that match the `regex` argument that `grep` takes.

---

```
irb(main):005:0> reversed_digits = reversed_groups.grep(/d+/  
=> ["282", "681"]
```

---

What else is wrong with our content at this point? Not only are the number groups in the wrong order, but the numbers within each group are also reversed. This is because we reversed the entire `String` before doing our `split`. Now we want to get everything in the right order. We can just reverse our `Array`, right?

---

```
irb(main):006:0> reversed_digits.reverse  
=> ["681", "282"]
```

---

This won't work. It puts the groups in the right order, but the digits within each group are still reversed. We can use the `map` method to reverse each member of the `Array` instead.

---

```
irb(main):007:0> reversed_digits.map { |unit| unit.reverse }  
=> ["282", "186"]
```

---

Oops. Now the digits within each set of three numbers are in the right order, but the groups are in the wrong order. We could define yet another variable like `reversed_digits` in a two-step operation, but why not take advantage of Ruby's ability to chain methods?

---

```
irb(main):008:0> digit_groups = reversed_digits.reverse.map { |unit| unit.reverse }  
=> ["186", "282"]
```

---

Now our digits groups are in the right order and have the correct internal ordering, as well.

Note that the two different calls to the `reverse` method in the `irb` example are completely different. One is a call to the `Array` method `reverse` on `reversed_digits` and the other is a call to the `String` method `reverse` on each digit group that we call `unit` within the `map` operation.

We still have an `Array`, and we want a `String`. This calls for a `join`, using the `delimiter`.

---

```
irb(main):009:0> digit_groups.join(delimiter)  
=> "186,282"
```

---

Our `format_int` method now returns a `String` that is an altered version of our `int_as_string` argument. We break up `int_as_string` at the right point (breakpoint), insert the `delimiter` between our groups of digits, and make sure that everything stays in the right order. That's it for the integer component.

### The `format_float` Method

We also want to be able to format floating-point portions of numbers, which we do with the `format_float` method at ⑦. If there is no floating-point portion, it returns an empty `String` right away. Otherwise, it creates a new variable called `output` consisting of the `decimal_pt` argument concatenated with the `float_as_string` argument—remember that they're both `Strings`, so the plus sign means concatenation. If the configuration options are such that the hundredths place is not mandatory (you can tell from the `show_hundredths` argument), we can simply return the `output` variable at ⑧. If we need to show the hundredths place and the floating-point portion is only a single character wide, we need to concatenate the `String` `'0'` onto the end of the `output` at ⑨. Otherwise, we can simply return the `output` variable.

### Type Testing

You'll remember that in `power.rb`, we had an early exit condition based on whether or not the `base` argument was an `Integer` at all. You'll also notice that in this script we don't test any of the numbers to find out whether or not they're real numbers. Why is that? The reason is that our new methods will be included in the `Precision` module, which is only mixed in to classes that represent some sort of number, like `Integer` and `Float`. Therefore, checks for numeric type are not necessary.

## Running the Script

Let's try this out with a test script. Here are the contents of `tests/test_commmify.rb`, which we'll run in the same directory as `commify.rb` with the command `ruby -w tests/test_commmify.rb 186282.437` at the shell.

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# test_commmify.rb

require 'commify'

puts ARGV[0].to_f.commmify()
alt_args = {
  :breakpoint => 2,
  :decimal_pt => 'dp',
  :show_hundredths => false
}
puts ARGV[0].to_f.commmify(alt_args)
```

---

We call the `commify` method on the first argument after the script name, which in our case is the floating-point number `186282.437`. First, we call it with the default parameters with regard to the delimiter character, breakpoint size, and so on. Then we call it with some modified configuration parameters, just to see how they work.

## The Results

Here's the output I got:

---

```
186,282.437
18,62,82dp437
```

---

Yours should look the same. That's it for this script.

## #17 Roman Numerals (`roman_numeral.rb`)

In the previous script, you learned how to change the representation of a number as a String so that it had commas (or some other desired delimiting character) in appropriate places for easier readability. One of the most traditional ways to represent a number as a String is as a Roman numeral. This script adds a new method to all Integers called `to_roman`. Let's see it in action in `irb`.

---

```
$ irb -r roman_numeral.rb
irb(main):001:0> 42.to_roman
=> "XLII"
irb(main):002:0> 1.to_roman
=> "I"
```

---

```

irb(main):003:0> 5.to_roman
=> "V"
irb(main):004:0> digits = (0..9).to_a
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):005:0> digits.map { |d| d.to_roman }
=> ["", "I", "II", "III", "IV", "V", "VI", "VII", "VIII", "IX"]

```

---

If you remember your Roman numerals, you will see that `to_roman` follows your expectations. It returns the empty string for zero and uses the *subtractive* approach of reporting four as *IV*, using a lower-value letter to the left of a higher-value letter to indicate subtraction. Let's look at the source code to see how it works.

## The Code

---

```

class Integer

  # Base conversion Hash
  ❶ ARABIC_TO_ROMAN = {
    1000 => 'M',
    500 => 'D',
    100 => 'C',
    50 => 'L',
    10 => 'X',
    5 => 'V',
    1 => 'I',
    0 => ''
  }

  # Represent 4 as 'IV', rather than 'IIII'?
  SUBTRACTIVE_TO_ROMAN = {
    900 => 'CM',
    400 => 'CD',
    90 => 'XC',
    40 => 'XL',
    9 => 'IX',
    4 => 'IV',
  }

  # Use SUBTRACTIVE_TO_ROMAN Hash?
  SUBTRACTIVE = true

  ❷ def to_roman()
    ❸ @@roman_of ||= create_roman_of()
    ❹ return '' unless (self > 0)
    ❺ return to_s if self > maximum_representable()
    ❻ base = @@roman_of.keys.sort.reverse.detect { |k| k <= self }
    ❼ return '' unless (base and base > 0)
    ❽ return (@@roman_of[base] * round_to_base(base)) + (self % base).to_roman()
  end

  private

```

Class Variables

The detect Method

```

=end rdoc
Use constants to create a <b>Hash</b> of appropriate roman numeral values.
=end
❶ def create_roman_of()
  return ARABIC_TO_ROMAN unless SUBTRACTIVE
  ARABIC_TO_ROMAN.merge(SUBTRACTIVE_TO_ROMAN)
end

=end rdoc
What is the largest number that this method can reasonably represent?
=end
❷ def maximum_representable()
  (@@roman_of.keys.max * 5) - 1
end

❸ def round_to_base(base)
  (self - (self % base)) / base
end

end

```

---

## How It Works

Since we only need to give Integers the ability to report their Roman numeral representation, we'll open up the Integer class and give it this new method. After defining some constants at ❶, let's skip down to ❷, where we define the public method `to_roman` that we've seen used in `irb`. In it, we define something called `@@roman_of`, and use the `||=` operator to set its value to that of the output of a method called `create_roman_of`, unless `@@roman_of` already evaluates to true. Why does it have two @ signs at the front? We've already seen instance variables with a single @ sign and constants that must begin with an uppercase letter (and traditionally are entirely uppercase), but this is something new called a *class variable*.

## Class Variables

Class variables are shared among every instance of a class but are able to change value. Let's verify in `irb` that several different instances of any given class variable have the same value.

---

```

irb(main):001:0> class String
irb(main):002:1> @@class_var = "I'm a Class Variable."
irb(main):003:1> def cv
irb(main):004:2> @@class_var
irb(main):005:2> end
irb(main):006:1> end
=> nil
irb(main):007:0> ''.cv
=> "I'm a Class Variable."
irb(main):008:0> 'Some other String'.cv
=> "I'm a Class Variable."
irb(main):009:0> 'Yet another String.'.cv
=> "I'm a Class Variable."

```

---

We define a new class variable called `@@class_var` for all Strings and also give all strings a new method called `cv` that returns `@@class_var`. We find that it has the same value for all Strings, including Strings that did not yet exist when we defined `@@class_var`.

We have a class variable called `@@roman_of`. What is it? To answer that, we need to look inside the private method `create_roman_of` at ❸. It returns a constant called `ARABIC_TO_ROMAN`, unless some other constant called `SUBTRACTIVE` is true. We can see from our constant definition section (❶) that we have set `SUBTRACTIVE` to true, so `create_roman_of` will not return `ARABIC_TO_ROMAN` with our current configuration settings. Instead, it will return the result of calling the method `merge` on `ARABIC_TO_ROMAN`, with `SUBTRACTIVE_TO_ROMAN` as its single argument.

### Hash.merge

At this point we need to learn what `ARABIC_TO_ROMAN` is so we know what happens when `merge` is called on it. We can see from ❶ that both `ARABIC_TO_ROMAN` and `SUBTRACTIVE_TO_ROMAN` are Hashes. Their keys are Arabic numerals, and each key's value is the representation of the key as a Roman numeral. This script can only represent Roman numerals up to 4,999, so we could simply define a single Hash of `ALL_ARABICS_TO_ROMAN` with a key for every value from one to 4,999 and be done with it.

That would work, but it would be terribly inelegant. What we've done instead is define base cases from which we will extrapolate all cases between zero and 4,999. We also separate out cases of subtractive representation (such as *IV* for four) into a separate Hash, allowing us to easily turn that feature on or off, as we do with the `SUBTRACTIVE` constant and the `create_roman_of` method, which uses the `merge` method of Hashes. This `merge` method allows a Hash to incorporate the information from a second Hash into itself. Let's explore that in `irb`.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> hash1 = { 'key1' => 'value1', 'key2' => 'value2' }
=> {"key1"=>"value1", "key2"=>"value2"}
irb(main):002:0> hash2 = { 'key3' => 'value3', 'key4' => 'value4' }
=> {"key3"=>"value3", "key4"=>"value4"}
irb(main):003:0> hash1
=> {"key1"=>"value1", "key2"=>"value2"}
irb(main):004:0> hash2
=> {"key3"=>"value3", "key4"=>"value4"}
irb(main):005:0> hash1.merge(hash2)
=> {"key1"=>"value1", "key2"=>"value2", "key3"=>"value3", "key4"=>"value4"}
irb(main):006:0> hash3 = { 'key1' => nil }
=> {"key1"=>nil}
irb(main):007:0> hash1.merge(hash2).merge(hash3)
=> {"key1"=>nil, "key2"=>"value2", "key3"=>"value3", "key4"=>"value4"}
```

---

You can see not only that `merge` combines key/value pairs, but also that the incoming information (meaning the Hash argument to the `merge` method) overrides pre-existing pairs in the calling Hash. That's why the `"key1"=>nil` pair from `hash3` overrides the `"key1"=>"value1"` pair from `hash1`. You'll also note

that the returned value of the `merge` method is itself just another Hash, so we can call any Hash method on it, including `merge` again.

So the first time we call the `to_roman` method (❷), we create a class variable called `@@roman_of` that contains base cases for transliteration into Roman numerals. It either uses the subtractive approach or it doesn't, depending on our configuration options. It includes subtractive representation by default. After all that, we return an empty String at ❸ unless the Integer (`self`) is greater than zero.

You may remember that I said this script can handle Roman numerals for Integers up to 4,999. That's where line ❹ and the `maximum_representable` method (defined at ❶) come in. The largest value that Roman numerals can represent (without introducing vertical bars above letters that are not strictly part of the standard Roman alphabet) is 4,999, so I decided to stop there. If the Integer in question (`self`) is greater than the maximum value that can be shown, we simply return the result of the `to_s` method (❺). Let's see this in action in `irb`.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> digits = (0..9).to_a
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):002:0> digits.map { |d| (4995+d).to_roman }
=> ["MMMMCMXCV", "MMMMCMXCVI", "MMMMCMXCVII", "MMMMCMXCVIII", "MMMMCMXCIX",
"5000", "5001", "5002", "5003", "5004"]
```

---

Once we hit the upper limit, we still return a String representing a numeric value (which is all a Roman numeral is), we just use the familiar Arabic numeral symbols within our String.

### More Recursion

If the lines from ❷ through ❹ remind you of the exit conditions in `power_of.rb` that prepared for a recursive call to the same method, you've been paying attention. That's exactly what we're about to do here. At ❺ we create a variable called `base` that is the value of a long chain of method calls starting on the `@@roman_of` class variable. The purpose of these method calls is to find the largest key of the `@@roman_of` Hash that is less than or equal to the `self` Integer.

We get the keys out with the `keys` method, which returns an Array of the Hash's keys. We then sort that Array in reverse order, meaning that we start from highest to lowest. We then call a new Array method called `detect` with the conditions of being less than or equal to `self`. I think a great alias for `detect` would be *find first*. Let's see it in `irb`.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> digits = (0..9).to_a
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):002:0> digits.detect { |d| d % 3 }
=> 0
irb(main):003:0> digits.reverse.detect { |d| d % 3 }
=> 9
irb(main):004:0> digits.detect { |d| d > 4 }
=> 5
irb(main):005:0> digits.reverse.detect { |d| d % 2 == 1 }
=> 9
```

---

The `detect` method cycles through each member of the `Array` and returns the first `Array` element that matches the conditions in the block. This is what allows us to find the highest value representable in terms of the `@roman_of` `Hash`, which we put into the `base` variable at ⑤. At ⑥ we return the empty `String`, unless we both found a base and that base is greater than zero; without a base greater than zero, we can't return anything useful.

### **Multiples of Our Base**

We now have a base that's an `Integer` greater than zero. If we're calling something like `1066.to_roman`, we have no problem, because our base value (1,000) is the entire thousands place portion of our `Integer`. But what if we want something like `2112.to_roman` instead? We need to be able to keep track of how many multiples of base can go into our `Integer`. That's what we do at ⑦.

We use the method `round_to_base` (defined at ⑩) to determine the number of multiples of base we need to deal with. Our call to `round_to_base` tells us how many multiples of base we need to handle. Calling `@roman_of[base]` also finds the single letter used to represent the base.

### **Multiplying Strings by Integers**

Multiplying a `String` by an `Integer` results in that `String` concatenated with itself as many times as the `Integer`. Let's see that in `irb`:

---

```
irb(main):006:0> 'M' * 2
=> "MM"
```

---

This is taken directly from our `2112.to_roman` example. The output of "MM" takes care of representing the 2,000 portion of 2,112, and at line ⑦ we also make a recursive call to `to_roman`; this time, however, we call it on a smaller number, specifically 112. Because the number on which we call the `to_roman` method keeps getting smaller as we pull off multiples of base, we will eventually reach a point where we'll exit with the empty `String` at ③, marking the end of all of our recursive calls to `to_roman`. That's when we get our final output.

### **Running the Script**

This is easily demonstrated within `irb`.

---

```
$ irb -r roman_numeral.rb
irb(main):001:0> (0..9).to_a.map { |n| n.to_roman }
```

---

### **The Results**

Here is the output:

---

```
=> ["", "I", "II", "III", "IV", "V", "VI", "VII", "VIII", "IX"]
```

---



## Hacking the Script

There are other options you could take with this script. Instead of making `SUBTRACTIVE` a class constant, we could have made the `to_roman` method take an argument. If you do that, you would need to keep track of two separate `[SOMETHING]_TO_ROMAN` Hashes, one using the subtractive display method, and one not using it. I decided to assume that the subtractive approach would be used because it does seem to be very common for Roman numerals. However, I thought I would mention how you could customize this script to make it slightly more complicated—but also more flexible.

We'll revisit the idea of representing Integers as different sorts of Strings later when we create the `to_lang` method. For now, let's continue on to our first currency converter.

## #18 Currency Conversion, Basic (`currency_converter1.rb`)

I mentioned earlier that the `commify` method needs to vary based on how each country treats the notation of numbers. The area where this issue comes up most often is with currency, of course. The actual conversion process consists of relatively straightforward math, but we'll use this script as a vehicle to set the stage for two important concepts introduced in our next script—notably the representation of data with either *XML* (eXtensible Markup Language, <http://www.w3c.org/xml>) or *YAML* (YAML Ain't Markup Language, <http://www.yaml.org>). We'll explore both XML and YAML further in the next script, but for now, let's try out our current script in `irb` with `irb -r currency_converter.rb`.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> cc = CurrencyConverter.new()
=> #<CurrencyConverter:0xb7c979f4 @name_of={"USD"=>"US Dollar"},
@base_currency="USD">
❶ irb(main):002:0> puts cc.output_rates(1)
1 US Dollar (USD) =
    46.540136 Indian Rupees(INR)
    0.781738 Euros(EUR)
    10.890852 Mexican Pesos(MXN)
    7.977233 Chinese Yuans(CNY)
    1.127004 Canadian Dollars(CAD)
=> nil
❷ irb(main):003:0> puts cc.output_rates(42)
42 US Dollars (USD) =
    1954.685712 Indian Rupees(INR)
    32.832996 Euros(EUR)
    457.415784 Mexican Pesos(MXN)
    335.043786 Chinese Yuans(CNY)
    47.334168 Canadian Dollars(CAD)
=> nil
```

---

We can see on our `irb` session's first response that our `cc` instance seems to have some fondness for the US dollar—but if you're in some other country, don't worry, you'll learn how to use different currencies in the improved

version of the script. In ❶ you can see that our `cc` instance's `output_rates` method takes an argument and seems to output the equivalent of that many US dollars in a few other currencies. You can see in ❷ that the values shift as expected with a different number of US dollars. Let's see how this works by examining the source code.

## The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# currency_converter1.rb
# Using fixed exchange rates

class CurrencyConverter
  ❶ BASE_ABBR_AND_NAME = { 'USD' => 'US Dollar' }

  FULLNAME_OF = {
    'EUR' => 'Euro',
    'CAD' => 'Canadian Dollar',
    'CNY' => 'Chinese Yuan',
    'INR' => 'Indian Rupee',
    'MXN' => 'Mexican Peso',
  }

  EXCHANGE_RATES = {
    'EUR' => 0.781738,
    'INR' => 46.540136,
    'CNY' => 7.977233,
    'MXN' => 10.890852,
    'CAD' => 1.127004,
  }

  ❷ def initialize()
    @base_currency = BASE_ABBR_AND_NAME.keys[0]
    @name          = BASE_ABBR_AND_NAME[@base_currency]
  end

  ❸ def output_rates(mult=1)
    get_value(mult, get_rates) + "\n"
  end

  private

  ❹ def get_rates()
    return EXCHANGE_RATES
  end

  ❺ def get_value(mult, rates)
  ❻   return pluralize(mult, @name) +
  ❼   " (#{@base_currency}) = \n" +
  ❽   rates.keys.map do |abbr|
    "\t" +
    pluralize(mult * rates[abbr], FULLNAME_OF[abbr]) +

```

### Initializing Class Variables

```

    "({abbr})"
  end.join("\n")
end

```

```
=begin rdoc
```

This assumes that all plurals will be formed by adding an 's'. It could be made more flexible with a Hash of plural suffixes (which could be the empty string) or explicit plural forms that are simple replacements for the singular.

For convenience, this outputs a string with the number of items, a space, and then the pluralized form of the currency unit.

That suited the needs of this particular script.

```
=end
```

```

10 def pluralize(num, term)
    (num == 1) ? "#{num} #{term}" : "#{num} #{term}s"
  end

end

```

## How It Works

At ❶, we define the “home” currency of the class, and immediately following, we define some handy codes for various other currencies via the `FULLNAME_OF` and `EXCHANGE_RATES` Hashes. The `EXCHANGE_RATES` Hash contains our preset exchange rate values. These were current at the time I created this object, but I’m sure they’ll be at least slightly different by the time you read this.

The `initialize` method at ❷ gives us some handy instance variables related to the home currency, and our only public method `output_rates` (❸) is simply a wrapper for the private `get_value` method (❹) with a newline.<sup>3</sup> The `get_value` method also uses another private method called `get_rates`, the definition of which (❺) should be fairly clear to you at this point.

The `get_value` method also uses another private method called `pluralize` (❻), which returns a String in which the term for the currency is plural when appropriate. I’ve implemented this very simply, because English only requires an *s* at the end of a term to pluralize it. With a few changes, this method could handle other languages or terms with more complex pluralization needs, most likely a Hash with currency terms as keys and plural endings as values. For now, we just need to add an *s* to the end of currency amounts greater than one.

The `get_value` method returns (❼) a pluralized form of the base currency with an equals sign, followed by information about each of the currencies the class knows about. Starting at ❽, it maps an operation onto each currency type (represented by the keys of the rates Hash). The mapped operation (❾) is the outputting of a tab character, followed by properly pluralized output for that currency based on its relative value, full name, and abbreviation. Each currency’s String output is then joined together with newline characters at ❿, concluding the return statement begun back at ❻.

<sup>3</sup>We defined `initialize` before the `private` keyword, but `initialize` is always a private method, so `output_rates` is the only public method of `CurrencyConverter`.

## Running the Script

This is also easily demonstrated in irb with `irb -r currency_converter1.rb`.

## The Results

---

```
$ irb -r currency_converter1.rb
irb(main):001:0> cc = CurrencyConverter.new()
=> #<CurrencyConverter:0xb7c94b4c @base_currency="USD", @name="US Dollar">
irb(main):002:0> cc.output_rates
=> "1 US Dollar (USD) = \n\t46.540136 Indian Rupees(INR)\n\t0.781738
Euros(EUR)\n\t10.890852 Mexican Pesos(MXN)\n\t7.977233 Chinese Yuans(CNY)\n\
t1.127004 Canadian Dollars(CAD)\n"
irb(main):003:0> puts cc.output_rates
1 US Dollar (USD) =
      46.540136 Indian Rupees(INR)
      0.781738 Euros(EUR)
      10.890852 Mexican Pesos(MXN)
      7.977233 Chinese Yuans(CNY)
      1.127004 Canadian Dollars(CAD)
=> nil
```

---

Notice how the prettier output comes from using `puts` and that the returned value from `output_rates` is `nil`, largely because it's intended to print results instead.

## Hacking the Script

This is all fine when exchange rates are constant and can be stored in a constant Hash, as in this script. However, the main impetus of having a currency converter stems from the fact that exchange rates constantly change. We need a converter that can update itself with new information when that information becomes available and yet continue to work when such information is inaccessible, for whatever reason. That's our next script.

## #19 Currency Conversion, Advanced (`currency_converter2.rb`)

This script builds on what we already know from the previous one and uses a similar approach for the actual conversion process. What we've added is the ability to store and retrieve external data in both YAML and XML formats. YAML is so readable that I will simply tell you what you need to know for this script, and I'm sure that you'll be inspired to learn more about how it works. XML is a bit more complicated, and it's beyond the scope of this book to teach it to you if you're not familiar with it, but you won't need to be an expert to follow along. I'll describe the relevant bits of XML for this script's operation, just as I'll do with YAML. If you find that the XML-related content of this chapter is going a bit too fast, please refer to the excellent online XML Tutorial at <http://www.w3schools.com/xml>.

This script differs from the previous in several ways. Let's see how.

## The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# currency_converter2.rb

### RSS feeds for rates at
# http://www.currencysource.com/rss_currencyexchangerates.html

=begin rdoc
open-uri allows Kernel.open to read data using a URI, not just from
a local file.
=end
❶ require 'open-uri'
=begin rdoc
YAML[http://www.yaml.org] stands for "YAML Ain't Markup Language"
and is a simple human-readable data markup format.
=end
require 'yaml'

=begin rdoc
I also want to add a method to all <b>Hash</b>es.
=end
class Hash

=begin rdoc
Allow <b>Hash</b>es to be subtracted from each other.
=end
❷ def -(hash_with_pairs_to_remove_from_self)
  output = self.dup
  hash_with_pairs_to_remove_from_self.each_key do |k|
    output.delete(k)
  end
  output
end

end

❸ class CurrencyConverter

  BASE_URL = 'http://currencysource.com/RSS'
  CURRENCY_CODES = {
    'EUR' => 'Euro',
    'CAD' => 'Canadian Dollar',
    'CNY' => 'Chinese Yuan',
    'INR' => 'Indian Rupee',
    'MXN' => 'Mexican Peso',
    'USD' => 'US Dollar',
  }
  RATES_DIRECTORY = 'extras/currency_exchange_rates'

  def initialize(code='USD')
    unless CURRENCY_CODES.has_key?(code)
      fail "I know nothing about #{code}"
    end
  end
end
```

YAML

**A Subtraction  
Method for  
Hashes;  
The delete  
Method**

**The has\_key? and  
fail Methods**

```

        @base_currency = code
        @name           = CURRENCY_CODES[code]
    end

    ④ def output_rates(mult=1, try_new_rates=true)
        rates = get_rates(try_new_rates)
        save_rates_in_local_file!(rates)
        return get_value(mult, rates) + "\n"
    end

    private

    ⑤ def download_new_rates()
        puts 'Downloading new exchange rates...'
        begin
            raw_rate_lines = get_xml_lines()
        rescue
            puts 'Download failed. Falling back to local file.'
            return nil
        end
        rates = Hash.new('')
        comparison_codes = CURRENCY_CODES - { @base_currency => @name }
        comparison_codes.each_key do |abbr|
            rates[abbr] = get_rate_for_abbr_from_raw_rate_lines(
                abbr,
                raw_rate_lines
            )
        end
        return rates
    end

    ⑥ def get_rates(try_new_rates)
        return load_old_rates unless try_new_rates
        return download_new_rates || load_old_rates
    end

    def get_rate_for_abbr_from_raw_rate_lines(abbr, raw_rate_lines)
        regex = {
            :open =>
                /^<title>1 #{@base_currency} = #{abbr} \(/,
            :close =>
                /\)\</title>\r\n$/
        }
        line = raw_rate_lines.detect { |line| line =~ /#{abbr}/ }
        line.gsub(regex[:open], '').gsub(regex[:close], '').to_f
    end

    def get_value(mult, rates)
        return "#{pluralize(mult, @name)} (#{@base_currency}) = \n" +
            rates.keys.map do |abbr|
                "\t#{pluralize(mult * rates[abbr], CURRENCY_CODES[abbr])} (#{abbr})"
            end.join("\n")
    end
end

```

begin - rescue -  
end

```

=end rdoc
get_xml_lines is able to read from a URI with the open-uri library.
This also could have been implemented with the RSS library
written by Kouhei Sutou <kou@cozmixng.org> and detailed at
http://www.cozmixng.org/~rwiki/?cmd=view;name=RSS+Parser%3A%3ATutorial.en
=end
XML ⑦ def get_xml_lines()
      open("#{BASE_URL}/#{@base_currency}.xml").readlines.find_all do |line|
        line =~ /1 #{@base_currency} =/
      end
    end

    ⑧ def load_old_rates()
      puts "Reading stored exchange rates from local file #{rates_filename()}"
      rates = YAML.load(File.open(rates_filename))
      fail 'no old rates' unless rates
      return rates
    end

    def pluralize(num, term)
      (num == 1) ? "#{num} #{term}" : "#{num} #{term}s"
    end

    ⑨ def rates_filename()
      "#{RATES_DIRECTORY}/#{@base_currency}.yaml"
    end

=end rdoc
Store new rates in an external YAML file.
This is a side-effect akin to memoization, hence the bang.
=end
YAML.load ⑩ def save_rates_in_local_file!(rates)
      return unless rates
      File.open(rates_filename, 'w') { |rf| YAML.dump(rates, rf) }
    end

YAML.dump
end

```

---

## How It Works

How does this file differ from the previous one? The class definition of `CurrencyConverter` is delayed until ⑤, due to some more comments and require statements at ①. I also open the `Hash` class and give it a subtraction method, identified by the minus sign at ②. This new method takes another `Hash` and returns the original `Hash` without any pairs found in the argument `Hash`. Think of it this way: If `merge` is addition of `Hashes`, this method is the subtraction of `Hashes`. I suppose a good alternative name would be either `demerge` or `unmerge`.

Inside our `CurrencyConverter` class (③), we have two new constants: `BASE_URL`, which is used for downloading completely new exchange rates, and `RATES_DIRECTORY`, which is used to store exchange rates once they have been

downloaded. The class's initialize method accepts a currency code, so folks from other countries can define their own native converters more easily. (It assumes US dollars with no argument.) If it gets a currency code that it doesn't understand, it shouldn't proceed, so we make it break out of the entire program with the command `fail`, which causes the program to stop running. The `output_rates` method (4) also tries to get new rates when told to, saves rates in a local file, and performs the operations we already know about from the last script.

How does it get new rates? The `get_rates` method (6) shows us that it either loads old rates or downloads new rates. If it tries to `download_new_rates` (5) but fails to do so, it will fall back to its old rates again. It defaults to downloading new rates, so let's look at `download_new_rates`.

After some explanatory printing, we get a `begin` statement, which starts a block of code that means *Try something, and fall back to some other code if the attempt fails*. What we're trying to do is call the `get_xml_lines` method. If that fails, we'll explain to the user via `puts` that the download failed and return `nil`. The `end` statement tells us that the block of code pertaining to the `begin` has ended. The `return nil` is what allows us to fall back to old exchange rates within `get_rates` if the `get_xml_lines` method failed.

So what does `get_xml_lines` do? It's defined at 7, and it finds all lines from a given XML file in which one unit of the base currency appears with an equals sign. These lines tell us our exchange rates. Let's take a look at what one of those XML files looks like. Here are a few lines from a file I downloaded from <http://www.currencysource.com/RSS/USD.xml>.

---

```
<item>
<title>1 USD = ARS (3.017607)</title>
<link>http://www.currencysource.com/tables/USD/1X_USD.htm</link>
<description><![CDATA[As of Thursday, May 04, 2006...<br>1 U.S. Dollar (USD) =
3.017607 Argentine Peso (ARS)<br><br>Call 1-877-627-4817 for 'LIVE'
assistance.<br><br>Source: IMF<br><br>Aggregated and published by
CurrencySource.com<br>'Rated #1 in Currency Exchange']]></description>
<pubDate>Sun, 08 Oct 2006 06:00:04 CST</pubDate>
</item>
<item>
<title>1 USD = AUD (1.342818)</title>
<link>http://www.currencysource.com/tables/USD/1X_USD.htm</link>
<description><![CDATA[As of Sunday, October 08, 2006...<br>1 U.S. Dollar (USD)
= 1.342818 Australian Dollar (AUD)<br><br>Call 1-877-627-4817 for 'LIVE'
assistance.<br><br>Source: IMF<br><br>Aggregated and published by
CurrencySource.com<br>'Rated #1 in Currency Exchange']]></description>
<pubDate>Sun, 08 Oct 2006 06:00:04 CST</pubDate>
</item>
```

---

If you're not already familiar with XML, you can see here that it consists of text in which various content is enclosed by *tags*, which are those bits of text within the `<` and `>` characters. Newlines are not meaningful. We have two definitions of a type of thing called `item`, each of which has a title, a link,



a description, and a pubDate. This is the content we're searching through. You'll notice that the <title> lines contain direct statements about exchange rates between the base currency and some other currency—in my example, the Argentinian peso and the Australian dollar.

The reason this operation might fail is that the file we're trying to open and call `readLines` on is not a local file, but a file retrieved from the Internet via a URL. The `open-uri` library that we required at ❶ modifies the `open` command to allow us to open URLs as well as local files. Without a functioning Internet connection, the `open` will fail, meaning that there will be no file on which to call the `readLines` method within `get_xml_lines`. However, if our download operation worked, we'll be able to assign content into the `raw_rate_lines` variable within `download_new_rates`. The rest of the `download_new_rates` method extracts the exchange rate content out of the raw lines.

### Downloading Rates Information

The `download_new_rates` method extracts the exchange rate by first defining a variable for the rates, which is a Hash. We give `Hash.new` an argument halfway through `download_new_rates` so that when a given key is not found in the Hash, the returned value is no longer `nil`, but instead the argument that was passed to `Hash.new` (the empty String in our example). For our purposes, we want to find `comparison_codes`, which are all the pairs pertaining to currencies and their codes, without the `@base_currency`.<sup>4</sup> We then cycle through each key, which is the abbreviation or code associated with the matching currency, and call the `get_rate_for_abbr_from_raw_rate_lines` method, which gets the exchange rate for a given abbreviation from the `raw_rate_lines` variable.

The `get_rate_for_abbr_from_raw_rate_lines` method is defined immediately after the definition of `get_rates` at ❷. The `regex` variable is a Hash that stores some regular expressions that signify the opening and closing of the content we care about (the actual exchange rate value). We detect the first line containing the interpolated `abbr` value and then strip off the opening and closing regex values by substituting each of them with the empty string. We then return the floating-point version (via the `to_f` method) of what we have left. That's the exchange rate for the currency matching the `abbr` argument.

We've gotten our rates via downloading, which means that we're ready to save them into a local file within `initialize`. We immediately exit `save_rates_in_local_file!` (❸) and do nothing if we have no rates. The reason for this is that if there is some problem with getting rates, we don't want to overwrite our good stored data from a previous use of this script. Assuming that all is well, we open a new file for writing with the name `rates_filename`, which looks like a variable. It's actually a method, defined at ❹. It returns something like `"extras/currency_exchange_rates/USD.yaml"` or `"extras/currency_exchange_rates/CAD.yaml"`, depending on what your base currency is. It's a method because it's entirely dependent on the value of `@base_currency`.

---

<sup>4</sup>We remove the `@base_currency` since it's not useful to give the exchange rate between a given currency and itself—the rate would always be exactly one.

**NOTE** *Some schools of programming would have defined an instance variable `@rates_filename` within the `initialize` method, just as we did with `@base_currency` and `@name`. Conversely, we could have treated `@name` the same way we do `rates_filename`, defining a method called `name` that simply returns the value of `CURRENCY_CODES[@base_currency]`. Either approach is useful. Using an instance variable (the “eager” approach) is faster, but the different variables with a close relationship to each other could get out of sync, especially in a more complex program. Using a method (the “lazy” approach) is slower, because it has to recalculate its return value every time—but it also means that your variables won’t get out of agreement with each other, at least in this case.*

Whether it’s an instance variable or a method, our main concern regarding `rates_filename` is that it is a name of a file that can be written into. We do the writing using `YAML.dump`, which takes two arguments; the first is a data structure that will be converted into YAML and written into the second argument, which is a File object. Let’s open `extras/currency_exchange_rates/USD.yaml` and see what we’ve written.

---

```
---
EUR: 0.789639
INR: 45.609987
CNY: 7.890017
MXN: 11.062366
CAD: 1.126398
```

---

That’s the entire content of `USD.yaml`. It represents a single Hash whose keys are currency codes and whose values are floating-point numbers. You’ll notice that newlines are significant, and while this example doesn’t show it, so is indentation. There’s a lot about YAML that you can learn at <http://www.yaml.org>, but I find that `YAML.dump` is a great way to learn how things are represented in YAML. If you pass a data structure that you understand into `YAML.dump`, you can read the resulting `.yaml` file to see what the proper representation is. You can then change the data structure in some specific way, rewrite using `YAML.dump`, and compare the results. It’s very useful.

In any case, we have now stored our exchange rate data as YAML in an external file, using `save_rates_in_local_file!`. We still have the `rates` variable available, so we use it, calling the `get_value` method, which uses the same approach as in the previous script.

### **What If You Can’t Download New Rates?**

In a later call to the script, we might not be able to download new rates, as previously noted. Therefore, let’s look at the `get_rates` method again and assume that we either told the script not to download new rates (using a false value for the `try_new_rates` argument) or that the download attempt failed. Either way, we’ll need to get our rates from the stored YAML file.

The `load_old_rates` method is at ❸. It informs the user that there will be an attempt to read from the local file. Getting the real data out of a YAML file could hardly be easier: You just call `YAML.load`, and give it a `File` argument, which, in our case is the result of calling `File.open` on `rates_filename`. The result of `YAML.load` is whichever data structure was stored in the external file, so we simply assign it into a variable called `rates`. We then ensure that we were able to read data into `rates` before proceeding, and finally return `rates`.

## Running the Script

After all this explanation, it's finally time to see the script in action in `irb` with `irb -r currency_converter2.rb`.

## The Results

---

```
irb(main):001:0> usd = CurrencyConverter.new
=> #<CurrencyConverter:0xb7bfb498 @name="US Dollar", @base_currency="USD">
irb(main):002:0> inr = CurrencyConverter.new('INR')
=> #<CurrencyConverter:0xb7bef990 @name="Indian Rupee", @base_currency="INR">
irb(main):003:0> usd.output_rates(1)
Downloading new exchange rates...
=> "1 US Dollar (USD) = \n\t45.609987 Indian Rupees (INR)\n\t0.789639 Euros
(EUR)\n\t11.062366 Mexican Pesos (MXN)\n\t7.890017 Chinese Yuans (CNY)\n\
t1.126398 Canadian Dollars (CAD)\n"
irb(main):004:0> inr.output_rates(1)
Downloading new exchange rates...
=> "1 Indian Rupee (INR) = \n\t0.017313 Euros (EUR)\n\t0.242543 Mexican Pesos
(MXN)\n\t0.172989 Chinese Yuans (CNY)\n\t0.021925 US Dollars (USD)\n\t0.024696
Canadian Dollars (CAD)\n"
irb(main):005:0> usd.output_rates(1, false)
Reading stored exchange rates from local file extras/currency_exchange_rates/
USD.yaml
=> "1 US Dollar (USD) = \n\t0.789639 Euros (EUR)\n\t45.609987 Indian Rupees
(INR)\n\t7.890017 Chinese Yuans (CNY)\n\t11.062366 Mexican Pesos (MXN)\n\
t1.126398 Canadian Dollars (CAD)\n"
irb(main):006:0> inr.output_rates(100, false)
Reading stored exchange rates from local file extras/currency_exchange_rates/
INR.yaml
=> "100 Indian Rupees (INR) = \n\t1.7313 Euros (EUR)\n\t17.2989 Chinese Yuans
(CNY)\n\t24.2543 Mexican Pesos (MXN)\n\t2.4696 Canadian Dollars (CAD)\n\
t2.1925 US Dollars (USD)\n"
❶ irb(main):007:0> inr.output_rates(100, (not true))
Reading stored exchange rates from local file extras/currency_exchange_rates/
INR.yaml
=> "100 Indian Rupees (INR) = \n\t1.7313 Euros (EUR)\n\t24.2543 Mexican Pesos
(MXN)\n\t17.2989 Chinese Yuans (CNY)\n\t2.1925 US Dollars (USD)\n\t2.4696
Canadian Dollars (CAD)\n"
```

---

You can see that we can easily define converters for specific currencies; then we can tell the `output_rates` method to try to download new rates or not to download them, depending on whether or not the optional second argument evaluates to `false`. In line ❶, you see that I've passed in `(not true)` just to make that point. You'll also notice that the return values with special characters like newlines and tabs represent those characters the same way we do when we insert them, while printing those return values causes them to be interpreted, making the printing output prettier, or at least more easily readable.

## ***Hacking the Script***

This script depends on the directory hierarchy at `BASE_URL` staying the same. If it ever changes, you will need to update `get_xml_lines()` at ❷ accordingly. We're also about to get deeper into some functional programming topics. Once you're comfortable with `lambda` (introduced in the next chapter), you could replace the `rates_filename` method with a `lambda` that accepts `RATES_DIRECTORY` and `@base_currency` as arguments.

## **Chapter Recap**

What was new in this chapter?

- Exponentiation in Ruby
- Returning `nil` when a method's operation is not possible
- More recursion and exit conditions
- Modules and Inheritance
- `Hash.merge`
- Class Variables
- `Array.detect` ("find first")
- Subtracting Hashes
- Exiting the entire script with `fail`
- `begin—rescue—end`
- Downloading with `open-uri`
- Parsing XML files with regular expressions
- Writing to YAML files with `YAML.dump`
- Reading from YAML files with `YAML.load`

It's almost as if this chapter weren't really about numbers—we covered a large amount of generically useful information, especially Modules, Class Variables, and external data storage and retrieval using either XML or YAML (or both). We've done a bit of functional programming already in the last two chapters, but we'll get into the deep `lambda` magic in Chapter 6.

# 6

## FUNCTIONALISM WITH BLOCKS AND PROCS



Ruby has two main ancestors: Smalltalk and Lisp.<sup>1</sup> From Smalltalk, Ruby gets its heavy object orientation, which we've explored in some depth up to this point. From Lisp it derives several ideas from *functional programming*, which is a very mathematically inclined approach to programming with a few notable characteristics. First, variables tend to be defined once, without having their values changed later on. Additionally, functions tend to be simple, abstract, and used as building blocks for other functions; the line between *functions*, which perform operations, and *data*, on which functions operate, is often blurry, compared with non-functional approaches. Functions also tend to do their work by returning values, rather than having side effects—in Ruby terms, methods that end with an exclamation point are less common.

Ruby's support for functional programming is extensive and exciting. Let's dive in.

---

<sup>1</sup>This is a potentially contentious statement. At a RubyConf, I once asked Matz which other languages he thought were most influential on Ruby. His response was "Smalltalk and Common Lisp". Other folks in the Ruby community (many of them ex-Perl users) stress Ruby's clear similarity to Perl. Probably the safest statement is that Ruby descends from Smalltalk and Lisp, and while it's a lot like Perl, Perl is more like an aunt or uncle.

## #20 Our First lambda (make\_incrementer.rb)

This script explores how Ruby creates functions that should be treated as objects. Every “thing” in Ruby is an object, so the notion of treating functions as objects is not conceptually odd. In Ruby, we do this with the command `lambda`, which takes a block. Let’s look at that in `irb`.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> double_me = lambda { |x| x * 2 }
=> #<Proc:0xb7d1f890@(irb):1>
irb(main):002:0> double_me.call(5)
=> 10
```

---

You can see by the return value of line one that the result of calling `lambda` is an instance of class `Proc`. *Proc* is short for *procedure*, and while most objects are defined by what they *are*, Procs can be thought of primarily as defined by what they *do*. Procs have a method called *call*, which tells that Proc instance to do whatever it does. In our `irb` example, we have a Proc instance called `double_me` that takes an argument and returns that argument, times two. On line two, we see that feeding the number `5` into `double_me.call` results in a return value of `10`, just as you would expect. It is easy to create other Procs that do other operations.

---

```
irb(main):003:0> triple_me = lambda { |x| x * 3 }
=> #<Proc:0xb7d105bc@(irb):3>
irb(main):004:0> triple_me.call(5)
=> 15
```

---

Since Procs are objects, just like everything else in Ruby, we can treat them like any other object. They can be the returned value of a method, either the key or value of a Hash, arguments to other methods, and whatever else any object can be. Let’s look at the script that demonstrates this.

### The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# make_incrementer.rb
```

```
❶ def make_incrementer(delta)
  return lambda { |x| x + delta }
end

❷ incrementer_proc_of = Hash.new()
[10, 20].each do |delta|
  incrementer_proc_of[delta] = make_incrementer(delta)
end

❸ incrementer_proc_of.each_pair do |delta, incrementer_proc|
  puts "#{delta} + 5 = #{incrementer_proc.call(5)}\n"
end
```

Procs

Calling Procs

**The each\_pair  
Method**

- ④ puts
  - ⑤ incrementer\_proc\_of.each\_pair do |delta,incrementer\_proc|
  - ⑥ (0..5).to\_a.each do |other\_addend|  
puts "#{delta} + #{other\_addend} = " +  
incrementer\_proc.call(other\_addend) + "\n"  
end  
end
- 

## ***How It Works***

At ① we define a method called `make_incrementer`. It takes a single argument called `delta` and returns a Proc (created via `lambda`) that adds `delta` to something else, represented by `x`. What is that something else? We don't know yet. That is precisely the point of this method—it allows us to define an operation that can be performed multiple times using different parameters, just like any other function.

We can see how this is useful in the rest of this script. At ② we define a new Hash called `incrementer_proc_of`. For each of the values 10 and 20, we make an `incrementer` (using either 10 or 20 for the value of `delta` in the `make_incrementer` method) and assign the resulting Proc into the `incrementer_proc_of` Hash. Starting at ③, we read each `delta` and Proc pair out of the Hash using the `each_pair` method and then use `puts` to print a line describing that `delta` value and the result of calling its Proc with the argument of 5.

We ④ print a spacer with `puts` (just for ease of reading the output), and finally ⑤ output another set of data. This time we add another loop for a value called `other_addend`; this is a variable that serves a role analogous to our static value of 5 in the loop (③). Let's run this program with `ruby -w make_incrementer.rb` and look at the output.

## ***The Results***

---

20 + 5 = 25  
10 + 5 = 15

20 + 0 = 20  
20 + 1 = 21  
20 + 2 = 22  
20 + 3 = 23  
20 + 4 = 24  
20 + 5 = 25  
10 + 0 = 10  
10 + 1 = 11  
10 + 2 = 12  
10 + 3 = 13  
10 + 4 = 14  
10 + 5 = 15

---

The first two lines before the empty line show the output of the first loop (with the static value of 5 for the addend), while the rest of the output shows the result of the second loop, which uses the `other_addend` variable. Notice also that each `_pair` does not order by key, which is why my output has the delta value of 20 appearing first. Depending on your implementation of Ruby, you might see a delta of 10 first.

Now you know how to create Procs. Let's learn how to use them for something more useful than just demonstrating themselves.

## #21 Using Procs for Filtering (`matching_members.rb`)

So far, we've seen that to create a Proc, we call `lambda` with a block describing what that Proc should do. This would lead you to believe that there is a special relationship between Procs and blocks, which there is. Our next script demonstrates how to use Procs in place of blocks.

### *The Code*

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# matching_members.rb

=begin rdoc
Extend the built-in <b>Array</b> class.
=end
class Array

=begin rdoc
Takes a <b>Proc</b> as an argument, and returns all members
matching the criteria defined by that <b>Proc</b>.
=end
  ❶ def matching_members(some_proc)
      find_all { |i| some_proc.call(i) }
    end

  end

  ❷ digits = (0..9).to_a
  lambdas = Hash.new()
  lambdas['five+'] = lambda { |i| i >= 5 }
  lambdas['is_even'] = lambda { |i| (i % 2).zero? }

  ❸ lambdas.keys.sort.each do |lambda_name|
  ❹ lambda_proc = lambdas[lambda_name]
  ❺ lambda_value = digits.matching_members(lambda_proc).join(',')
  ❻ puts "#{lambda_name}\t#{lambda_value}\n"
  end
```

---

Procs as  
Arguments

- ❶ `def matching_members(some_proc)`
- ❷ `digits = (0..9).to_a`
- ❸ `lambdas.keys.sort.each do |lambda_name|`
- ❹ `lambda_proc = lambdas[lambda_name]`
- ❺ `lambda_value = digits.matching_members(lambda_proc).join(',')`
- ❻ `puts "#{lambda_name}\t#{lambda_value}\n"`

### *How It Works*

In this script, we open the `Array` class in order to add a new method called `matching_members` (❶). It takes a Proc (creatively called `some_proc`—see the note below) as an argument and returns the result of calling `find_all`, which (as its



name suggests) finds all members for which the block is true. In this case, the condition in the block is the result of calling the Proc argument on the Array with the Array member in question as the argument to call. After we finish defining our new method, we set up our `digits` Array and our Procs with appropriate names in the `lambdas` Hash at ❷.

**NOTE** *Some of my co-workers make fun of the variable and method names I use—like `some_proc`, for example. I think names should either be very specific, like `save_rates_to_local_file!`, or explicitly generic, like `some_proc`. For truly generic operations, I often use variable names like `any_proc` or `any_hash`, which tell you explicitly that the operations being performed on them are meant to be useful for any Proc or Hash.*

At ❸, we loop through each sorted `lambda_name`, and at ❹ we extract each Proc out as a variable called `lambda_proc`. We then find `all` members of the `digits` Array that match the condition described by that Proc at ❺ and puts an appropriate message at ❻.

## Running the Script

Let's see it in action with `ruby -w matching_members.rb`.

## The Results

---

```
five+ [5,6,7,8,9]
is_even [0,2,4,6,8]
```

---

In each case, we filter the members of the `digits` Array based on some specific conditions. Hopefully, you'll find that the names I chose for each Proc match what that Proc does. The `five+` Proc returns true for any argument that is five or greater.<sup>2</sup> We see that the results of calling `five+` on each digit in turn returns the correct digits. Similarly, the `is_even` Proc filters its input, only returning true for arguments that are even, where *evenness* is defined as having a modulus two equal to zero. Again, we get the correct numbers.

What happens when we want to filter based on multiple criteria? We could filter once with one Proc, assign that result into an Array, and then filter that result by the second criterion. That's perfectly valid, but what if we have an unknown number of filtering conditions? We want a version of `matching_members` that can take an arbitrary number of Procs. That's our next script.

## #22 Using Procs for Compounded Filtering (`matching_compound_members.rb`)

In this script, we'll filter Arrays using an arbitrary number of Procs. As before, we'll open up the Array class, this time adding two methods. Again, we'll filter digits based on simple mathematical tests. Let's take a look at the source code and see what's different.

---

<sup>2</sup> It does this by implicit Boolean evaluation of the expression `i >= 5`.

## The Code

---

### Block Arguments

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# matching_compound_members.rb

=begin rdoc
Extend the built-in Array class.
=end
class Array

=begin rdoc
Takes a block as an argument and returns a list of
members matching the criteria defined by that block.
=end
```

```
❶ def matching_members(&some_block)
    find_all(&some_block)
  end
```

```
=begin rdoc
Takes an Array of Procs as an argument
and returns all members matching the criteria defined
by each Proc via Array.matching_members.
Note that it uses the ampersand to convert from
Proc to block.
=end
```

```
❷ def matching_compound_members(procs_array)
    procs_array.map do |some_proc|
      # collect each proc operation
      ❸ matching_members(&some_proc)
      ❹ end.inject(self) do |memo,matches|
        # find all the intersections, starting with self
        # and whittling down until we only have members
        # that have matched every proc
      ❺ memo & matches
      end
    end
  end
```

### Array Intersections

```
end

# Now use these methods in some operations.
❶ digits = (0..9).to_a
lambdas = Hash.new()
lambdas['five+'] = lambda { |i| i if i >= 5 }
lambdas['is_even'] = lambda { |i| i if (i % 2).zero? }
lambdas['div_by3'] = lambda { |i| i if (i % 3).zero? }

lambdas.keys.sort.each do |lambda_name|
  lambda_proc = lambdas[lambda_name]
  lambda_values = digits.matching_members(&lambda_proc).join(',')
  ❷ puts "#{lambda_name}\t#{lambda_values}\n"
end

❸ puts "ALL\t#{digits.matching_compound_members(lambdas.values).join(',')}"
```

---

## How It Works

We start by defining a method called `matching_members` (❶), just as before. However, this time our argument is called `some_block` instead of `some_proc`, and it is preceded by an ampersand. Why?

### Blocks, Procs, and the Ampersand

The ampersand (&) is Ruby's way of expressing blocks and Procs in terms of each other. It's very useful for arguments to methods, as you might imagine. *Blocks*, you may remember, are simply bits of code between delimiters such as braces (`{ "I'm a block!" }`) or the `do` and `end` keywords (`do "I'm also a block!" end`). *Procs* are objects made from blocks via the `lambda` method. Either of them can be passed into methods, and the ampersand is the way to use one as the other. Let's test this in `irb`.

#### & Notation for Blocks and Procs

---

```
irb(main):001:0> class Array
irb(main):002:1> def matches_block( &some_block )
irb(main):003:2> find_all( &some_block )
irb(main):004:2> end
irb(main):005:1> def matches_proc( some_proc )
irb(main):006:2> find_all( &some_proc )
irb(main):007:2> end
irb(main):008:1> end
=> nil
```

---

We open the `Array` class and add a method called `matches_block`; this method takes a block (with an ampersand prefix), effectively duplicating the behavior of the existing `find_all` method, which it calls. We also add another method called `matches_proc` that calls `find_all` again, but takes a `Proc` this time. Then we try them out.

---

```
irb(main):009:0> digits = (0..9).to_a
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):010:0> digits.matches_block { |x| x > 5 }
=> [6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):011:0> digits.matches_proc( lambda { |x| x > 5 } )
=> [6, 7, 8, 9]
```

---

The `matches_block` method dutifully takes a block and passes it along to the `find_all` method, transforming it along the way with the ampersand—once on input and again when passed to `find_all`. The `matches_proc` method takes a `Proc` and passes that on to `find_all`, but it only needs to transform with the ampersand once.

You might think that we could omit the ampersand and just treat a block argument as a standard variable, like in `irb` below.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> class Array
irb(main):002:1> def matches_block( some_block )
irb(main):003:2> find_all( some_block )
irb(main):004:2> end
```

```

irb(main):005:1> end
=> nil
irb(main):006:0> digits = (0..9).to_a
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):007:0> digits.matches_block { |x| x > 5 }
ArgumentError: wrong number of arguments (0 for 1)
    from (irb):7:in `matches_block'
    from (irb):7
    from :0

```

---

That doesn't work, as you see. Ruby keeps track of the number of arguments that a given method, block, or Proc expects (a concept called *arity*) and complains when there is a mismatch. Our irb example expected a “real” argument, not just a block, and complained when it didn't get one.

**NOTE** *The gist of the ArgumentError is that blocks are akin to “partial” or “unborn” blocks and need the lambda method to be made into full-fledged Procs, which can be used as real arguments to methods. Some methods, like find\_all, can handle block arguments, but these block arguments are treated differently than regular arguments and don't count toward the number of “real” arguments. We'll cover this later when we discuss the willow\_and\_anya.rb script. For now, note that our new version of matching\_members takes a block instead of a Proc.*

### Filtering with Each Proc via map

We also define a new method called `matching_compound_members` at ❷. The `matching_compound_members` method takes an Array argument called `procs_array` and maps a call to `matching_members` onto each of `procs_array`'s Proc elements; this transforms the elements into blocks with the ampersand at ❸ while doing the mapping. This results in an Array, each of whose members is an Array containing all members of the original Array that match the conditions defined by the Proc. Confused? Take a look in irb.

```

irb(main):001:1> class Array
irb(main):002:1> def matching_compound_members( procs_array )
irb(main):003:2> procs_array.map do |some_proc|
irb(main):004:3* find_all( &some_proc )
irb(main):005:3> end
irb(main):006:2> end
irb(main):007:1> end
=> nil
irb(main):008:0> digits.matching_compound_members( [ lambda { |x| x > 5 },
lambda { |x| (x % 2).zero? } ])
=> [[6, 7, 8, 9], [0, 2, 4, 6, 8]]

```

---

On lines one through seven, we add a shortened version of `matching_members` to all Arrays. We call it on line eight, and find that the result is an Array of Arrays. The first sub-array is all digits greater than five—the result of the first Proc. The second sub-array is all even digits—the result of the second Proc. That's what we have at the end of the map (❹) inside `matching_compound_members`.

## Finding the Intersections with inject

We don't stop there. Next we call our old friend the `inject` method on that Array of Arrays. You may remember that `inject` performs an operation successively and has a memory for intermediate results. That will be very useful for us. The `inject` method takes an optional non-block element for the initial state of its memory. In our script we use `self` (❹), meaning that the memory state will be the `self` Array as it exists prior to any filtering. We also say that each member of the Array resulting from the `map` operation will be called `matches`. This makes sense because the `matches` variable represents members of the initial Array that were found to match the Proc used for that particular stage of the `map` operation.

## Array Intersections

At ❺, we call a method we haven't seen before on `memo`. This method happens to be expressed with the ampersand character, but it has nothing to do with converting blocks and Procs into each other; it has more to do with set math.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> digits = (0..9).to_a
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):002:0> evens = digits.find_all { |x| (x % 2).zero? }
=> [0, 2, 4, 6, 8]
irb(main):003:0> digits & evens
=> [0, 2, 4, 6, 8]
irb(main):004:0> half_digits = digits.find_all { |x| x < 5 }
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4]
irb(main):005:0> evens & half_digits
=> [0, 2, 4]
```

---

Can you guess what this ampersand means? It represents the intersection of two composite data sets. It basically means *Find all members of myself that also belong to this other thing*. When we call it within our `inject`, we ensure that once a given Array element fails one test, it no longer appears as a candidate for the next test. This happens because the memory of the `inject` method (represented by the variable called `memo`) is automatically set to the return value of each iteration of the `inject` method. At ❻, when we're done with all of our mapping and injecting, we're left with only those members of the original Array that pass the tests defined by every single Proc in the `procs_array` argument. Since Ruby returns the last expression evaluated in a method, `matching_compound_members` returns an Array of all members of `self` that pass every test represented by the members of `procs_array`.

After some setup at ❼ similar to that for the previous script, we output results using `puts` at both ❸ and ❹. Let's see it in action.

## The Results

---

```
div_by3 [0,3,6,9]
five+  [5,6,7,8,9]
is_even [0,2,4,6,8]
ALL     [6]
```

---

We call each of these filtering Procs on the digits from zero to nine, getting the correct members each time. We finally output the prefix ALL followed by the members that pass all the tests. The number six is the only digit from zero to nine that is divisible by three, is greater than or equal to five, and is even. Therefore, it is the only member of the final output.

## Hacking the Script

Try defining your own Procs using lambda. You can add them to the section at ❷ or replace some of the existing Procs. Feel free to alter the range used to create the digits Array as well. A larger range of values in digits could help demonstrate more complex relationships among a greater number of filtering Procs.

## #23 Returning Procs as Values (return\_proc.rb)

Let's look at a further demonstration of how to use Procs as data generated by another function. It's very similar to the `make_incrementer.rb` script.

### The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# return_proc.rb

❶ def return_proc(criterion, further_criterion=1)

  proc_of_criterion = {
    'div_by?' => lambda { |i| i if (i % further_criterion).zero? },
    'is?'      => lambda { |i| i == further_criterion }
  }

  # allow 'is_even' as an alias for divisible by 2
  ❷ return return_proc('div_by?', 2) if criterion == ('is_even')

  ❸ proc_to_return = proc_of_criterion[criterion]
  fail "I don't understand the criterion #{criterion}" unless proc_to_return
  return proc_to_return

end

❹ require 'boolean_golf.rb'

# Demonstrate calling the proc directly
❺ even_proc = return_proc('is_even') # could have been ('div_by', 2)
div3_proc = return_proc('div_by?', 3)
is10_proc = return_proc('is?', 10)
❻ [4, 5, 6].each do |num|
  puts %Q[Is #{num} even?: #{even_proc[num].true?}]
  puts %Q[Is #{num} divisible by 3?: #{div3_proc[num].true?}]
end
```

Procs as Hash  
Values

Making Strings  
with %Q

```
puts %Q[Is #{num} 10?: #{is10_proc[num].true?}]
❷ printf("%d is %s.\n\n", num, even_proc[num].true? ? 'even' : 'not even')
end

# Demonstrate using the proc as a block for a method
❸ digits = (0..9).to_a
even_results = digits.find_all(&(return_proc('is_even')))
div3_results = digits.find_all(&(return_proc('div_by?', 3)))
❹ puts %Q[The even digits are #{even_results.inspect}.]
puts %Q[The digits divisible by 3 are #{div3_results.inspect}.]
puts
```

---

## The Results

If we call this with the command `ruby -w return_proc.rb`, we get the following output, all of which is true.

---

```
Is 4 even?: true
Is 4 divisible by 3?: false
Is 4 10?: false
4 is even.
```

```
Is 5 even?: false
Is 5 divisible by 3?: false
Is 5 10?: false
5 is not even.
```

```
Is 6 even?: true
Is 6 divisible by 3?: true
Is 6 10?: false
6 is even.
```

```
The even digits are [0, 2, 4, 6, 8].
The digits divisible by 3 are [0, 3, 6, 9].
```

---

## How It Works

We define a method called `return_proc` starting at ❶ that takes a mandatory criterion and an optional `further_criterion`, assumed to be one. It then defines a Hash called `proc_of_criterion` with keys that match a specific criterion and values that are Procs corresponding to each criterion. It then allows a caller to use an alias `is_even` to mean *Divisible by two* at ❷. It does this by recursively calling itself with the arguments `div_by?` and 2 when the alias is used.

Assuming that the `is_even` alias is not used, the method tries to read the appropriate Proc to use at ❸; it fails if it gets a criterion it doesn't understand.<sup>3</sup> If it gets past this point, we know that the method understands its criteria, because it found a Proc to use. It then returns that Proc, appropriately called `proc_to_return`.

---

<sup>3</sup> Were you to modify or extend this method, you could simply add more options to the `proc_of_criterion` Hash.

We now know that `return_proc` lives up to its name and returns a Proc. Let's use it. At ④, we require one of our first scripts, `boolean_golf.rb`. You may recall that that script adds the methods `true?` and `false?` to every object. This will come in handy for our next few lines. At ⑤, we define three Procs that can test numbers for certain conditions. We then use those Procs within the each block starting at ⑥. For each of the Integers 4, 5, and 6, we test for evenness, being divisible by three, and being equal to ten. We also use both the `printf` command that we saw in the `line_num.rb` script and the main ternary operator, both of which happen at ⑦.

### Proc.call(args) vs. Proc[args]

Notice that we call our Procs with a different syntax here—we don't use the `call` method at all. We can simply put whatever arguments we would use inside square brackets, and it's just like using the `call` method. Let's verify this in `irb`.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> is_ten = lambda { |x| x == 10 }
=> #<Proc:0xb7d0c8a4@(irb):1>
irb(main):002:0> is_ten.call(10)
=> true
irb(main):003:0> is_ten[10]
=> true
irb(main):004:0> is_ten.call(9)
=> false
irb(main):005:0> is_ten[9]
=> false
```

---

I chose to use the bracket syntax in these examples for the sake of brevity. So far, I've shown how to use Procs that have been returned directly from the `return_proc` method. But we can also do other things, such as converting between blocks and Procs.

### Using Procs as Blocks

From ⑧ to the end of the script, we see how we can cast the output of `return_proc` (which we know to be a Proc) into a block with the ampersand without ever storing the Proc in a variable. After defining our usual `digits` Array, we call `find_all` twice, assigning the results into `even_results` and `div3_results`, respectively. Remember that `find_all` takes a block. The ampersand can convert any expression that evaluates to a Proc into a block, and `(return_proc('is_even'))` is an expression that returns (evaluates to) a Proc. Therefore, we can coerce (or cast) the expression `(return_proc('is_even'))` into a perfectly valid block for `find_all`. We do this, outputting the results via `puts` at ⑨.

### The inspect Method

Notice that we call a new method called `inspect` on each set of results to retain the brackets and commas that we normally associate with members of Arrays. The `inspect` method returns a String representation of whatever object it's



called on. It is slightly different from the `to_s` method we've already seen. Let's check that out in `irb`.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> digits = (0..9).to_a
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):002:0> digits.to_s
=> "0123456789"
irb(main):003:0> digits.inspect
=> "[0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]"
```

---

You can see that the output of `inspect` is a bit prettier than the output of `to_s`. It also retains more information about what type of object it was called on.

You should now be pretty comfortable with calling Procs, passing them around, reading them out of Hashes, and converting them to and from blocks, whether with a `lambda` or when passing around to methods. Now let's look at nesting lambdas within other lambdas.

## #24 Nesting lambdas

Let's review Procs for a bit. Procs are just functions that can be treated as data, what functional programming languages call *first-class functions*. Functions can create Procs; we saw that both `make_incrementer` and `return_proc` return Procs of different sorts. Given all that, what prevents us from making a Proc that returns another Proc when called? Nothing at all.

In the `make_exp` example below, we create specific versions of Procs that raise an argument to some specified power. That power is the `exp` argument taken by the outer `lambda`, which is described as a *free variable* because it is not an explicit argument to the inner `lambda`.

The inner `lambda`, which is returned, has a *bound variable* called `x`. It is bound because it is an explicit argument to that inner `lambda`. That variable `x` is the number that will be raised to the specified power. This example is short, and the returned value at each stage is very important, so we'll do this entirely in `irb`.

### *The Code*

#### Nested Lambdas

---

```
irb(main):001:0> digits = (0..9).to_a
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):002:0> make_exp_proc = lambda { |exp| lambda { |x| x ** exp } }
=> #<Proc:0xb7c97adc@(irb):2>
irb(main):003:0> square_proc = make_exp_proc.call(2)
=> #<Proc:0xb7c97b18@(irb):2>
irb(main):004:0> square_proc.call(5)
=> 25
irb(main):005:0> squares = digits.map { |x| square_proc[x] }
=> [0, 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64, 81]
```

---

## How It Works

We see up to this point that `make_exp_proc` is a Proc, which returns a Proc when called. That resulting Proc raises its argument to the exponent used in the initial call of `make_exp_proc`. Since in our example, we called `make_exp_proc` with 2, we created a Proc that squares its argument, appropriately calling it `square_proc`. We also see that the squaring Proc can be used in a mapping operation onto the `digits` Array, and that it returns the correct squared values.

---

```
irb(main):006:0> cube_proc = make_exp_proc.call(3)
=> #<Proc:0xb7c97b18@(irb):2>
irb(main):007:0> cube_proc.call(3)
=> 27
irb(main):008:0> cubes = digits.map { |x| cube_proc[x] }
=> [0, 1, 8, 27, 64, 125, 216, 343, 512, 729]
```

---

We also see in the rest of the example that `make_exp_proc` is flexible and can take arguments other than 2. It works perfectly well with an argument of 3, producing a cubing Proc, which we can use in the same ways as the squaring Proc.

Up to this point, our Procs have tended to implement simple mathematical operations, like addition, multiplication, or exponentiation. But Procs are functions like any other, and they can output any type of value. Let's move on to the next script, which uses Procs that manipulate Strings.

## #25 Procs for Text (`willow_and_anya.rb`)

As I was planning the functional programming chapter of this book, I was watching DVDs of Joss Whedon's *Buffy the Vampire Slayer*. I mention this because I had Procs and blocks on my brain, and I happened to encounter two very good candidates for text-based examples of lambda operations. In an episode called "Him," there is discussion of a "love spell", an "anti-(love spell) spell", and an "anti-(anti-(love spell) spell) spell". That's a great example of successive modifications via a simple function. In another episode called "Same Time, Same Place," there is a conversation that demonstrates simple variable substitution. Both are great examples of simple functions and are good venues to explore how Procs in Ruby differ based on how we choose to create them. Here's the source code.

**NOTE** *You obviously don't need to like Buffy to benefit from reading about these examples. The specific content that the scripts modify is essentially arbitrary.*

### The Code

This code consists of three distinct files: one each for the two necessary classes, and one separate script meant to be directly executed.

## The Him Class

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby -w
# him.rb
```

❶ class Him

```
  EPISODE_NAME = 'Him'
  BASE          = 'love spell'
```

**Constant Procs**      ANTIDOTE\_FOR = lambda { |input| "anti-#{input} spell" }

**Class Methods**    ❷ def Him.describe()  
                      return <<DONE\_WITH\_HEREDOC

```
In #{EPISODE_NAME},
  Willow refers to an "#{ANTIDOTE_FOR[BASE]}".
  Anya mentions an "#{ANTIDOTE_FOR[ANTIDOTE_FOR[BASE]]}".
  Xander mentioning an "#{ANTIDOTE_FOR[ANTIDOTE_FOR[ANTIDOTE_FOR[BASE]]]}"
might have been too much.
```

```
DONE_WITH_HEREDOC
  end
```

```
end
```

---

## The SameTimeSamePlace Class

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby -w
# same_time_same_place.rb
```

❸ class SameTimeSamePlace

```
  EPISODE_NAME = 'Same Time, Same Place'
```

```
=begin rdoc
```

This Hash holds various procedure objects. One is formed by the generally preferred Kernel.lambda method. Others are created with the older Proc.new method, which has the benefit of allowing more flexibility in its argument stack.

```
=end
```

❹ QUESTIONS = {

```
  :ternary => Proc.new do |args|
    state   = args ? args[0] : 'what'
    location = args ? args[1] : 'what'
    "Spike's #{state} in the #{location}ment?"
  end,
```

```
  :unless0th => Proc.new do |*args|
    args = %w/what what/ unless args[0]
```

**Flexible Arity**  
with Proc.new

```
    "Spike's #{args[0]} in the #{args[1]}ment?"
  end,

  :nitems => Proc.new do |*args|
    args.nitems >= 2 || args.replace(['what', 'what'])
    "Spike's #{args[0]} in the #{args[1]}ment?"
  end,

  :second_or => Proc.new do |*args|
    args[0] || args.replace(['what', 'what'])
    "Spike's #{args[0]} in the #{args[1]}ment?"
  end,

  :needs_data => lambda do |args|
    "Spike's #{args[0]} in the #{args[1]}ment?"
  end

}
```

⑤ DATA\_FROM\_ANYA = ['insane', 'base']

⑥ def SameTimeSamePlace.describe()

```
  same_as_procs = [
    SameTimeSamePlace.yield_block(&QUESTIONS[:nitems]),
    QUESTIONS[:second_or].call(),
    QUESTIONS[:unless0th].call(),
    SameTimeSamePlace.willow_ask,
  ]
```

```
    return <<DONE
  In #{EPISODE_NAME},
  Willow asks "#{QUESTIONS[:ternary].call(nil)}",
  #{same_as_procs.map do |proc_output|
    'which is the same as "' + proc_output + '"
  end.join("\n ")
}
  Anya provides "#{DATA_FROM_ANYA.join(', ')}", which forms the full question
  "#{SameTimeSamePlace.yield_block(DATA_FROM_ANYA, &QUESTIONS[:needs_data])}".
```

```
DONE
end
```

```
=begin rdoc
Wrapping a lambda call within a function can provide
default values for arguments.
=end
```

⑦ def SameTimeSamePlace.willow\_ask(args = ['what', 'what'])  
 QUESTIONS[:needs\_data][args]  
end

## The yield Method

```
=begin rdoc
Passing a block as an argument to a method
=end
❶ def SameTimeSamePlace.yield_block(*args, &block)
  # yield with any necessary args is the same as calling block.call(*args)
  yield(*args)
end

end
```

---

## The willow\_and\_anya.rb Script

### Arrays with %w

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby -w
# willow_and_anya.rb

%w[him same_time_same_place].each do |lib_file|
  require "#{lib_file}"
end

[Him, SameTimeSamePlace].each do |episode|
❷ puts episode.describe()
end
```

---

## How It Works

This script performs some complex operations. Let's consider each class individually and then look at the separate script that uses them.

### The Him Class: Creating Procs with lambda

We define a class called `Him` at ❶. It has three constants: its own `EPISODE_NAME`, a `BASE` item, and a `lambda` operation to create an `ANTIDOTE_FOR` something.<sup>4</sup> It has one class method called `Him.describe` (❷) that returns a long `String` constructed via a `here doc`. Remember that you can call a `Proc` with either `some_proc.call(args)` or `some_proc[args]`. In this case, we'll use the shorter bracket version again. We'll report that the character named Willow refers to the antidote for the base spell. Her associate Anya then mentions the antidote for that antidote. Whedon avoided yet another call to the antidote-creating `Proc` in his show, but our method will continue, outputting the antidote for the antidote for the antidote.

### The SameTimeSamePlace Class: Alternatives to lambda for Creating Procs

Our next class explores more options. `SameTimeSamePlace` starts at ❸ and it defines a `Hash` constant called `QUESTIONS` right away at ❹. Its keys are `Symbols`, and its values are `Procs`. Up until now, we've always created `Procs` with the `lambda` method, but we know that `Procs` are instances of the class `Proc`. Traditionally, you can create an instance by calling the `new` method on a class. Let's try that in `irb`.

---

<sup>4</sup>I mentioned earlier in the book that `lambdas` can make excellent `Class Constants`. Now you can see that in action.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> is_even_proc1 = lambda { |x| (x % 2).zero? }
=> #<Proc:0xb7cb687c@(irb):1>
irb(main):002:0> is_even_proc2 = Proc.new { |x| (x % 2).zero? }
=> #<Proc:0xb7cacb4c@(irb):2>
irb(main):003:0> is_even_proc1.call(7)
=> false
irb(main):004:0> is_even_proc2.call(7)
=> false
irb(main):005:0> is_even_proc1.call(8)
=> true
irb(main):006:0> is_even_proc2.call(8)
=> true
```

---

That seems to work fine, and each Proc behaves as expected. In actual practice, there is little difference between Procs created via `lambda` and Procs created via `Proc.new`. `Proc.new` is a bit more flexible about how it handles arguments, which we'll soon see. For now, note that the value for the key `:ternary` in our `QUESTIONS` Hash at ❹ is a Proc that asks if someone named Spike has a certain state (which is neither already known nor static) in a certain location (which is also neither already known nor static).

**NOTE** *Don't be fooled by this script's surface-level silliness. It actually clarifies some very interesting behavior in Ruby's Procs with regard to arguments and arity. Later scripts that use these techniques for tasks that are more useful in the real world include scripts that convert temperatures and play audio files for a radio station.*

### Flexible Arity for Proc.new

Next, we'll start exploring `Proc.new` more for the `:unless0th` Symbol key. You'll notice that the `*args` argument to this Proc has a preceding asterisk. This option is available to Procs created with `Proc.new`, but not to Procs created with `lambda`. It indicates that the argument with the asterisk is optional. Immediately inside the `:unless0th` Proc, we set the value of `args` if it has no value at the zeroth index; then we output the same question as the `:ternary` version. The only difference is that the `args` Array is optional for this version. Note also that we create our double "what" default Array with a `%w` with slash delimiters. This is a very handy way to create single-word Arrays.

For the `:nitems` Symbol key, we use an optional `*args` with `Proc.new` again. The only difference between this version and the `:unless0th` version is the way this tests `args`. In this version, we call the `nitems` method on the `args` Array, which returns the number of non-`nil` items. That number needs to be two or greater; if it isn't, that means we don't have enough elements, and so we will replace `args` with our default set of two "what"s, just as in the previous Procs.

For the `:second_or` Symbol key, we see yet another Proc within optional `args` created with `Proc.new`. This version simply tests whether or not the second item in the `args` Array can be read. If it cannot be read, we replace `args` just as in the `:nitems` version.

Finally, we create a Proc the way we always have, using `lambda`. Since arguments to `lambda` Procs are not optional, we identify this one with the Symbol `:needs_data`. Note that this makes the internals of the Proc simpler. It returns

its output value, and we assume that it gets what it needs. After defining our Procs, the last of which needs data, we should probably have some data. Our source is Anya again, and we define her DATA\_FROM\_ANYA Array at ⑤.

On to the method SameTimeSamePlace.describe at ⑥. It takes no arguments and defines a local Array variable called same\_as\_procs. Its first element is the return value of calling SameTimeSamePlace.yield\_block (defined at ③) with an argument that is the Proc associated with the :nitems key in the QUESTIONS Hash. All of this is cast into a block with the ampersand. We haven't seen the yield\_block method yet, but it takes two arguments: \*args and &block. The first of these indicates *All of your regular arguments*, and the second means *Whatever block you got*.

## Blocks, Arguments, and yield

Remember how I mentioned that blocks are not considered “real” arguments? Using an ampersand is the way to explicitly refer to the block used to call a method. Since we have the group of arguments, whatever they may be, and we have the block, we could call it via block.call(\*args). That approach would work, but we have yet another alternative. Ruby has a method called yield that means *Call whichever block you received with whichever arguments are passed to yield*. When you get comfortable with this script, try replacing the yield line in yield\_block with block.call(\*args). It will not change the script's behavior at all. Let's verify some of this in irb.

---

```
irb(main):001:0> def yield_block(*args, &block)
irb(main):002:1> yield(*args)
irb(main):003:1> end
=> nil
irb(main):004:0> yield_block(0) { |x| x + 1 }
=> 1
irb(main):005:0> yield_block("I am a String") { |x| x.class }
=> String
irb(main):006:0> yield_block("How many words?") { |x| x.split(' ').nitems }
=> 3
irb(main):007:0> yield_block(0, 1) { |x,y| x == y }
=> false
irb(main):008:0> yield_block(0, 1) { |x,y| x < y }
=> true
```

---

Handy, isn't it? The yield\_block method is completely generic, taking any number of regular arguments and any block and executing (or yielding) that block with those arguments. It's a very powerful technique.

Now we understand how our script is using the yield\_block method within SameTimeSamePlace.describe (⑥). The next two elements of same\_as\_procs are the return values of Procs pulled out of the QUESTIONS Hash with the call method. Our last element is the return value of SameTimeSamePlace.willow\_ask (⑦). This method provides a workaround for Procs created with lambda that need a specific number of arguments. willow\_ask wraps a call to such a Proc within a traditional method that takes an optional argument. That argument is forcibly set to whatever the Proc expects before it ever gets to the Proc. This is another alternative for dealing with the arguments to a Proc.

That's it for the elements of our `same_as_procs` Array. Now let's use it. We return a long here doc String inside `SameTimeSamePlace.describe` (❸). This here doc String consists of several lines. The first calls the `QUESTIONS[:ternary]` Proc with one explicitly `nil` argument. This will cause our state and location variables to be set to their default values within the Proc. The next four lines of output are the result of mapping a String outputter onto the elements of `same_as_procs`. Remember that those elements are the return values of their respective Procs, not the Procs themselves. They have already been evaluated before being put into the Array.

The last few lines of the here doc report the data provided by Anya, which is defined as the constant Array `DATA_FROM_ANYA` (❹). We call the `yield_block` method, passing in `DATA_FROM_ANYA` as the "real" arguments and the value returned from `QUESTIONS[:needs_data]`, cast from a Proc into a block. Then we close our here doc and end the `SameTimeSamePlace.describe` method.

### Using Both Him and SameTimeSamePlace in willow\_and\_anya.rb

The first thing we do in the main running script, `willow_and_anya.rb`, is require each `lib_file` needed. Then we cycle through each class, referred to by the name `episode`, and describe that episode (❺), implemented in each specific case, as already discussed.

## Running the Script

Let's look at the output returned by executing `ruby -w willow_and_anya.rb`.

## The Results

---

```
In Him,
Willow refers to an "anti-(love spell) spell".
Anya mentions an "anti-(anti-(love spell) spell) spell".
Xander mentioning an "anti-(anti-(anti-(love spell) spell) spell) spell"
might have been too much.
```

```
In Same Time, Same Place,
Willow asks "Spike's what in the whatment?",
which is the same as "Spike's what in the whatment?"
which is the same as "Spike's what in the whatment?"
which is the same as "Spike's what in the whatment?"
which is the same as "Spike's what in the whatment?"
Anya provides "insane, base", which forms the full question
"Spike's insane in the basement?".
```

---

That's a lot of data about some pretty esoteric programming topics. Congratulations for sticking with me this far. If you're genuinely curious about how this all works, I have some questions for you to ponder.



## Hacking the Script

How would you duplicate just the successive lambda outputs of `Him.describe` using `inject`? Here's what I came up with. Maybe you can find a better alternative.

---

```
def Him.describe2(iterations=3)
  (1..iterations).to_a.inject(BASE) do |memo,output|
    ANTIDOTE_FOR[memo]
  end
end
```

---

Another question you may find interesting is why the `describe` methods are attached to classes, rather than instances. The reason is that the `episode` variable at ❸ represents a class, not an instance. If we wanted to use instance methods, we would need to create an instance of either `Him` or `SameTimeSamePlace`, rather than just calling the `describe` method on each class directly.

## Chapter Recap

What was new in this chapter?

- Creating Procs with `lambda`
- Using Procs as arguments to methods
- Using blocks as arguments to methods, including your own new methods
- Using Procs as first-class functions
- The `inspect` method
- Nesting lambdas within other lambdas
- `Proc.new`
- The `yield` method

I have a confession to make. I love object orientation for many programming tasks, but this chapter about Ruby's functional heritage was the most fun to write so far. Functional programming has been respected in academia for decades, and it is starting to get some well-deserved attention from folks in the computer programming industry and others who are just curious about what it can do. Now that we know some functional programming techniques, let's put them to use and even try to optimize them, which is the subject of our next chapter.



# 7

## USING, OPTIMIZING, AND TESTING FUNCTIONAL TECHNIQUES



This chapter shows some recursive and other functional solutions to simple problems, as well as some ways we can test and improve

these solutions. Two very common programming topics that demonstrate functional programming are the factorial and Fibonacci mathematical series—largely because they’re so easily described using recursive means.<sup>1</sup>

The *factorial* of a given positive number is the product of all the integers from 1 to that number, so  $\text{factorial}(3) = 3 \times 2 \times 1$ ,  $\text{factorial}(5) = 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1$ , and so on. This can be expressed generally as:

$$\text{factorial}(x) = x \times (x - 1) \times (x - 2) \dots 1$$

The Fibonacci series is infinite, but you can look at a slice of it. The *Fibonacci* value for 0 is 0, and the value for 1 is 1. Subsequent values are calculated, rather than preset. The number in the Fibonacci series at a given index is the sum of the previous two numbers. Therefore, the Fibonacci series

---

<sup>1</sup>This is as good a place as any to mention tail recursion. A function or method is *tail recursive* if it can be easily converted from recursion (which is friendly to human readers at a high level of abstraction) to iteration (which is friendlier to computer hardware). The Ruby interpreter does not currently do such conversion. I mention this because we’ll be doing a lot of recursing in this chapter.

starts like this: 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, and so on. The formula for Fibonacci values for numbers greater than one can be expressed generally as  $\text{Fibonacci}(x) = \text{Fibonacci}(x-1) + \text{Fibonacci}(x-2)$ .

If you think that the general definitions of both factorials and Fibonacci look recursive, you're right. We'll look at Ruby code that generates both types of numbers using recursion.

## #26 Basic Factorials and Fibonacci (factorial1.rb through fibonacci5.rb)

The most common criticism of recursion and other functional techniques is that they are resource intensive. Each new version of these factorial or Fibonacci scripts adds some feature intended to *optimize* the code, or produce a speed improvement. In some cases, these features result in a very dramatic improvement, but in other cases, they either fail to improve the code or sometimes even make it worse. The places where these attempts fail to improve speed are often as interesting as where they succeed. There's an old adage among programmers: *Premature optimization is the root of all evil.*<sup>2</sup> Keep that in mind while reading these examples.

### The Code

For this chapter, we'll be looking at some short scripts in pairs. Here's factorial1.rb:

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# factorial1.rb

class Integer

  def fact()
  ❶   return 1 if (self.zero?) or (self == 1)
  ❷   return self * (self-1).fact
  end

end
```

---

And here's fibonacci1.rb:

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# fibonacci1.rb

class Integer

  def fib()
  ❸   return 0 if (self.zero?)
```

---

<sup>2</sup> Commonly attributed to Donald Knuth, a computer programming genius if there ever was one.

```
    return 1 if self == 1
  ④  return (self-1).fib + (self-2).fib
end

end
```

---

## How It Works

For `factorial1.rb` and `fibonacci1.rb`, we add a new method to all Integers: either `fact` or `fib`, respectively. In both cases, we have our exit conditions that return either zero or one. For factorials, we return 1 when `self` is either 0 or 1, testing for 0 with the predicate `zero?` (❶). For the Fibonacci series, we return either zero or one at ❸. At either ❷ or ❹, we return the appropriate calculated value: `self` times the factorial of one lower than `self` (❷), or the sum of the previous two Fibonacci (❹), matching the definitions I gave for factorials and Fibonacci, respectively. Both of these scripts are simple, accurate ways to produce the mathematical procedures we want. Let's look at the results using `irb`. Note that we can require more than one library file with multiple `-r` flags.<sup>3</sup>

## The Results

---

```
$ irb -r factorial1.rb -r fibonacci1.rb
irb(main):001:0> 3.fact
=> 6
irb(main):002:0> 4.fact
=> 24
irb(main):003:0> 5.fact
=> 120
```

---

The factorial of 3 is  $3 \times 2 \times 1$ , which is 6, so that's fine.  $6 \times 4$  is 24, and  $24 \times 5$  is 120. So our `fact` method seems to work well. On to the fibonacci series.

---

```
irb(main):004:0> 3.fib
=> 2
irb(main):005:0> 4.fib
=> 3
irb(main):006:0> 5.fib
=> 5
```

---

The first seven values in the Fibonacci series are 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, and 8. The *zerOTH* number (the number at the 0 index) is 0, the first is 1, the second is also 1, the third is 2, the fourth is 3, and the fifth is 5. Our `fib` method also seems to work well.

---

<sup>3</sup>The integers resulting from factorial and Fibonacci operations can become rather large. Luckily, Ruby allows you to just treat them all as Integers, transparently doing whatever operations are needed with Bignums and Fixnums without making you worry about such things.

## Hacking the Script

How could we improve the speed of this script? We have several options. I'll outline each of them in turn and discuss the possible motivations for each change, but we'll wait to test them (and therefore, to see the results of our assumptions) until the end.

**NOTE** *Modifying a computer program to improve it without changing its external behavior is called refactoring. That's what we're doing with these scripts, because we're not changing the factorial or Fibonacci values for a given input—we're just changing how (and possibly how quickly) we return the same value. Refactoring is a fascinating topic; you can read more about it at <http://refactoring.com> or in Martin Fowler's *Refactoring: Improving the Design of Existing Code* (Addison-Wesley Professional, 1999). Unit testing, which we'll describe later in this chapter, is a critical tool to use when refactoring, as I'll explain in that section.*

### Using include? (factorial2.rb and fibonacci2.rb)

Here's a variant that decides what to return via the `include?` method, which eliminates the need to run two separate tests to find out whether `self` is either zero or one. The motivation is that it could be faster to do a single test instead of two separate tests. Again, I'll show the alterations for both the factorial and Fibonacci scripts. Notice how both ❸ lines differ from either ❶ or ❷ in the initial scripts.

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# factorial2.rb

class Integer

  def fact()
    ❸ return 1 if [0, 1].include?(self)
      return self * (self-1).fact
  end

end
```

---

Here's the Fibonacci script:

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# fibonacci2.rb

class Integer

  def fib()
    ❸ return self if [0, 1].include?(self)
      return (self-1).fib + (self-2).fib
  end

end
```

---

### Passing the returns1 or returns\_self Array as an Argument (factorial3.rb and fibonacci3.rb)

In these variants we have an Array called either `returns1` or `returns_self` that defines the return values for either a factorial or Fibonacci test. The Array is `[0, 1]` in both cases, because zero and one are the values we use in our rules to calculate other values in both tests. The motivation for this variant is the thought that it might be faster to create a data structure (such as `returns1`) once and pass it around, rather than re-creating our `[0, 1]` Array every time we make a new recursive call to either `fact()` or `fib()`. Notice how we define `returns1` or `returns_self` as an argument to each of our methods at ⑥ in each script and then use it subsequently for both our exit conditions testing and as an explicit argument to the recursive calls (⑦).

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# factorial3.rb

class Integer
  ⑥ def fact(returns1 = [0, 1])
    return 1 if returns1.include?(self)
  ⑦   return self * (self-1).fact(returns1)
  end
end
```

---

Here is the Fibonacci version:

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# fibonacci3.rb

class Integer
  ⑥ def fib(returns_self = [0, 1])
    return self if returns_self.include?(self)
  ⑦   return (self-1).fib(returns_self) + (self-2).fib(returns_self)
  end
end
```

---

### Making RETURNS1 or RETURNS\_SELF a Class Constant (factorial4.rb and fibonacci4.rb)

Making `returns1` or `returns_self` an argument seems silly for one reason: It's always the same value, `[0, 1]`. Things that don't change are ideal constants, so let's try that for both scripts. We'll define a constant with an appropriate name at ⑧ in each script and then use it in our method's tests. Note that there is no longer any need to pass the constant as an argument to the recursive method calls, as we did in the previous variant at ⑦.

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# factorial4.rb

class Integer

  ⑥ RETURNS_1_FOR_FACTORIAL = [0, 1]

  def fact()
    return 1 if RETURNS_1_FOR_FACTORIAL.include?(self)
    return self * (self-1).fact
  end

end
```

---

Here is the Fibonacci version:

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# fibonacci4.rb

class Integer

  ⑥ RETURNS_SELF = [0, 1]

  def fib()
    return self if RETURNS_SELF.include?(self)
    return (self-1).fib() + (self-2).fib()
  end

end
```

---

### **Memoization of Results (factorial5.rb and fibonacci5.rb)**

One unexamined flaw in our scripts so far is that they're stupid. It sounds harsh, but it's fair.<sup>4</sup> They keep repeating the same calculations over and over again. For the sake of example, let's assume that we've called the `fib()` method on the Integer 5, and `fib()` is as defined in `fibonacci4.rb`, our most recent Fibonacci script variant. What happens?

The first thing of interest is that whenever our 5 is instantiated, it has a class constant called `RETURNS_SELF`, defined as an Array: `[0, 1]`. Next we call `fib()` on our 5. `RETURNS_SELF` does not `include?` 5, so we then call `fib()` on the expression `(5-1)`, which is of course the Integer 4, and add its returned value to the result of calling `fib()` on the value `(5-2)`, also known as the Integer 3. We then find that `RETURNS_SELF` does not `include?` 4, either, so we then call `fib()` on the expressions `(4-1)`, which is the Integer 3, and add its returned value to the result of calling `fib()` on the value `(4-2)`, also known as the Integer 2. We keep doing this recursively until we get a value of `self` that is found within the `RETURNS_SELF` Array.

---

<sup>4</sup> Maybe the criticism is more fair when directed at the author than the scripts. After all, the scripts only do what I tell them to. In fairness to me, I wrote them to demonstrate failed optimization attempts.



The main problem with doing this is that we keep re-calculating methods like `3.fib()`. We had to calculate it in the guise of `(self-2).fib()` in our initial call to `5.fib()`, and we had to calculate it in the guise of `(self-1).fib()` when our value for `self` was 4. The reason all this recalculation is a problem is that `3.fib()` gives the same result, whether it is called as `(5-2).fib()` or as `(4-1).fib()`—it’s the same thing under the hood. Wouldn’t it be great if there were a way to call something like `3.fib()` once and then remember its value for subsequent calls?

There is such a technique. It’s called *memoization*, and it’s a critical way to make recursive programs use processor time more efficiently. Take a look at our new script variants, which take advantage of memoization. In both variants, we define an appropriately named Array at ❶ that holds the memoized results so far. We already have starting results for both 0 and 1, which we defined in the `returns1` Array in our earlier examples. We then use that memoized results Array (either `@@factorial_results` or `@@fibonacci_results`) at ❷, using the `||=` operator to set a value for the `self` index within the Array, if there isn’t a value already. Since Ruby methods always return the last evaluated expression, we don’t need separate setting and returning operations. Now, whenever we need the `fact` or `fib` value for a lower `self`, we can just read it out. The `||=` operator at ❸ evaluates the element from the Array as true and simply returns it without making a new assignment.<sup>5</sup>

A complement to memoization is lazy evaluation. Few languages implement this by default, Haskell being the most widely known exception. Most languages use *eager evaluation*, in which expressions are evaluated as early as possible, certainly on entry into a method or function. *Lazy evaluation* lets expressions be passed around unevaluated until their value is needed. The benefit for factorial and Fibonacci operations is that the operations on higher numbers can wait until the operations on lower numbers are already done, which speeds up the whole process. There’s a library for lazy evaluation in Ruby at <http://moonbase.rydia.net/software/lazy.rb>.

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# factorial5.rb

class Integer

  ❶ @@factorial_results = [1, 1] # Both 0 and 1 have a value of 1

  def fact()
    ❷ @@factorial_results[self] ||= self * (self-1).fact
  end

  def show_mems()
    @@factorial_results.inspect
  end

end
```

**Memoization**

---

<sup>5</sup> Our Perl friends do something similar to our use of `||=` here that they call the *Orcish Maneuver*. Look it up at <http://perl.plover.com/TPC/1998/Hardware-notes.html> if you’re curious. The name comes from both a pun and the prevalence of *The Lord of the Rings* fandom in the Perl community.

The Fibonacci version is:

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# fibonacci5.rb

class Integer

  ⑨ @@fibonacci_results = [1, 1] # Both 0 and 1 have a value of 1

  def fib()
    ⑩ @@fibonacci_results[self] ||= (self-1).fib + (self-2).fib
  end

end
```

---

That should be enough variants to test. Note that this last factorial script also includes a method called `show_mems` that you can use to inspect the state of the memoization. If you'd like, you can add your own equivalent to `fibonacci5.rb`. On to the testing.

## #27 Benchmarking and Profiling (tests/test\_opts.rb)

Here we'll talk about two distinct ways to test the execution speed of code. *Benchmarking* measures the overall speed of the code, while *profiling* gives more detailed information about how long different parts of the code take to execute, relative to each other.

### ***Benchmarking***

The previous variants all showed ways to modify the base code in the hopes of making it faster. Here's where we test our assumptions and find out what really makes a difference. I store it in a directory called `tests`, meaning that I run it with `ruby -w tests/test_opts.rb`.

### ***The Code***

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# test_opts.rb

=begin comment
Run this without warnings to avoid messages about method redefinition,
which we are doing intentionally for this testing script.
=end
```

#### **Benchmark Module**

```
① require 'benchmark'
   include Benchmark

② FUNC_OF_FILE = {
    'factorial' => 'fact',
    'fibonacci' => 'fib',
  }
```

```

UPPER_OF_FILE = {
  'factorial' => 200,
  'fibonacci' => 30,
}

❸ ['factorial', 'fibonacci'].each do |file|

❹ (1..5).to_a.each do |num|
❺   require "#{file}#{num}"
      upper = UPPER_OF_FILE[file]

❻   bm do |test|

❼       test.report("#{file}#{num}") do
❸❸       upper.send(FUNC_OF_FILE[file])
          end

        end

      end

    end

  end
end

```

---

## How It Works

First, I require a file called 'benchmark' (❶); the include command that immediately follows it mixes in a Module called Benchmark. This is the workhorse of our script. It provides a facility for testing how long specific operations take within a program. In order to do those tests, we need to set up a few Constants, which we do at ❷. The FUNC\_OF\_FILE constant contains the name of the method (or function) we want to call in each file, and UPPER\_OF\_FILE determines the largest Integer on which to call that function (the upper limit, in other words).

At ❸, we loop through each file, and at ❹, we loop through each num, which is the filename suffix. Then we require a specific, dynamically generated filename at ❺. Note that this will override any previous definitions of methods with the same name. (This is why we will run this script without warnings, as the RDoc at the beginning of the file indicates.) We then set the value of the upper local variable. At ❻, we call the method `bm`, provided by the Benchmark module. It takes a block whose local variable is the test to be run. That test has a method called `report`, which (as the name suggests) generates a report of the test's findings. The `report` method also takes a block that contains the code comprising the test. That block consists of only one line at ❸❸. We haven't seen the `send` method yet, but calling `some_object.send( some_func_name, some_arg )` is the same as calling `some_object.some_func_name( some_arg )`. I'll describe `send` in greater detail in the `to_lang.rb` script in Chapter 10. For now, just understand that it calls the desired method (either `fact` or `fib`) for each file.

## Running the Script

You'll want to run this with the command `ruby tests/test_opts.rb`. Notice that we eschew the `-w` flag in this particular case. The reason is that we are redefining methods, which triggers a warning. Since we are doing this intentionally and are aware of the situation, the warning is merely an annoyance in this particular case.

## The Results

Here are my results. Your results may vary considerably, depending on how fast your machine is.

---

	user	system	total	real
factorial1	0.016667	0.000000	0.016667	( 0.002705)
	user	system	total	real
factorial2	0.000000	0.000000	0.000000	( 0.001517)
	user	system	total	real
factorial3	0.000000	0.000000	0.000000	( 0.001532)
	user	system	total	real
factorial4	0.000000	0.000000	0.000000	( 0.001491)
	user	system	total	real
factorial5	0.000000	0.000000	0.000000	( 0.001508)
	user	system	total	real
fibonacci1	8.416667	1.900000	10.316667	( 6.207565)
	user	system	total	real
fibonacci2	11.316667	1.866667	13.183333	( 8.567413)
	user	system	total	real
fibonacci3	9.066667	1.816667	10.883333	( 6.809812)
	user	system	total	real
fibonacci4	9.233333	1.533333	10.766667	( 6.520220)
	user	system	total	real
fibonacci5	0.000000	0.000000	0.000000	( 0.000166)

---

The benchmarking output shows seconds used from the perspective of the user, system, total, and real labels. You can read more about the specific meanings of these labels via the command `man time` on a Unix-like system. For now, keep in mind that they are useful for measuring the time one process takes, relative to another process. I'll be referring to the real time in my discussion. You can see that there is very little variation among the factorial scripts. The main reason for this is that the factorial operation is comparatively simple, since it is a single, recursive multiplication. We see more striking data for the Fibonacci scripts because each recursive Fibonacci operation spawns two additional Fibonacci operations, unless it uses memoization. This double spawning is why I set the upper limit of Fibonacci operations at the much lower value of 30, compared with the factorial's upper limit of 200.

Our tests showed that the simple `fibonacci1.rb` took about 6.20 seconds to run 30 consecutive operations of calling `fib` on the numbers from one to five. Things actually get worse when we try the `include?` optimization in `fibonacci2.rb` (it takes about 8.56 seconds), and improve only slightly for the argument optimization in `fibonacci3.rb` (which takes about 6.81 seconds).

The run time doesn't significantly change until we introduce memoization in `fibonacci5.rb`, where the time spent drops so much that it's no longer significant.

The moral of the story is twofold. First, we've learned that it's better to base code optimization for speed on tests, rather than intuitions. By trying to squeeze some faster performance out of a piece of code, you can waste time in an area that isn't even your speed bottleneck, and it will only make your code harder to read. The second moral is that memoization (as used in `factorial5.rb` and `fibonacci5.rb`) is a crucial addition to any recursive operations that are likely to be repeated.

## Profiling

Of course, benchmarking is only part of the story. If you're worried about the speed of your code, knowing only the total time it takes to run is not especially useful. What's more useful is the information provided by *profiling*, which breaks down the parts of your code and gives speed reports at a finer level of detail.

Ruby has a profiling library called `profile`. It can be required, just like `benchmark`, but it doesn't demand specific testing code like the `bm` method and its block. The library can be automatically applied to an execution of code simply by including `profile` via the `-r` flag. Let's do so with a command-line execution of the first script we wrote:

---

```
ruby -r profile -r 99bottles.rb -e 'wall = Wall.new(99); wall.sing_one_verse!
until wall.empty?'
```

---

Notice how all we have to do is require `profile` with the `-r` flag; our `-e` flag contains code to be executed that works just like the `irb` session we used with `99bottles.rb` when we wrote it in Chapter 2. Here is an extremely truncated version of its results:

---

```
2 bottles of beer on the wall, 2 bottles of beer
take one down, pass it around, 1 bottle of beer on the wall.

1 bottle of beer on the wall, 1 bottle of beer
take one down, pass it around, no more bottles of beer on the wall.
```

% time	cumulative seconds	self seconds	calls	self ms/call	total ms/call	name
31.25	0.08	0.08	297	0.28	0.45	Wall#sing
18.75	0.13	0.05	99	0.51	2.53	Wall#sing_one_verse!
18.75	0.18	0.05	99	0.51	0.51	Wall#take_one_down!
12.50	0.22	0.03	297	0.11	0.11	Fixnum#==
6.25	0.23	0.02	100	0.17	0.17	Wall#empty?
6.25	0.25	0.02	297	0.06	0.06	Fixnum#>
6.25	0.27	0.02	99	0.17	0.17	Kernel.puts
0.00	0.27	0.00	1	0.00	0.00	Wall#initialize
0.00	0.27	0.00	5	0.00	0.00	Module#method_added

0.00	0.27	0.00	1	0.00	0.00	Class#inherited
0.00	0.27	0.00	99	0.00	0.00	IO#write
0.00	0.27	0.00	594	0.00	0.00	String#+
0.00	0.27	0.00	99	0.00	0.00	Fixnum#-
0.00	0.27	0.00	100	0.00	0.00	Fixnum#zero?
0.00	0.27	0.00	1	0.00	0.00	Class#new
0.00	0.27	0.00	296	0.00	0.00	Fixnum#to_s
0.00	0.27	0.00	1	0.00	0.00	Module#private
0.00	0.27	0.00	1	0.00	266.67	#toplevel

---

This report provides a great deal of interesting information, including the percentage of total time that a given method takes, the raw seconds used by that method call, the number of calls to each method, and the number of milliseconds taken per call. This data gives you something to use when you're trying to improve execution speed. If the number of calls to a given method is high, perhaps the method is being called multiple times in a loop. You can increase speed by pre-running that method only once and passing its value into the loop for use. You can also try different ways of implementing the same operation to see which way runs faster, and so on.

### ***Hacking the Script***

There are several variations you could try with these scripts. The simplest code modifications involve changing the upper limit values in `upper_of_file` for each file. You can also try operations other than factorial or Fibonacci ones. You can also run any of the scripts in this book with `-r profile`. When writing them, I focused on pedagogy rather than speed, so you can probably make some speed improvements to these stock scripts. Now let's move on to a practical application of functional programming that should remind you of some earlier scripts.

## **#28 Converting Temperatures (`temperature_converter.rb`)**

For this example, we'll write a converter script. This time, instead of converting currencies, we'll convert units for other real-world factors like length, mass, temperature, and so on. The version that I show here only handles temperatures, but you can download `units_converter.rb` at this book's companion website; it is a more comprehensive script that also handles length, volume, and mass. We'll concentrate on converting to and from English and metric units, but we'll also support kelvins. Let's take a look.

### ***The Code***

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# temperature_converter.rb
# See also GNU units at http://www.gnu.org/software/units/units.html
```

## Composition of Functions

```
# Converts Metric/SI <-> English units.

=begin rdoc
Converts to and from various units of temperature.
=end
class Temperature_Converter

  # every factor has some base unit for multi-stage conversion
  # I allow either full or shortened name as the key
  ❶ BASE_UNIT_OF = {
    'temperature' => 'K',
    'temp'        => 'K',
  }

  ❷ C_TO_F_ADD      = 32.0
    F_TO_C_RATIO   = 5.0/9.0
    C_TO_K_ADD     = 273.15

  ❸ C2K = lambda { |c| c + C_TO_K_ADD }
    F2C = lambda { |f| (f - C_TO_F_ADD ) * F_TO_C_RATIO }
    K2C = lambda { |k| k - C_TO_K_ADD }
    C2F = lambda { |c| (c / F_TO_C_RATIO) + C_TO_F_ADD }
    F2K = lambda { |f| C2K.call( F2C.call(f) ) }
    K2F = lambda { |k| C2F.call( K2C.call(k) ) }

  ❹ CONVERSIONS = {
    # most units just need to get to the base unit
    # have => {want => how_many_wants_per_have},
    'C'  => { 'K' => C2K },
    'F'  => { 'K' => F2K },

  ❺ # The base unit requires more conversion targets
    'K'  => {
      'F'  => K2F,
      'C'  => K2C,
    },
  }

  OUTPUT_FORMAT = "%.2f"

  ❻ def convert(params)
    conversion_proc =
      CONVERSIONS[params[:have_unit]][params[:want_unit]] ||
      get_proc_via_base_unit(params)

    return "#{params[:have_num]} #{params[:have_unit]} = " +
      "#{sprintf( OUTPUT_FORMAT, conversion_proc[params[:have_num]] )} " +
      "#{params[:want_unit]}"
  end

private
```

```

=end rdoc
If there is no direct link between the known unit and the desired unit,
we must do a two-stage conversion, using the base unit for that factor
as a "Rosetta Stone."
=end
  def get_proc_via_base_unit(params)
    ⑦ base_unit = BASE_UNIT_OF['temperature']
    ⑧ have_to_base_proc = CONVERSIONS[params[:have_unit]][base_unit]
    ⑨ base_to_want_proc = CONVERSIONS[base_unit][params[:want_unit]]
    ⑩ return lambda do |have|
      base_to_want_proc.call( have_to_base_proc.call( have ) )
    end
  end
end

```

---

## How It Works

This script uses a few functional techniques that we haven't covered yet. Let's step through the code. At ①, we define a `BASE_UNIT_OF` Hash that holds the base unit. Note that *temperature* and *temp* are both acceptable, and that the script uses kelvins, the scientific unit of absolute temperature, as its internal temperature unit. Next, we define some helpful conversion constants. I've broken these up into paragraphs: The first paragraph of definitions (②) holds simple addition and multiplication constants, while the second paragraph (③) uses `lambda` to define Procs that will use the values from the first paragraph. Temperature conversion is a bit more complicated than conversion of length or mass.

Most unit conversions consist of a simple multiplication operation. If you have 100 pounds and you want to know how many kilograms that is, you simply multiply 100 by 0.45. But to convert temperature between Fahrenheit and Celsius, you must multiply *and* add. The general formula is  $F = (C \times 9/5) + 32$ . Conversely,  $C = (F - 32) \times 5/9$ . Note also that one degree Celsius and one kelvin are the same size (meaning there is no multiplication needed to convert between them), but they are offset by 273.15, so 0 degrees Celsius = 273.15 kelvins, and 0 kelvins (absolute zero) = -273.15 degrees Celsius. That's cold.

At ④, we define constants with three-character names that suggest the type of temperature conversion they do; for example, the `K2C` conversion Proc accepts kelvins and returns the Celsius equivalent. Most of these are pretty straightforward and implement the temperature relationships I described in the paragraph of declarations (②).

However, the `F2K` and `K2F` Procs are more interesting. They use previously defined Procs inside themselves and then use the `call` method successively to perform two-stage conversions. `F2K` accepts some Fahrenheit value `f`, converts that to Celsius via `F2C.call(f)`, and then uses that Celsius value as the argument to `C2F.call()`. This general operation of performing successive function calls is called *composition*. `F2K` composes `C2K` and `F2C`, and `K2F` composes `C2F` and `K2C`. This has the same benefits as breaking operations up into functions or



methods: You only need to have a single, definitive place where any given operation is defined, and you can just call that operation as you build more complicated operations that depend on earlier definitions.

We have some useful constants, including temperature-related Procs. Next is our `CONVERSIONS` Hash at ❹. This is a doubly nested Hash, and the outermost keys are the units we have. Each of those keys points to yet another Hash, with a key representing the units we want to convert to and a value that is the necessary conversion Proc. If we have degrees Celsius and we want kelvins, our conversion operation is `CONVERSIONS['C']['K']`, which is the `C2K` Proc constant.

**NOTE** *The purpose of the `CONVERSIONS` Hash is to pass in some identifier(s) and get something useful out, specifically the Proc needed to do the requested unit conversion. This is very similar to a Factory in object orientation, which is an object that creates other objects based on the parameters it receives. Our `CONVERSIONS` Hash is an example of the same concept applied to Procs.*

The first paragraph of data in `CONVERSIONS` converts to our base unit for each factor—kelvins, in our case. But what if someone asks for a final output that isn't our base unit? We need to be able to convert from the base unit to all the other units, which is what the next paragraph of code at ❺ is for. It's still part of the `CONVERSIONS` Hash, and it still follows the same structure of `{ have => { want => some_conversion_proc } }`, but it has two conversion targets instead of one. We close the constants with `OUTPUT_FORMAT`, which restricts our reported values to two decimal places.

At ❻ we define our main method, called `convert`. It takes a mandatory argument called `params` and defines a local variable called `conversion_proc` that has the value of either `CONVERSIONS[params[:have_unit]][params[:want_unit]]` or, failing that, the output of `get_proc_via_base_unit(params)`. We already know that the value of `CONVERSIONS['C']['K']` is the Celsius-to-kelvins Proc. Let's verify that in `irb`:

---

```
$ irb -r temperature_converter.rb
irb(main):001:0> tc = Temperature_Converter.new
=> #<Temperature_Converter:0xb7ccdb04>
irb(main):002:0> tc.convert( {:have_unit => 'C', :want_unit => 'K', :have_num
=> 15} )
=> "15 C = 288.15 K"
```

---

There is another key to `params` here other than `:have_units` and `:want_units`, but it should be fairly clear. We also need to tell the converter how many units we have, which is what `:have_num` does. These results look good; they are examples in which there is a value available for `CONVERSIONS[params[:have_unit]][params[:want_unit]]` inside the `convert` method, meaning that it doesn't need to use `get_proc_via_base_unit(params)`. After it's got the `conversion_proc`, it returns the output you already saw in `irb`, which shows the number and unit already known, and what it converts into.

This is straightforward enough. But what happens when there isn't a value for `CONVERSIONS[:have_unit][:want_unit]` available? This would be true in cases such as converting degrees Celsius to degrees Fahrenheit. There is no Proc at `CONVERSIONS['C']['F']`. Does this mean that our base unit needs to be either the known or desired value? Yes and no. Yes in only the most pedantic sense. No in any practical sense, because we can use the `get_proc_via_base_unit` method to create our own `conversion_proc` by composing two other known `conversion_procs`, just like the ones we hard-coded into the temperature converters.

If the unit our `params` asks for doesn't have a built-in conversion Proc, we can use `get_proc_via_base_unit`, as noted. Inside `get_proc_via_base_unit`, we first get the `base_unit` (7). We then create the `have_to_base_proc` by getting the Proc out of `CONVERSIONS` that would be used to convert from the known unit to the `base_unit` (8). Then we get the `base_to_want_proc` by getting the Proc out of `CONVERSIONS` that would be used to convert from the `base_unit` to the unit we want (9). Then at 10, we compose `base_to_want_proc` and `have_to_base_proc`, just as we did in the 3 section for F2K and K2F. We could have called our new Proc `have_to_want_proc`, but we just return it, and it becomes `conversion_proc` inside the `convert` method at 6.

## The Results

Let's try it out in `irb`. It was 65 degrees Fahrenheit in Buffalo, New York in November today (yes, really), and I was talking with a Canadian coworker about this temperature conversion script. Let's start with that.

---

```
$ irb -r temperature_converter.rb
irb(main):001:0> tc = Temperature_Converter.new
=> #<Temperature_Converter:0xb7c75b5c>
irb(main):002:0> tc.convert( { :have_num => 65.0, :have_unit => 'F', :want_unit => 'C' } )
=> "65.0 F = 18.33 C"
irb(main):003:0> tc.convert( { :have_num => 0, :have_unit => 'K', :want_unit => 'F' } )
=> "0 K = -459.67 F"
```

---

These examples should give you an idea of this program's interface. You can also call it with other conversions that are of interest to you.

## Hacking the Script

As I already noted, there is a more complex version of this script available for download at the book's website. If you find that you want to convert to or from units that I don't have built in, just create a key/value pair in `CONVERSIONS` that converts from your new unit to the appropriate base unit and another that converts from the base unit to your new unit. That should give you the ability to convert to and from any unit relative to your new unit.

We also use implicit composition in `temperature_converter.rb`—at ❸ for definition and at ❿ for use. You could modify the script to have an explicit `compose` method that takes two Procs and returns a new Proc that performs each operation in order. Here’s an example in `irb`:

---

```
irb(main):001:0> def compose(inner_proc, outer_proc, *args)
irb(main):002:1> return lambda { |*args| outer_proc.call(inner_proc[*args]) }
irb(main):003:1> end
=> nil
irb(main):004:0> square = lambda { |x| x ** 2 }
=> #<Proc:0xb7cda048@(irb):4>
irb(main):005:0> inc = lambda { |x| x + 1 }
=> #<Proc:0xb7ccb8f4@(irb):5>
irb(main):006:0> square_then_inc = compose( square, inc )
=> #<Proc:0xb7ce5204@(irb):2>
irb(main):007:0> inc_then_square = compose( inc, square )
=> #<Proc:0xb7ce5204@(irb):2>
irb(main):008:0> square_then_inc.call(1)
=> 2
irb(main):009:0> square_then_inc.call(2)
=> 5
irb(main):010:0> inc_then_square.call(2)
=> 9
```

---

Line 8 gives us 2, because  $(1 ** 1) + 1 = 2$ . Line 9 gives us 5, because  $(2 ** 2) + 1 = 5$ . Line 10 gives us 9, because  $(2 + 1) ** 2 = 9$ . Once you have this `compose` method, you can even use it on Procs that are the returned value from a previous call to `compose`, allowing you to stack successive operations as much as you like.

## #29 Testing `temperature_converter.rb` (`tests/test_temp_converter.rb`)

Up until this point, our testing scripts have been relatively primitive, and to a very large degree, we have rolled our own testing solutions. It’s silly to do that repeatedly, especially in computer programs, because good programming languages allow you to express abstract concepts abstractly, as well as to adapt general-purpose tools in code libraries to your specific needs.

Ruby has a general-purpose testing library called `Test::Unit`. Here is code that allows you to use its power to test the script `temperature_converter.rb`.

### *The Code*

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# test_temp_converter.rb

❶ require 'temperature_converter'
require 'test/unit'
```

```

❷ class Tester < Test::Unit::TestCase

  def setup
    @converter = Temperature_Converter.new()
  end

  def test_temps()

❸   tests = {
      '100.0 C = 212.00 F' => {
        :have_num => 100.0,
        :have_unit => 'C',
        :want_unit => 'F',
      },
      '212.0 F = 100.00 C' => {
        :have_num => 212.0,
        :have_unit => 'F',
        :want_unit => 'C',
      },
      '70.0 F = 294.26 K' => {
        :have_num => 70.0,
        :have_unit => 'F',
        :want_unit => 'K',
      },
      '25.0 C = 298.15 K' => {
        :have_num => 25.0,
        :have_unit => 'C',
        :want_unit => 'K',
      },
    }
    general_tester( tests )

  end

  private

❹ def general_tester(tests)
❺   tests.each_pair do |result,test_args|
❻     assert_equal( result, @converter.convert( test_args ) )
    end
  end

end

```

---

## The Results

Let's run it and see what happens.

---

```

$ ruby -w tests/test_temp_converter.rb
Loaded suite tests/test_temp_converter
Started
.

```

Finished in 0.001094 seconds.

1 tests, 4 assertions, 0 failures, 0 errors

---

All four of our assertions passed with no failures or errors. That's wonderful news. Now let's look at what it means.

**NOTE** *One term you may hear in reference to testing is code coverage, which is the degree to which the tests adequately examine the pertinent code. This can be defined in terms of the percentage of total code lines that are tested, the percentage of Boolean evaluations that are tested, and other similar metrics.*

Earlier in this chapter, I mentioned refactoring, the practice of cleaning up code implementation while leaving its behavior unchanged. Unit testing is very useful when refactoring, especially if you use tests that have high *entry/exit coverage*, meaning they try to ensure that all outputs from functions stay the same as long as those functions get the same inputs. This type of testing keeps your refactoring honest.

### ***How It Works***

First, we need access to the code that we'll be testing. Luckily, we've followed good design practice and defined our code in a library called `temperature_converter.rb`, so we require both it and the `test/unit` library at ❶. Then we define a new class called `Tester`; as you can see at ❷, this class is a child of `Test::Unit::TestCase`, meaning that it inherits all of the methods and characteristics of `Test::Unit::TestCase`.

We then define a testing method called `test_temps`. It's just a wrapper for a multi-level Hash called `tests`, defined at ❸ inside `test_temps`. You'll notice that each key of `tests` is a String that looks like the output of `Units_Converter.convert`; that key's value is a Hash that you use as the argument into `Units_Converter.convert` in order to get output that matches that key. Inside `test_temps`, we then pass `tests` as an argument into a private method called `general_tester`, which we define at ❹.

The `general_tester` method loops through each `pair` in the `tests` Hash at ❺, calling the expected result `result` and the argument Hash needed to produce that result, `test_args`. For each of those pairs, we assert that `result` and `@converter.convert( test_args )` are equal, using the appropriately named `assert_equal` method (❻). That's all there is to it.

### ***Hacking the Script***

Try making a change in one of the `tests` Hashes. If you either change only the key (which becomes `result` in `general_tester`) or only the value (which becomes `test_args` in `general_tester`), the call to `assert_equal` will fail, because the two items passed as arguments to be compared will no longer be equal. You can also add entirely new elements to the `tests` Hash, with new values you want to verify.

This script only scratches the surface of how to use `Test::Unit`. Type `ri Test::Unit` at the command line for more information. You can also browse to <http://www.ruby-doc.org/stdlib/libdoc/test/unit/rdoc> within the Ruby Standard Library Documentation site. Note that the HTML generated for that documentation came from `RDoc`.

I already mentioned that testing can be useful during refactoring. A good place to start with testing is what I've done here, pre-figuring expected values from a method based on a set of known input parameters. The `assert_equal` method is very useful for such testing. There are other methods available, which you can read about by typing `ri Test::Unit::Assertions` at the command line. Notables include `assert_instance_of`, which checks whether its argument belongs to a specified class; `assert_nil`, which checks whether its argument is `nil`; `assert_raise`, which you can use to intentionally raise an Exception (i.e., break something); and `assert_respond_to`, which checks whether a given argument knows how to respond to a given specified method.

## Chapter Recap

What was new in this chapter?

- Recursive factorials and Fibonacci as good profiling candidates
- Refactoring
- Memoization
- Testing with Benchmark
- Profiling
- Converting temperatures
- Hashes with Proc values as Proc Factories
- Composition of Procs
- Testing with `Test::Unit`

Again, that's a lot to take in. This list is deceptively short, because some of these concepts require more contemplation than those we've considered in previous chapters. Let's move on to the next chapter, in which we'll write some tools for processing HTML and XML.

# 8

## HTML AND XML TOOLS



Text runs the Web. This is especially true of text that is encoded within some sort of markup, such as HyperText Markup Language (HTML) or eXtensible Markup Language (XML).

Even non-programmers know that HTML is the markup generally used by websites, even if they've never heard the term markup before. XML is becoming increasingly important for both data transfer and data storage. As I work on the chapters of this book, I save them as a filetype that consists of a compressed collection of XML files. I also used a type of XML called DocBook (<http://docbook.org>) for my Doctoral dissertation. The bottom line is, XML-based markup is everywhere. Luckily, Ruby can understand, output, and manipulate XML (and HTML).

### **#30 Cleaning Up HTML (`html_tidy.rb`)**

Let's start with HTML. This markup language has had several numbered releases, similar to different versions of software, and it's come a long way since Tim Berners-Lee made the first web page at CERN in the mid '90s.

Recent versions of HTML are subsets of XML and are called XHTML as a result. However, the earlier versions of HTML were not as disciplined; they allowed very liberal interpretations of HTML. Especially when people were first learning how to use HTML, they would often throw together pages that were not very well designed, either aesthetically or technically. But browser manufacturers didn't want to take the blame for rendering content badly, so they made their browsers very forgiving.

In the short term, the practice of allowing non-compliant HTML was great, because it meant that more people could view more content. In the long term, however, that liberality had some negative consequences because it allowed web designers to continue using some uncorrected bad techniques. There's a lot of sloppy HTML out there, and there's little reason to add to the mess. We want a tool that helps us make sure that our own HTML is up to spec.

**NOTE** *I'm assuming that you have a basic familiarity with HTML. If not, there's a good guide at <http://w3schools.com/html/default.asp>. If you're curious about the various versions of HTML and its relationship to XML, browse to the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) Markup page at <http://www.w3.org/Markup>. This page also has a link to the HTML Tidy program that the `html_tidy.rb` script depends on.*

There's an excellent program that does most of this clean-up work already. It's called HTML Tidy, and it was written by Dave Raggett. It's available at <http://tidy.sourceforge.net>, but it also comes prepackaged within many GNU/Linux distributions. Seeing no need to reinvent the wheel, I wrote `html_tidy.rb` to use Raggett's program and add some specific features that I wanted. Let's take a look at the code.

## The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# html_tidy.rb
# cleans up html files

❶ EMPTY_STRING = ''

SIMPLE_TAG_REPLACEMENTS = {

  #closers
  => Operator /\<\b\>/i           => '</strong>',
             /\<\i\>/i           => '</em>',
             /\<\strong\>\<\td\>/i => '</th>',
             /\<\u\>/i           => '</div>',

  #openers
             /\<b\>/i           => '<strong>',
             /\<i\>/i           => '<em>',
             /\<td\>\<strong\>/i => '<th>',
             /\<u\>/i           => '<div style="text-decoration: underline;">',
             # again, more as appropriate

}
```



```
TIDY_EXTENSION = '.tidy'

TIDY_OPTIONS = '-asxml -bc' # possible add -access 3

❷ UNWANTED_REGEXES = [
  /<meta name="GENERATOR" content="Microsoft FrontPage 5.0"/>$/,
  /< *$/,
  /< \n$/,
  # more as appropriate
]
```

```
❸ def declare_regexes_and_replacements()
  replacement_of = Hash.new()
  UNWANTED_REGEXES.each do |discard|
    replacement_of[discard] = EMPTY_STRING
  end
  return replacement_of.merge(SIMPLE_TAG_REPLACEMENTS)
end
```

```
=begin rdoc
This lacks a ! suffix because it duplicates the argument and
returns the changes made to that duplicate, rather than overwriting.
=end
```

```
❹ def perform_replacements_on_contents(contents)
  output = contents.dup
  replacement_of = declare_regexes_and_replacements()
  ❺ replacement_of.keys.sort_by { |r| r.to_s }.each do |regex|
    replace = replacement_of[regex]
    ❻ output.each { |line| line.gsub!(regex, replace) }
  end
  return output
end
```

```
=begin rdoc
This has the ! suffix because it destructively writes
into the filename argument provided.
=end
```

```
❽ def perform_replacements_on_filename!(filename)
  ❹ if (system('which tidy > /dev/null'))
    new_filename = filename + TIDY_EXTENSION
    system("tidy #{TIDY_OPTIONS} #{filename} > #{new_filename} 2> /dev/null")
    ❺ contents = File.open(new_filename, 'r').readlines()
    new_contents = perform_replacements_on_contents(contents)
    File.open(new_filename, 'w') { |f| f.puts(new_contents) }
  else
    puts "Please install tidy.\n"
  end
end
```

## Standard Error

```
❿ ARGV.each do |filename|
  perform_replacements_on_filename!(filename)
end
```

## How It Works

We start by defining some constants at ❶. `EMPTY_STRING` should be obvious, and `SIMPLE_TAG_REPLACEMENTS` is a Hash whose keys are regular expressions and whose values are whatever the corresponding key should be replaced with. You'll notice that you need to mark certain characters within a regular expression with a backslash (`\`)—that's because some characters have special meanings within regular expressions. You've already seen examples of that, where `?` means *Zero or one of whatever preceded me* and `*` means *Zero or more of whatever preceded me*. Similarly, `\` means *Treat whatever follows me as a literal character, not a special regex character*.

Why do I make these particular replacements? The `<b>` and `<i>` tags are still commonly used, but they are not compliant with the Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI). I've set up this script to replace them with appropriate tags that accomplish the same goal but don't discriminate against the visually impaired. I also replace `<td>\<\strong>/` with `<th>` because I find that people often make "almost" table headers by putting formatting within a table cell, rather than making the cell a real header. Finally, I've taken out the `<u>` tag because it doesn't mean anything, even if it creates an underline. It's just a visual formatting tag with no semantic meaning, which is a no-no. Formatting is what stylesheets are for—the markup itself should just have content. Therefore, I replace `<u>` with a `<div>` that has an underline style attached to it. I make all these replacements both for the opening tags and the closing tags.

**NOTE** *Web accessibility is important: These fixes help people who are visually impaired surf the Web. The `html_tidy.rb` script fixes my mistakes, at least for these particular cases. If you're curious, read more about accessibility and its importance at the W3C's Web Accessibility Commission page (<http://www.w3c.org/WAI>).*

We continue with more constants, including some `TIDY_OPTIONS`. Execute `man tidy` at the command line to see what these do. These options reflect my preferences, but you can certainly make some changes to the constant once you're comfortable with operating the script. At ❷, we have an Array constant called `UNWANTED_REGEXES`. It sounds harsh, but there are some things I just don't want in my HTML. One of these is a `<meta>` tag, which Microsoft's FrontPage sometimes adds to files. I also don't want either lines with only whitespace (which `/^\s*/` matches) or completely empty lines (which `/^\n$/` matches). As the comment suggests, you can add to this Hash.

The first method, `declare_regexes_and_replacements`, is at ❸. It combines `SIMPLE_TAG_REPLACEMENTS` with `UNWANTED_REGEXES` by looping through `UNWANTED_REGEXES` and making a Hash called `replacement_of`, whose keys are the elements of `UNWANTED_REGEXES` and whose values are all the `EMPTY_STRING`. This makes sense—if a regex is unwanted, we want to replace it with the empty string. The `declare_regexes_and_replacements` method then returns the merged Hash, which is made up of both `SIMPLE_TAG_REPLACEMENTS`, which was already a Hash in the first place, and our new `replacement_of` Hash.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> I generally find Perl rather sloppy, but one benefit of its policy of storing Hashes as even-length Arrays is that you can make Hashes out of Arrays very easily. The Perl equivalent of our `UNWANTED_REGEXES`.each loop would be something like this: `my %replacement_of = map { $_ => EMPTY_STRING } @unwanted_regexes;`. Of course, it's more trouble to merge Hashes in Perl, so I still like Ruby better. Don't worry about any of this if you don't know Perl.

On to ④ and the `perform_replacements_on_contents` method. It takes an argument, unsurprisingly called `contents`, immediately duplicates it with the `dup` method, and calls the result output. It then calls `declare_regexes_and_replacements` (defined at ⑤), getting the return value which we already know is a Hash that is called `replacement_of`. For simplicity, we'll keep the same name for that Hash inside `perform_replacements_on_contents`. At ⑥, we sort the keys of `replacement_of` with the `sort_by` method, which takes a block. Strings know how to compare themselves to other Strings for sorting purposes, whereas regular expressions don't. Therefore, we convert each of our regular expression keys into a String for sorting purposes.

**NOTE** *Strings know how to compare themselves to other Strings because String has a `<=>` method, and one of String's ancestors is the Comparable module.<sup>2</sup> Comparable uses the `<=>` method to implement the other comparison operators, such as `==`, `<=`, `>=`, and so on. If you create a new class and want it to be sortable, give it a method called `<=>`, figure out how to implement it in a way that makes sense, and then mix in Comparable. You'll get lots of sorting value for a minimal amount of effort, and you'll make your objects more useful.*

In an earlier version of `html_tidy.rb`, I didn't include the sorting at ⑥, and I would occasionally miss replacements described in `SIMPLE_TAG_REPLACEMENTS`. The reason was that Hash keys do not have a deterministic order, so sometimes my program would replace `<b>` with `<strong>` before getting to replacing `</strong></td>` with `</th>`, but sometimes it wouldn't. To make my program more robust, I'd either need to add a Hash pair that replaced `</b></td>` with `</th>` or enforce a specific order on how I used `replacement_of` at ⑥. I chose to enforce order, not just because it makes the program more dependable, and not just because I'm a petty tyrant at heart, but also because it makes the program simpler.

We sort the keys of `replacement_of` and loop through each of them at ⑦, calling them `regex` in turn. We also want the replacement value, so we read that out of the Hash as `replace`. Then at ⑧, we loop through each line of the eventual output, destructively `gsub!`ing `regex` with `replace`. The output variable is now ready to be returned. That's how we `perform_replacements_on_contents`. Where do we get the `contents`?

The `perform_replacements_on_filename!` method is at ⑨. At ⑩, we call it on each element of the ARGV Array, which we call `filename` as we pass it into `perform_replacements_on_filename!` as the single argument. We first attempt a system call of `'which tidy > /dev/null'` (⑪). Without getting too deep into Unix black magic, I'll tell you that when executed, this command determines whether there is a version of `tidy` installed on the machine.

If the test succeeds, we know we can use `tidy`. First, we define a `new_filename`, which is just the old `filename` with the `TIDY_EXTENSION` appended to it. We then make a call to `tidy` itself, passing it its own `TIDY_OPTIONS` (as an interpolated String) and calling it on `filename`. We pass its output into the `new_filename`, discarding any error messages. The `new_filename` file now contains all of the tidying done by `tidy` itself but none of our add-on changes.

---

<sup>2</sup> Since Comparable is a module, rather than a class, it is an ancestor of String via mixing in, rather than straightforward inheritance. However, `String.ancestors` includes Comparable, so I've referred to it as an ancestor here.

**NOTE** *The > character in the Unix shell just means Send my output into the following filename, so some\_command > some\_file takes the output of some\_command and writes it into a file called some\_file. Putting a 2 in front of > makes it apply to error messages, instead of regular output. Unix calls the output of error messages Standard Error. The file called /dev/null just means nowhere, so some\_command > some\_file 2> /dev/null means Send some\_command's output into some\_file, and I don't care about any error messages.*

We then read new\_filename's contents using File.open and the readlines method at ❹. That contents variable is ready for perform\_replacements\_on\_contents, which we call on it, assigning the results into new\_contents. We then open the new\_filename file again, this time for writing, and replace its contents with new\_contents.

If the which tidy test fails, we know that our beloved tidy is not present, so there's little point in proceeding. We simply ask the user to install tidy.

## Running the Script

I have a sample file at extras/eh.html, so we can call this script with the command `ruby -w html_tidy.rb extras/eh.html`. Here's the original version, extras/eh.html:

---

```
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">
<html
  lang="en"
  xml:lang="en"
  xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">

  <head>
  <meta http-equiv="refresh" content="10" />
  <title>English Horn for No Clergy</title>
  <style>
  @import url('../css/noclergy.css');
  h1, h2 { display: none; }
  </style>
  </head>

  <body>

  <div id="notation">
  <h1>No Clergy:</h1>
  <p style="text-align:center;">
  
  </p>
  </div>

  <table>
  <tr>
  <td><b>I'm a header, but I don't know it.</b></td>
```

```

<td><u>I'm some underlined content.</u></td>
<td><i>I'm some italicized content.</i></td>
</tr>
</table>

```

```

<p>I'm an unclosed paragraph. The horrors.

```

```

</body>
</html>

```

---

## The Results

And here's the new version, extras/eh.html.tidy:

```

<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html lang="en" xml:lang="en" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>
<meta name="generator" content=
"HTML Tidy for Linux/x86 (vers 1 September 2005), see www.w3.org" />
<meta http-equiv="refresh" content="10" />
<title>English Horn for No Clergy</title>

<style type="text/css">
/**/
@import url('../css/noclergy.css');
h1, h2 { display: none; }
/*]]&gt;*/
&lt;/style&gt;

&lt;style type="text/css"&gt;
/*<![CDATA[*/
p.c1 {text-align:center;}
/*]]&gt;*/
&lt;/style&gt;
&lt;/head&gt;
&lt;body&gt;
&lt;div id="notation"&gt;
&lt;h1&gt;No Clergy:&lt;/h1&gt;
&lt;p class="c1"&gt;&lt;img src="../../png/eh-page1.png" /&gt;&lt;/p&gt;
&lt;/div&gt;
&lt;table&gt;
&lt;tr&gt;
&lt;th&gt;I'm a header, but I don't know it.&lt;/th&gt;
&lt;td&gt;&lt;div style="text-decoration: underline;"&gt;I'm some underlined content.
&lt;/div&gt;&lt;/td&gt;
&lt;td&gt;&lt;em&gt;I'm some italicized content.&lt;/em&gt;&lt;/td&gt;
&lt;/tr&gt;
&lt;/table&gt;
&lt;p&gt;I'm an unclosed paragraph. The horrors.&lt;/p&gt;
&lt;/body&gt;
&lt;/html&gt;
</pre>
<hr/>
</div>
<div data-bbox="717 941 909 957" data-label="Page-Footer">
<p>HTML and XML Tools <b>147</b></p>
</div>
```

Notice how `tidy` added a `<meta>` tag for itself and wrapped the style information inside CDATA markers. It also defined a paragraph class called `c1` for our `text-align:center; style` that is attached to the free-floating `<p>` tag. In addition to everything that `tidy` does, our script does what I've described above. It replaced the tags for our “almost” header with a `<th>`, converted the underlining from a bad `<u>` tag to a style declaration, and changed the `<i>` tag to an `<em>` tag, making this content a little friendlier to an audio browser, such as a blind person might use.

## Hacking the Script

Could we use `inject`, rather than `each`, to modify `declare_regexes_and_replacements` at ❸ and make it more functional? Here's one way:

Hashes from  
Arrays with  
`inject`

---

```
def declare_regexes_and_replacements()
  return UNWANTED_REGEXES.inject({}) do |h,discard|
    h.merge( { discard => EMPTY_STRING } )
  end.merge(SIMPLE_TAG_REPLACEMENTS)
end
```

---

In this variant, `h` takes the place of `replacement_of`, and it is the memoized Hash that persists from one iteration of `inject` to the next. Each time, we merge it with the new pair (consisting of `discard` as a key pointing to the `EMPTY_STRING`), so we end up with a Hash of things to replace, all of whose replacements are the `EMPTY_STRING`—just like in the original version. This time, however, our temporary variables are confined entirely within the `inject` loop.

Could we have simply altered contents in place with a method called `perform_replacements_on_contents!`? Of course. I just wanted to show both a destructive method (`perform_replacements_on_filename!`) and a regular method (`perform_replacements_on_contents`) whose output we would then use for demonstration purposes. Both could have been either destructive or non-destructive. Change the script as you like if you'd prefer these to use the same approach.

## #31 Counting Tags (`xml_tag_counter.rb`)

XML is strict about its internal structure. It can only have a single top-level element (called the *root element*), but that root element can have any number of elements within itself, and each of those elements can have any number of other elements within itself, continuing on recursively. We want a script that we can run on an XML file that will output how many times each tag (or element) occurs within that document, no matter how many layers deep it appears—for example, we want to find all `<p>` tags regardless of whether or not those tags are immediately within the top-level `<html>` element, or within some other element, such as a `<blockquote>` or `<div>`. Let's take a look.

## The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# xml_tag_counter.rb

=begin rdoc
This script uses the REXML parser, which is written in Ruby itself.
Find out more at http://www.germane-software.com/software/rexml.
=end
```

### REXML

- ❶ require 'rexml/document'

```
class Hash
```

- ❷ =begin rdoc

Given that `<b>self</b>` is a `<b>Hash</b>` with keys of XML tags and values of their respective counts in an XML source file, sort by the tag count, descending. Fall back to an ascending sort of the tag itself, weighted half as strongly.

```
=end
```

```
def sort_by_tag_count()
```

```
self.sort do |a, b|
```

- ❸ ( (b[1] <=> a[1]) \* 2 ) + (a[0] <=> b[0])

```
end
```

```
end
```

- ❹ =begin rdoc

Merge with another `<b>Hash</b>`, but add values rather than simply overwriting duplicate keys.

```
=end
```

```
def merge_totals(other_hash)
```

```
other_hash.keys.each do |key|
```

```
self[key] += other_hash[key]
```

```
end
```

```
end
```

### Hashes as Histograms

- ❺ =begin rdoc

Your basic pretty formatter, returns a `<b>String</b>`.

```
=end
```

```
def pretty_report()
```

```
output = ''
```

```
sort_by_tag_count.each do |pair|
```

```
tag, count = pair
```

```
output += "#{tag}: #{count}\n"
```

```
end
```

```
return output
```

```
end
```

```
end # Hash
```

```

❶ =begin rdoc
Returns DOM elements of a given filename.
=end
def get_elements_from_filename(filename)
  REXML::Document.new(File.open(filename)).elements()
end

❷ =begin rdoc
Returns a <b>Hash</b> with keys of XML tags and values
of those tags' counts within a given XML document.
Calls itself recursively on each tag's elements.
=end
def tag_count(elements)
❸   count_of = Hash.new(0) # note the default value of 0
      elements.to_a.each do |tag|
        count_of[tag.name()] += 1
❹   count_of.merge_totals(tag_count(tag.elements))
      end
      return count_of
end

❺ puts tag_count(get_elements_from_file(ARGV[0])).pretty_report()

```

---

## How It Works

Most of the work in this script comes from adding new methods to the Hash class. First, at ❶, we require the `rexml/document` library, an XML processing library. Then at ❷, we start the RDoc explaining the `sort_by_tag_count` method. The RDoc explains the method's goals, but let's look at each step. First, `self.sort` converts a Hash into an Array of Arrays. Each element of the main Array is another Array with the structure *[key, value]*. Let's show this in irb:

---

```

irb(main):001:0> h = { 0 => 1, 1 => 2 }
=> {0=>1, 1=>2}
irb(main):002:0> h.sort
=> [[0, 1], [1, 2]]

```

---

Since this is in the context of a method called `sort`, the Array of Arrays is sorted. The `sort` method takes a block, which allows us to specify how we'd like it to be sorted. We do this at ❸ with the expression `( b[1] <=> a[1] ) * 2 ) + (a[0] <=> b[0])`. What does this expression mean?

First, we need to talk a bit about sorting. You see in the line before ❸ that we identify the variables within the `sort` loop as `a` and `b`. Those names are traditional for sorts, although Ruby allows you to pick other names if you like. Our expression calls the `<=>` method on whatever `b[1]` is, with `a[1]` as the argument. It then multiplies this by two and adds the result of calling `<=>` on `a[0]`, with `b[0]` as an argument. That should clear everything up, right?



The `<=>` method returns 1 when `self` is greater than the argument, however it is defined; -1 when `self` is less than the argument, hopefully according to the same criteria; and 0 when they are equal. Keep this in mind when you create your own classes that implement the `<=>` method. Our project specifications from “#31 Counting Tags (`xml_tag_counter.rb`)” on page 148 says that the pairs of our Array of Arrays from `sort_by_tag_count` will have keys that are the names of XML tags and values that are the number of times that the tag appears in the document being analyzed. The first part of our expression (the part that is doubled) is just a sort on the tag count, as the name suggests. We put `b[1]` before `a[1]` because we want to sort in descending order, so the most common tags come first.

What happens when two different tags occur the same number of times in the document? That’s what the second part of the expression is for. When the tag count is tied, we want to then sort on the name of the tag, which is either `a[0]` or `b[0]`. We put these in regular order, where `a` comes before `b`, because we want to sort in ascending order. Our output is sorted by descending tag count first, and ascending tag name within a given tag count. Why do we double the value of `<=>` for the tag counts?

Since `<=>` always returns -1, 0, or 1, and this is true for either sorting by tag count or tag name, we need to give tag count sorting greater weight somehow. Doubling does this very well, because it increases the magnitude of either 1 or -1 for the tag count sort relative to the tag name sort, but does nothing for tag count ties, because zero doubled is still zero. Our tag name sort still counts for something, just less than the `sort_by_tag_count`.<sup>3</sup>

We now know how to `sort_by_tag_count`, but we also want to be able to merge Hashes together, take another Hash as an argument, add their tag counts together, and have that new pair be the pair in the result. Hashes already have a method called `merge`, which takes a Hash argument. That should take care of everything, right? Sadly, no. The preexisting `merge` method *replaces* any existing key => value pair with whatever is in the hash taken as an argument. We don’t want that—we want to keep the key that they share, but add the values together. How do we do that?

As is often true in Ruby, the answer is, *Write your own method and add it to an existing class*. The RDoc for `merge_totals` starts at ❹ and explains what we want to happen. All we do is loop through each key of the `other_hash` (the one taken as an argument) and add its value for that key to `self[key]`. Simple. There’s a problem, though. What’s the value of `some_hash[some_key]` when `some_key` isn’t one of `some_hash`’s keys? The value is `nil`, and `nil` doesn’t like to be added. Let’s see what happens in `irb`:

---

```
irb(main):001:0> h = { 0 => 1 }
=> {0=>1}
irb(main):002:0> h[1]
=> nil
irb(main):003:0> h[1] + 0
```

---

<sup>3</sup> To paraphrase George Orwell’s *Animal Farm*, “All sorts are equal, but some are more equal than others.”

```
NoMethodError: undefined method '+' for nil:NilClass
  from (irb):3
  from :0
```

---

That's not good. We'll need to find a way around that problem—but we'll do that later in the script. For now, know that `merge_totals` will properly add the counts for tags in Hashes that follow the format `{ tag => tag_count }` when that tag is present.

We have one more method called `pretty_report` to add to all Hashes (❸). This method outputs a String showing each tag and its count within the document. It accomplishes that by sorting through each pair in the Array of Arrays returned by `sort_by_tag_count` from ❷, and creating an output String to which it adds a line with the tag, a colon, a space, the tag count, and a new-line character. Then it returns that String. That's it for the new methods in Hash.

This script also has two functions not attached as methods to the Hash: `get_elements_from_filename` (❹) and `tag_count` (❺). The `get_elements_from_filename` method takes one argument called `filename` and instantiates a new `REXML::Document`, which takes an instance of `File` as its argument. We provide that `File` via `File.open(filename)`. Instances of `REXML::Document` have a method called `elements`, which does much of our script's work for us, returning all the XML elements from the `File`.

The `tag_count` method takes those elements as an argument, it instantiates a new Hash called `count_of` at (❻), and passes 0 into the `new` method. This 0 argument sets the default value for this Hash, which is the value returned by `count_of` when it lacks the key it is asked for. This default of 0 is how we deal with the problem of adding tag counts that don't yet exist in the `merge_totals` method. The `self` Hash has a default of zero, so when a new tag comes in to `merge_totals` (which we call at ❼), it is assumed to have a `count_of` of 0 for that tag. Unlike `nil`, a 0 is happy to have another Integer added to it, so our addition problem is solved. We continue recursively, calling `tag_counts` on the elements found within each tag, which then calls `tag_counts` as needed on its own elements, if there are any. It all continues, aggregating tag counts with `merge_totals`.

**NOTE** *Hashes similar to `count_of` often benefit from having default values of either 0 or the empty string. Hashes serving as histograms, like `count_of`, count occurrences of something, and should have a default of 0. Other hashes, which accumulate Strings for whatever reason, could have a default of the empty string. Since Strings know to concatenate with other objects, the script could accumulate Strings with `+=`, just as in our example, which uses Integers as Hash values.*

At ❿, we get the output of `tag_count`, which expects elements. We get those elements by calling `get_elements_from_filename` on the first command-line argument. Since `tag_count` returns a Hash, that return value has the method `pretty_report`, which provides the argument to the `puts` method and provides information to the user.

## Running the Script

Let's use the file `extras/eh.html.tidy`, the corrected output provided by the `html_tidy.rb` script. Let's try `ruby -w xml_tag_counter.rb extras/eh.html.tidy`:

## The Results

Here's the output:

---

```
div: 2
meta: 2
p: 2
style: 2
td: 2
body: 1
em: 1
h1: 1
head: 1
html: 1
img: 1
table: 1
th: 1
title: 1
tr: 1
```

---

## Hacking the Script

What if we wanted `sort_by_tag_count` to return a Hash, rather than an Array? We could theoretically make a method like this:

---

```
def sorted_by_tag_count()
  # sort_by_tag_count returns an Array of Arrays...
  sort_by_tag_count.inject({}) do |memo, pair|
    tag, count = pair
    memo.merge( { tag => count } )
  end
  # so we can re-Hash it with inject
end
```

---

The problem is all Hash pairs are unordered. Our new `sorted_by_tag_count` goes to all the trouble of calling `sort_by_tag_count` but then rehashes it, losing the ordering.

What if we wanted to implement `pretty_report` with `inject`? Here's one way to do it. Notice how the method becomes a bit shorter, and the output variable becomes internal to `inject`.

---

```
def pretty_report()
  sort_by_tag_count.inject('') do |output, pair|
    tag, count = pair
    output += "#{tag}: #{count}\n"
  end
end
```

---

Finally, instead of calling `get_elements_from_filename` only on the first command-line argument, we could have used `ARGV.each` to allow the script to analyze multiple files in succession.

## #32 Extracting Text from XML (`xml_text_extractor.rb`)

Counting occurrences of tags is fine, but XML is designed to hold text wrapped in tags, providing some organization beyond what's available simply from the content. That said, though, sometimes having just the text content is handy. When I was preparing a document using DocBook, I found myself wanting to use a spell checker on it. There are spell checkers that are XML-aware, but another approach would be to run a text extractor on XML and pass that output into a spell checker that expects plain text. This `xml_text_extractor.rb` is just such a script.

### *The Code*

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# xml_text_extractor.rb

❶ CHOMP_TAG = lambda { |tag| tag.to_s.chomp }

=begin rdoc
This script uses the REXML parser, which is written in Ruby itself.
Find out more at http://www.germane-software.com/software/rexml
=end
❷ require 'rexml/document'

=begin rdoc
Returns DOM elements of a given filename.
=end
❸ def get_elements_from_filename(filename)
  REXML::Document.new(File.open(filename)).elements()
end

=begin rdoc
Returns a <b>String</b> consisting of the text of a given XML document
with the tags stripped.
=end
❹ def strip_tags(elements)
❺   return '' unless (elements.size > 0)
❻   return elements.to_a.map do |tag|
❼     tag.texts.map(&CHOMP_TAG).join('') + strip_tags(tag.elements)
❽   end.join(' ')
end

❾ puts strip_tags(get_elements_from_filename(ARGV[0]))
```

---

Mapping Procs  
onto Arrays

## How It Works

This `xml_text_extractor.rb` script is similar to `xml_tag_counter.rb`, although it is simpler—ironic, since its output is arguably more complex. It starts out at ❶ by defining a Proc Constant called `CHOMP_TAG`, which accepts a single argument and returns the chomped version of that argument’s rendition as a String. Following that, it requires the `REXML` library at ❷, just as in `xml_tag_counter.rb`. At ❸, it defines its own version of `get_elements_by_filename`, identical to the one in `xml_tag_counter.rb`.

**NOTE** *These scripts are designed to demonstrate techniques, rather than to function as production code. For production code, the definition of a method that will be used in multiple places should reside in a single library file that is required by any other file that needs access to that method. Please forgive the duplication in this case for the sake of simplicity.*

Next, we have `strip_tags` at ❹. Contrast the design of this function with `pretty_report` in `xml_tag_counter.rb`. Rather than a more iterative approach of (for example) defining an output variable looping through an Array with the each method and appending results onto the output variable), this uses a more functional approach. It maps an action onto each member of `elements` (which it calls `tag`) at ❺. That action is itself a mapping of the `CHOMP_TAG` Proc onto each member of `tag.texts` (❻). Then it joins the resulting Array with an empty String separator between each element, and appends the results of a recursive call to `strip_tags` onto the elements of `tag`. The result of a `map` is an Array, so it joins the elements of that Array with a space character before returning (❼). It also has an exit condition, which returns the empty String if there are no elements (❽).

## Running the Script

Since `strip_tags` returns either the elements of a `map` joined on a space (which is a String) or the empty String, that String can easily be printed with `puts` at ❾. Let’s look at the output returned by `ruby -w xml_text_extractor.rb extras/eh.html.tidy`.

## The Results

---

```
English Horn for No Clergy
/**/
@import url('../css/noclergy.css');
h1, h2 { display: none; }
/**/
/**/
p.c1 {text-align:center;}
/**/ No Clergy: I'm a header, but I don't know it. I'm some underlined
content I'm some italicized content I'm an unclosed paragraph. The horrors.
```

---

## Hacking the Script

As I mentioned, one change that could be done on both `xml_text_extractor.rb` and `xml_tag_counter.rb` would be to take the common `get_elements_by_filename` method and place it in a single library file that both `xml_text_extractor.rb` and `xml_tag_counter.rb` access via `require`. This operation has a name in the refactoring community: *Pull Up Method*. The `xml_text_extractor.rb` script could also massage the output of `strip_tags`, stripping out empty lines and/or lines consisting entirely of whitespace, as `html_tidy.rb` does with `UNWANTED_REGEXES`.

## #33 Validating XML (`xml_well_formedness_checker.rb`)

All the XML processing in the world won't do any good if your XML file is not well-formed. Since an XML document either is or is not well-formed, a well-formedness checker that will return either `true` or `false` seems like an ideal predicate method. Since XML documents are `Files` with `Strings` as their contents, we'll add a `well_formed_xml?` method to both the `File` class and the `String` class.

### The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# xml_well_formedness_checker.rb

=begin rdoc
This script uses the xml/dom/builder, written by YoshidaM.
=end
```

**The DOM**

```
❶ require 'xml/dom/builder'

class File

  ❷ def well_formed_xml?()
    read.well_formed_xml?
  end

end

class String

  ❸ def well_formed_xml?()
    builder = XML::DOM::Builder.new(0)
    builder.setBase("./")

    ❹ begin
      builder.parse(self, true)
    ❺ rescue XMLParserError
      return false
    end
```

**Root Element**

```

⑥   return true
      end

      end

⑦ def well_formed?(filename)
⑧   return unless filename
⑨   return File.open(filename, 'r').well_formed_xml?
      end

⑩ puts well_formed?(ARGV[0])

```

---

## How It Works

At ❶, we require the `XML::DOM::Builder` library file, which is available as part of Ruby's standard library. DOM stands for *Document Object Model*, and it's a way to express an XML document as a object with methods like `elements`, which returns the elements found within whatever `self` is at the time—it could be the entire document, or it could be a sub-element within the document. We've used `elements` already in our previous scripts with the `REXML` library.

**NOTE** *Programmers that do a lot of Ajax or other JavaScript are intimately familiar with the DOM. Because JavaScript's most common use is as a client-side scripting language within web browsers, JavaScript programs often find themselves dealing with XML (especially XHTML) data. JavaScript is an excellent language with a terribly misleading name and some poor implementations. It shares a similar fused OO/functional heritage with Ruby.*

We said that we'd be adding a `well_formed_xml?` predicate to `File`, which is what we do at ❷. The `read` method of a `File` returns the contents of that `File` as a `String`. We know that we want to add `well_formed_xml?` to all `Strings` as well as all `Files`, so we just call `read.well_formed_xml?` within `File`'s `well_formed_xml?` method and assume that `String` will do its job and provide its own version of `well_formed_xml?` for us.

We don't want to make `Strings` out to be liars, so we provide `String` with its own `well_formed_xml?` predicate at ❸. This delegates some of its work to the `XML::DOM::Builder` library, instantiating a `Builder` and setting its base to `.'`, which stands for the root element of an XML document.

**NOTE** *The 0 argument to `XML::DOM::Builder.new` tells it to ignore default events, which has no impact our script. You can read more about `XML::DOM::Builder` at <http://raa.ruby-lang.org/gonzui/markup/xmlparser/lib/xml/dom/builder.rb?q=moduledef:XML>.*

We then start a block at ❹ with the `begin` keyword, which indicates a block that may fail so disastrously to do what's asked of it that it could exit the program entirely. The `begin` keyword allows you to trap that error and deal with it in some intelligent way, without causing the program to crash. We ask our `builder` instance to parse the XML content represented by `self`, which is of course a `String` within a `String` instance.

This parse operation is the one that might fail. The potentially disastrous error has a type called `XMLParserError`, so at ⑤ we use the `rescue` keyword to trap that particular error type and prevent it from killing the entire program. Since our predicate tests for XML well-formedness, an `XMLParserError` indicates that the document is not well-formed. Therefore, we should return `false` in the event of an `XMLParserError`. If we get out of the `begin` block without entering the `rescue` section, that means there was no error, so we can safely return `true` at ⑥.

We'll finish the `xml_wellformedness_checker.rb` script with a `well_formed?` function that accepts a `filename` argument, created at ⑦. It returns an implicit `nil` for a `nil` filename at ⑧. We then return a call to `well_formed_xml?` on the `File` instance created by opening `filename` at ⑨. Finally, ⑩ prints the result of calling `well_formed?` to the user via `puts`.

## Running the Script

We know that we have a well-formed XML file in `extras/eh.html.tidy` because we ran `html_tidy.rb` on it to fix it. We also know that `extras/eh.html` had an unclosed paragraph tag, which would make it not well-formed. Let's see how `xml_wellformedness_checker.rb` performs.

## The Results

---

```
ruby -w xml_well_formedness_checker.rb extras/eh.html.tidy
true
$ ruby -w xml_well_formedness_checker.rb extras/eh.html
false
$ ruby -w xml_well_formedness_checker.rb xml_well_formedness_checker.rb
false
$ ruby -w xml_well_formedness_checker.rb
nil
```

---

The `extras/eh.html.tidy` file is well-formed XML, so it properly reports `true`. The `extras/eh.html` and `xml_wellformedness_checker.rb` files are either not well-formed XML or not XML at all, so they properly report `false`. If we call `xml_wellformedness_checker.rb` with no filename, it returns `nil`, as we expect from ⑧.

## Hacking the Script

Calling a separate function called `well_formed?` on a `filename` argument is really just for demonstration purposes. In production code, a more likely use for this script would be to add another method to `String` called `well_formed_xml_filename?`, implemented as `well_formed?`, except that it would use `self` in place of `filename`. Or, in whatever code opens a given XML file, that file could be checked using `File`'s `well_formed_xml?` method before performing any operations that depend on the file's contents being well-formed XML.



## Chapter Recap

What was new in this chapter?

- Tidying HTML/XML markup
- Piping output to standard error with `2>`
- The Web Accessibility Initiative
- The `<=>` method and the Comparable module
- Processing XML with REXML and `XML::DOM::Builder`
- Manipulating XML documents with regular expressions
- Making Hashes out of Arrays with `inject`
- Hashes serving as histograms
- Mapping Procs onto Arrays
- The Document Object Model
- The `begin` and `rescue` keywords

That's it for our XML-processing scripts. I hope these example scripts are not only useful in and of themselves but that they also might give you ideas about how you could modify or extend them to suit new tasks other than those presented here. For now, we'll proceed to our next chapter, "More Complex Utilities and Tricks, Part I." As the name suggests, its scripts are more detailed, and they will continue to introduce some new functional techniques, as well.



# 9

## MORE COMPLEX UTILITIES AND TRICKS, PART I



This chapter is the first of two that explore more complex operations in Ruby. This one deals extensively with text manipulations and larger-scale searches, while the next details an important functional technique that expands your options for abstraction in a very powerful way. For now, let's dive right in to learn some text processing techniques.

### **#34 Finding Codes in the Bible or *Moby-Dick* (els\_parser.rb)**

This script analyzes a phenomenon in large texts called equidistant letter sequences (ELSes). These sequences are popularly known as *Bible Codes* or *Torah Codes*, largely due to their description in Michael Drosnin's book *The Bible Code* (Simon & Schuster, 1997), in which he examined the Hebrew Bible. An *ELS* is a collection of letters (what Ruby would call a String) with a known starting point within the source text, a known length, and a known

*skip value*, which is the distance between the letters comprising that ELS. You could construct an ELS by saying, “Start with the 23rd letter in this newspaper article and add every 8th letter until you have 11 letters.” That String of 11 letters would be an ELS. Drosnin’s work suggests that ELSes of particular significance (generally due to relevance to the text they’re drawn from or due to accurate prediction of future events, such as assassinations) appear at a rate greater than chance within certain religious texts.

My `els_parser.rb` script also uses the work of Professor Brendan McKay of The Australian National University. McKay has done his own research (available at <http://cs.anu.edu.au/~bdm/dilugim/torah.html>) to find ELSes in texts like *War and Peace* and *Moby-Dick*, thus concluding that the ELSes that Drosnin refers to as the Bible Codes do not occur more often in the Hebrew Bible than can be expected due to chance. I can’t read Hebrew, so for this script I’ve chosen to analyze Herman Melville’s *Moby-Dick* in English instead of the Hebrew Bible. I downloaded the text from Project Gutenberg (<http://www.gutenberg.org>) into `extras/moby_dick.txt`. The `els_parser.rb` script allows you to choose a text and a set of input parameters that describe a potential set of ELSes; then `els_parser.rb` will report whether any ELSes that match the description exist within the source text.

## The Code

ELS

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# els_parser.rb

require 'palindrome2.rb'
# I want all Strings to have the private letters_only
# method from this file.

class String

  =begin rdoc
  This provides a public method to access the private letters_only
  method we required from palindrome2.rb.
  =end
  def just_letters(case_matters)
    letters_only(case_matters)
  end

end

=begin rdoc
A text-processing parser that does ASCII-only
Equidistant Letter Sequence analyses similar to that described
at http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Equidistant\_letter\_sequencing

For my example, I use Moby Dick taken from
Project Gutenberg, http://www.gutenberg.org.
=end
class ELS_Parser
```

\$DEBUG

```
❷ DEFAULT_SEARCH_PARAMS = {
  :start_pt => 4500,
  :end_pt   => nil, # assumes the end of the String to search when nil
  :min_skip => 126995,
  :max_skip => 127005,
  :term     => 'ssirhan',
}

def initialize(filename, search_params=nil)
  @contents = prepare(filename)
  @filename = filename
  reset_params(search_params || DEFAULT_SEARCH_PARAMS)
end

def reset_params(search_params)
  @search_params = search_params
  @search_params[:end_pt] ||= (@contents.size-1)
  # ||= for :end_pt allows nil for 'end of file'
  return self # return self so we can chain methods
end

=begin rdoc
Performs an ELS analysis on the <i>filename</i> argument, searching for
the term argument, falling back to the default.
=end

❸ def search(term=@search_params[:term])
  @search_params[:term] = term
  reversed_term = term.reverse
  warn "Starting search within #{@filename} " +
    "using #{@search_params.inspect}" if ($DEBUG)
  ❹ final_start_pt = @search_params[:end_pt] - @search_params[:term].size
  @search_params[:start_pt].upto(final_start_pt) do |index|
    ❺ @search_params[:min_skip].upto(@search_params[:max_skip]) do |skip|
      candidate = construct_candidate(index, skip)

      ❻ if (candidate == @search_params[:term])
        return report_match(skip, index)
      end

      if (candidate == reversed_term)
        return report_match(skip, index, 'reversed ')
      end

      end
    end
  end
  ❽ return report_match(false, false)
end

private

❹ def construct_candidate(index, skip)
  output = ''
  0.upto(@search_params[:term].size-1) do |char_index|
    new_index = (index + (char_index * (skip + 1)))
```

## The chr Method

```
        return '' if (new_index >= @contents.size)
        output += @contents[new_index].chr
      end
      return output
    end

=begin rdoc
Creates a 'letters only' version of the contents of a <i>filename</i>
argument in preparation for ELS analysis. Assumes case-insensitivity.
=end
❶ def prepare(filename, case_matters=false)
  File.open(filename, 'r').readlines.to_s.just_letters(case_matters)
end

=begin
Either report the variables at which a match was found, or report
failure for this set of search params.
=end
❷ def report_match(skip, index, reversed='')
  return "No match within #{@filename} using " +
    @search_params.inspect unless index
  return "Match for #{@search_params[:term]} " +
    "#{reversed}within #{@filename} " +
    "at index #{index}, using skip #{skip}"
end

end # ELS_Parser
```

---

## How It Works

The `els_parser.rb` script only processes letters, ignoring whitespace and punctuation. We know that Strings can also have non-letter characters, such as whitespace, numbers, punctuation, and so on; therefore, we need a method that strips all non-letters out of a String. Fortunately, we already have such a method—`letters_only`, defined in `palindrome2.rb`. It is easy to take advantage of `letters_only` with a `require` at the top of `els_parser.rb`. However, `palindrome2.rb` defined `letters_only` as a private method, and (as will become clear), we want it available as a public method. What can we do? One approach, which is what `els_parser.rb` does at ❶, is to define a new public method, `just_letters`, that exists merely to call the pre-existing private method `letters_only`.

The `just_letters` method is for Strings, but we want a new class called `ELS_Parser` to do the overall management of the searching. `ELS_Parser` has a Hash Constant called `DEFAULT_SEARCH_PARAMS` at ❷. The values for the `:start_pt` and `:end_pt` Symbol keys represent the earliest and latest character index for the search, respectively. The value for `:term` is the text to be searched for. Finally, the values for `:min_skip` and `:max_skip` are the minimum and maximum number of letters to jump past (i.e., skip) during the search. Why these particular default values? They could have been any values, but I took a shortcut and started with values from McKay's web page (<http://cs.anu.edu.au/~bdm/dilugim/moby.html>) that are known to correspond to a particular match within the text of *Moby-Dick*.

Note some subtle differences—my values are 0-based (where a skip of 0 means *Go to the next letter*), whereas McKay defines moving to the next letter as a skip of 1. There is a similar difference with regard to starting points. He also accomplishes searches for backward terms using a negative skip value, while `els_parser.rb` uses a positive skip search on a reversed term.

For example, in the String `'abcdefgh'`, which we'll call `contents`, searching for an ELS with a `:start_pt` of 0, a `:term` of `'abc'`, and a `:min_skip` of 0 would find a match, because the String `'abc'` exists within `contents` starting at 0 (right at the beginning) with a skip value of 0. Similarly, `'ceg'` would be found within `contents` starting at 2 with a skip value of 1, and `'heb'` would be found starting at 1 with a skip value of 2, but as a reversed String. If you expand these concepts greatly, use longer search terms, much larger `contents` (such as the Bible or *Moby-Dick*), and much larger starting, ending, and skip values, you will begin to understand the basics of ELS analysis.

After defining `DEFAULT_SEARCH_PARAMS`, our `ELS_Parser` needs an `initialize` method, in which it will define the instance variables `@contents`, to hold the text being searched, and `@filename`, to store the name of the file it read `@contents` from.

The `@contents` variable is the result of calling the `prepare` method (defined at ❸) on the `filename`. The `prepare` method takes in a mandatory `filename` argument and an optional `case_matters` argument. All it does is open a new file, extract its contents into a String with `readlines.to_s`, and call `just_letters` on that String. This ensures that we strip out inappropriate characters from our String before storing it in `@contents`. Note that `just_letters` takes an optional argument for case sensitivity. If you're curious about how this works, remember that `just_letters` just calls the `letters_only` method defined in `palindrome2.rb`, so you can refer to that script for further study.

The `initialize` method also calls the `reset_params` method, defined right below `initialize`, which simply sets the instance variable `@search_params` to the `search_params` argument passed into `initialize`, falling back to the `DEFAULT_SEARCH_PARAMS`. It also sets the `:end_pt` value to fall back to the last index of `@contents` if the `:end_pt` value would otherwise be `nil`. This gives `ELS_Parser` a handy shortcut: leaving out the `:end_pt` automatically means *Search to the end of @contents*.

Next is `search` at ❹. It allows an optional `term` argument, which automatically updates `@search_params[:term]` as needed. Since `search` is set up to find reversed terms as well as normal-order terms, we define `reversed_term` right away. We also report that the search is starting if `$DEBUG` is true using the method `warn`, which writes out to *standard error*, instead of *standard out*. `$DEBUG` is generally set as a command-line option to `ruby`, such that `$DEBUG` is true when you execute `ruby` with either the `-d` or `--debug` flag. You may remember `standard error` from `html_tidy.rb`. In that script, we sent `standard error` to `/dev/null`, meaning we didn't care about it. Here, we have a special message designed specifically to go to `standard error`.

After the `standard error` warning, we define `final_start_pt` at ❺. To understand what `final_start_pt` is for, let's go back to our `contents = 'abcdefgh'` search example. What if we search for `'hiccup'` with a `:start_pt` of 100? There aren't even 100 letters in our `contents`, so a search with that `:start_pt` value

would automatically fail. Instead of letting that happen, we want to figure out the maximum starting index that could conceivably work, and make sure `:start_pt` is not larger than that value.

It's even more complicated than that. Our search terms will always have letters, and those letters take up space. If we start too close to the end of `@contents`, we could run out of room even with relatively low skip values. We need to keep enough room for the term being searched for, which we store in `@search_params[:term]`, so we set `final_start_pt` accordingly.

After setting `final_start_pt`, we enter two nested loops—one on `index` from the lowest to highest starting points and one using `skip` to refer to each number from the lowest to highest skip values. The first thing we do within those loops is use `index` and `skip` at ❸ to assign the expression returned from `construct_candidate`, defined at ❸, into `candidate`. The `construct_candidate` method takes the existing `index` and `skip` values and makes a `String` of the same length as the term being searched for. For a `@contents` of `'abcdefgh'`, `construct_candidate(2, 1)` produces `'ceg'` where `@search_params[:term]` has three characters in it. The `construct_candidate` method returns the empty `String` if the `new_index` being asked for ever goes beyond the `@contents` `String`. Our `final_start_pt` limits should prevent this from ever being needed, but it's an additional safety check.

**NOTE** *The `construct_candidate` method also uses the `chr` method, because extracting a single character out of a `String` gives you that character's ASCII value.*

You can test this in `irb`:

---

```
irb(main):001:0> s = 'abcde'  
=> "abcde"  
irb(main):002:0> s[0]  
=> 97  
irb(main):003:0> s[0].chr  
=> "a"
```

---

After establishing our candidate, we want to see if it is a successful match, which we start to do at ❹. If it does match, we return the result of calling `report_match` with `skip` and `index` as arguments. However, we also want to know whether our candidate matches the `reversed_term` instead of the term in regular order, so we call `report_match`, again with `skip` and `index` as arguments, but we also add the `String` `'reversed '`. Finally, at ❺ we return the result of calling `report_match` with two explicit `false` arguments if we've looped through all of the appropriate `skip` and `index` loops without already returning something. This just means that we never found a match, either forward or reversed.

We need to know how `report_match` works. It's defined at ❽, and it takes arguments for `skip`, `index`, and an optional `reversed` `String`, as already shown. If `index` is `false`, `report_match` returns a `String` informing the user that there was no match found. Otherwise, It returns the details of the successful match. Note that `reversed` adds the `String` `'reversed '` (including the trailing space) as needed.



## Running the Script

We can test this with another script called `demo_els_parser.rb`. Here is its code:

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# demo_els_parser.rb

require 'els_parser.rb'

moby_dick = ELS_Parser.new('extras/moby_dick.txt')
puts moby_dick.search() # assumes 'ssirhan'
puts moby_dick.reset_params( {
  :start_pt => 93060,
  :end_pt   => nil, # assumes 'to the end'
  :min_skip => 13790,
  :max_skip => 13800,
  :term     => 'kennedy'
} ).search()
puts moby_dick.reset_params( {
  :start_pt => 327400,
  :end_pt   => nil, # 'to the end' again
  :min_skip => 0,
  :max_skip => 5,
  :term     => 'rabin'
} ).search()
puts moby_dick.reset_params( {
  :start_pt => 104620,
  :end_pt   => 200000, # not to the end
  :min_skip => 26020,
  :max_skip => 26030,
  :term     => 'mlking'
} ).search()
```

---

## The Results

Here is the result of calling this script:

---

```
ruby -w --debug demo_els_parser.rb
Starting search within extras/moby_dick.txt using {:end_pt=>924955,
:min_skip=>126995, :max_skip=>127005, :term=>"ssirhan", :start_pt=>4500}
Match for ssirhan within extras/moby_dick.txt at index 4546, using skip 126999
Starting search within extras/moby_dick.txt using {:end_pt=>924955,
:min_skip=>13790, :max_skip=>13800, :term=>"kennedy", :start_pt=>93060}
Match for kennedy within extras/moby_dick.txt at index 93062, using skip 13797
Starting search within extras/moby_dick.txt using {:end_pt=>924955,
:min_skip=>0, :max_skip=>5, :term=>"rabin", :start_pt=>327400}
Match for rabin reversed within extras/moby_dick.txt at index 327500, using
skip 3
Starting search within extras/moby_dick.txt using {:end_pt=>200000,
:min_skip=>26020, :max_skip=>26030, :term=>"mlking", :start_pt=>104620}
Match for mlking reversed within extras/moby_dick.txt at index 104629, using
skip 26025
```

---

## Hacking the Script

We could significantly increase the speed of `construct_candidate` by checking against the search terms as we go and returning the empty string whenever it fails to match—an application of the return guard notion within the construction of the candidate. Where we define `final_start_pt`, we could also either limit `:max_skip` in a similar way or report an error if impossible search parameters were asked for.

**NOTE** *There's also a better way to include the `letters_only` method than the way I've done it here, using a concept called a *mix-in*. Jump ahead to the `to_lang.rb` script in Chapter 10 to see *mix-ins* in action.*

## #35 Mutating Strings into Weasels (`methinks.rb`)

This script is based on a program from Richard Dawkins' *The Blind Watchmaker* (W.W. Norton, 1996). The program demonstrates a simplified model of asexual natural selection, starting with a String consisting of random characters and successively mutating it to produce “children” that differ from the parent. The program then selects the “best” child String (meaning the one that most closely matches the target String `methinksitislikeawasel`, a reference from *Hamlet*) to be the next generation's parent. This process continues until the parent String matches the target String.

Let's implement Dawkins' process in Ruby.

**NOTE** *Dawkins wrote his program to demonstrate a version of cumulative selection over time that was intentionally simpler than real-world neo-Darwinian natural selection. Critics contend that the program is a suboptimal model, with the most prominent criticisms being that it is overly simplified, it is unable to fail, and it has a preset target, making it a better model of artificial selection than natural selection. See “Hacking the Script” on page 175 for general suggestions for modifying this version of the program to be a better model of real-world Darwinian selection.*

### The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# methinks.rb

=begin rdoc
Recreate Richard Dawkins' Blind Watchmaker program, in which a purely
random string is mutated and filtered until it matches the target string.
=end
```

**Inheritance**    ❶ `class Children < Array`

```
    def select_fittest(target)
      inject(self[0]) do |fittest, child|
        child.fitter_than?(fittest, target) ? child : fittest
      end
    end
```

```
end
```

```
❷ class String
```

```
  ALPHABET = ('a'..'z').to_a
```

```
  LETTER_OFFSET = 'a'[0]
```

```
  PARAMS = {  
    :generation_size => 20,  
    :mutation_rate   => 10,  
    :display_filter  => 5,  
    :mutation_amp    => 6  
  }
```

```
  TARGET = 'methinksitislikeaweasel'
```

```
  @mutation_attempts ||= 0
```

### Differences between Strings

```
❸ def deviance_from(target)  
  deviance = 0  
  split('').each_index do |index|  
    deviance += (self[index] - target[index]).abs  
  end  
  return deviance  
end
```

```
def fitter_than?(other, target)  
  deviance_from(target) < other.deviance_from(target)  
end
```

```
❹ def mutate(params)  
  split('').map do |char|  
    mutate_char(char, params)  
  end.join('')  
end
```

```
❺ def mutate_until_matches!(target=TARGET, params=PARAMS)  
  return report_success! if (self == target)  
  report_progress(params)  
  @mutation_attempts += 1  
  children = propagate(params)  
  fittest = children.select_fittest(target)  
  replace(fittest)  
  mutate_until_matches!(target, params)  
end
```

```
❻ def propagate(params)  
  children = Children.new()  
  children << self  
  params[:generation_size].times do |generation|  
    children << self.mutate(params)  
  end  
  return children  
end
```

```

7 def report_progress(params)
  return unless (@mutation_attempts % params[:display_filter] == 0)
  puts "string ##{@mutation_attempts} = #{self}"
end

def report_success()
  puts <<END_OF_HERE_DOC
I match after #{@mutation_attempts} mutations
END_OF_HERE_DOC
  return @mutation_attempts
end

=begin rdoc
Replace self with a <b>String</b> the same length as the
<i>target</i> argument, consisting entirely of lowercase
letters.
=end

8 def scramble!(target=TARGET)
  @mutation_attempts = 0
  replace( scramble(target) )
end

def scramble(target=TARGET)
  target.split('').map do |char|
    ALPHABET[rand(ALPHABET.size)]
  end.join('')
end

private

=begin rdoc
Limit 'out of bounds' indices at end points of the ALPHABET.
=end

9 def limit_index(alphabet_index)
  alphabet_index = [ALPHABET.size-1, alphabet_index].min
  alphabet_index = [alphabet_index, 0].max
  return alphabet_index
end

10 def mutate_char(original_char, params)
  return original_char if rand(100) > params[:mutation_rate]
  variance = rand(params[:mutation_amp]) - (params[:mutation_amp] / 2)
  # variance with amp of 6 now ranges from -3 to 2,
  variance += 1 if variance.zero? # therefore move (0..2) up to (1..3)
  alphabet_index = (original_char[0] + variance - LETTER_OFFSET)
  alphabet_index = limit_index(alphabet_index)
  mutated_char = ALPHABET[alphabet_index]
  return mutated_char
end

end

```

---

## How It Works

We start by defining a new class called `Children` at ❶. You'll notice the peculiar `Children < Array` within the class definition, which suggests a relationship between `Children` and `Arrays`. That relationship is *inheritance*. `Children` inherits from `Array`, meaning that it behaves as an `Array` in every way, while also adding whatever new characteristics we give it. In our case, the only new characteristic is a new method called `select_fittest`, which uses `inject` to find the fittest child within `Children`, defined by the `fitter_than?` method.

### CHILDREN DON'T LIE

There's one other way in which a child class (or subclass) differs from its parent, and that's the expression returned by the `class` method. It returns the name of the subclass when called on an instance of the subclass:

---

```
$ irb -r methinks.rb
irb(main):001:0> a = Array.new
=> []
irb(main):002:0> c = Children.new
=> []
irb(main):003:0> a.class
=> Array
irb(main):004:0> c.class
=> Children
```

---

Some people may think that's obvious, but it's worth noting.

After defining `Children`, we open the `String` class at ❷. We add several Constants, including an Array of letters that we'll call the `ALPHABET`, and `LETTER_OFFSET`. The `LETTER_OFFSET` Constant requires some explanation. It represents characters as ASCII values to determine how closely certain Strings match each other. Converting letters to numerical value is convenient, as it allows us to use basic mathematical operations to find the "most fit" child string. Ruby converts characters to numerical values by treating a `String` as an `Array` and reading values out with indices. Let's demonstrate in `irb` (the `chr` method converts from ASCII values back to a `String`):

---

```
irb(main):001:0> s = 'abcde'
=> "abcde"
irb(main):002:0> s[0]
=> 97
irb(main):003:0> s[0].chr
=> "a"
irb(main):004:0> 'a'[0]
=> 97
irb(main):005:0> s[1]
=> 98
```

---

You can see that the ASCII value for the String 'a' (the character at index 0 in String s) is 97, that the chr method converts that ASCII value back to 'a', and that the ASCII value for 'b' is 98. The number 97 is our LETTER\_OFFSET. Astute readers will notice that LETTER\_OFFSET is the index at which 'a' appears in our ALPHABET, as well. Observe the following in irb:

---

```
irb(main):001:0> letters = ('a'..'z').to_a
=> ["a", "b", "c", "d", "e", "f", "g", "h", "i", "j", "k", "l", "m", "n", "o",
    "p", "q", "r", "s", "t", "u", "v", "w", "x", "y", "z"]
irb(main):002:0> 's'[0]
=> 115
irb(main):003:0> 's'[0] - 'a'[0]
=> 18
irb(main):004:0> letters[18]
=> "s"
```

---

Calling [0] on a character and subtracting LETTER\_OFFSET ('a'[0], or 97) gives us the index of that character within our ALPHABET Array. This will be very handy in the mutate\_char method at ⑩, which we'll discuss when we get there.

Our next two Constants are PARAMS and TARGET. Both of these establish defaults for items that might be overridden by optional arguments. PARAMS is a now-familiar Hash with Symbol keys, each value of which determines the specific behavior of our mutations. The value for :generation\_size is the number of children, :mutation\_rate's is the percentage chance that a mutation will occur at all, :display\_filter just sets how often our program will give updates while it's running, and :mutation\_amp determines how strong or divergent a given mutation can be—basically a numeric measure of how different children can be from their parents.

TARGET is our default final goal: methinksitislikeawease1. Finally, after the Constants, we have a single class variable called @mutation\_attempts, which is just a counter that increments every time we mutate. We're ready to start defining some methods.

Our first new method to add to String is deviance\_from (⑤). It takes a mandatory target argument (the default fallback to the TARGET Constant occurs in mutate\_until\_matches! at ⑤, which is later in the code but is called earlier). The deviance\_from method returns an Integer (deviance) which is a numeric measure of how different two Strings are. Each character of difference at each point within the String increments deviance by one. Here are some irb examples:

---

```
irb -r methinks.rb
irb(main):001:0> 'aaa'.deviance_from('aaa')
=> 0
irb(main):002:0> 'aaa'.deviance_from('aab')
=> 1
irb(main):003:0> 'aaa'.deviance_from('aac')
=> 2
irb(main):004:0> 'aaa'.deviance_from('bac')
=> 3
irb(main):005:0> 'aaa'.deviance_from('baq')
=> 17
```

---

This method is useful for our script, because if we are trying to model the survival of the fittest, we need to be able to measure fitness. A low `deviance_from` from the target represents fitness. Just below `deviance_from` is `fitter_than?`, a simple predicate that compares the `deviance_from` value for `self` and the `deviance_from` value for the other String, both relative to the same target. It only returns true when `self`'s `deviance_from` value is lower, making `self` fitter. Take a look at “Hacking the Script” on page 175 for a way to eliminate this method entirely.

Next up is `mutate` (❹). It takes a mandatory `params` argument, which falls back to the default `PARAMS` Constant in `mutate_until_matches!` (❺) earlier within the script's operation, if necessary. The `mutate` method is remarkably lazy, in that it splits its calling object into individual characters, and calls `mutate_char` (❽) on each of those characters via `map`.

The `mutate_char` method is a bit more complicated. It takes mandatory arguments for the `original_char` and `params`, and it exits immediately if `params` says that it should not mutate, which is determined by a random percentage being higher than `params[:mutation_rate]`. Assuming it passed `params`' test, `mutate_char` will mutate the character. First, it declares a variance, which is just the amount and direction of change based on the `:mutation_amp`. The values for variance range from `+( :mutation_amp / 2)` to `-( :mutation_amp / 2)`, excluding zero. They initially vary from `-( :mutation_amp / 2)` to one less than `+( :mutation_amp / 2)`, including zero, but the line that executes `variance += 1 if variance.zero?` ensures that values of zero or higher are bumped up by one.

It then creates an `alphabet_index` variable, which uses `LETTER_OFFSET` as previously discussed to find that index within `ALPHABET` for our `original_char`, plus any appropriate variance. It then limits `alphabet_index` with the `limit_index` method (❾), which clips or truncates `alphabet_index` to a maximum of the last index within `ALPHABET` and minimum of 0, which is the first index within `ALPHABET`. Since it then has a dependable index to read from `ALPHABET`, it does so, placing that value within a variable called `mutated_char`, which it then returns.

Following `mutate` is `mutate_until_matches!` (❽), which is the public-facing workhorse of the script. It takes optional arguments for `target` and `params`, falling back to String's `TARGET` and `PARAMS` Constants, as mentioned in earlier discussions of other methods. If `self` matches the target exactly, we want to report `success`. Failing that, we want to report `progress`. We can look at both of those methods, which start at ❿. The `report_success` method uses `puts` to show that it matches exactly after a certain number of attempts, and it returns `@mutation_attempts` without incrementing it. (There's no need to increment it, since no new mutation occurred.) The `report_progress` method returns with no value unless `@mutation_attempts` is a multiple of (i.e., has a modulus of 0 relative to) `params[:display_filter]`. If we set a lower display filter, we have a chattier mutation process. Assuming that it should output, it uses `puts` to show what `self` is after however many `@mutation_attempts`.

After reporting its progress, `mutate_until_matches!` should then actually do some mutating. It increments `@mutation_attempts` and then creates a new variable called `children`, which is the output of `propagate` (❿). The `propagate` method takes some `params` and instantiates a new instance of `Children` (⓫), meaning that it has access to `select_fittest`, which is not available to Arrays. It appends itself onto `children`, the effect of which is that if the parent (`self`)

is fitter than all of the children, the parent will again be the source of the generation of children after this one. The `propagate` method then appends a child (a mutated version of itself) onto `children`, doing so a number of times equal to `params[:generation_size]`. Finally, it returns the children, who will then try to make their way in the cruel world.

The effect of the cruel world is accomplished via Children's `select_fittest` method. The world is cruel indeed, because only one child survives, as discussed already. We call the fittest child `fittest`, appropriately, and replace the parent with this fittest child. Then `mutate_until_matches!` recursively calls itself, mutating until it finally matches the target.

Two methods remain undescribed: `scramble` and `scramble!` (❸). Both of these methods take an optional target argument that defaults to `TARGET`. Since `scramble!` is destructive, it sets `self's @mutation_attempts` to 0 and replaces itself with the value returned by the non-destructive `scramble`. The `scramble` method splits the target at each char and creates a new Array via `map`; each member of the new Array is a random element from `ALPHABET`. Note that we don't even make any use of `char`—we just use `map` to make sure that the scrambled String is the same size as the target. The `scramble` method then joins that Array of random characters with the empty String and returns the resulting String: a String of the same length as the target, consisting entirely of random letters.

## Running the Script

Let's try it out in `irb`.

---

```
irb -r methinks.rb
irb(main):001:0> candidate = String.new.scramble!()
=> "rnvrtdldcgaxlsleyrmzych"
irb(main):002:0> candidate.mutate_until_matches!
```

---

## The Results

---

```
string #0 = rnvrtdldcgaxlsleyrmzych
string #5 = okvpqekfcicsnsleysmzsci
string #10 = pkvnnekhdkdslrjeztmvseh
string #15 = pkvjnekjfmgslrjeytjrsei
string #20 = plvflekjhmislljettjosel
string #25 = oisfmejkimisllkeqtjlsel
string #30 = mfsgmgjnimislkkeotgjsel
string #35 = mfsglgjqimislkkeivfhsel
string #40 = mesgigkqiriskhleivffsel
string #45 = mesgikkqirislhleivfasel
string #50 = mesgikkqirislhkegvfasel
string #55 = metiilksitislhkegvfasem
string #60 = metiilksitislhkefvfasem
string #65 = meshinlsitislhkeaweasel
string #70 = methinlsitislhkeaweasel
string #75 = methinlsitislhkeaweasel
string #80 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #85 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
```



```
string #90 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #95 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #100 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #105 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #110 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #115 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #120 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #125 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #130 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #135 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #140 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #145 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
string #150 = methinlsitislikeaweasel
I match after 152 mutations
=> 152
```

---

Try it on your own machine, and notice that the results are random—sometimes the script takes more generations, sometimes fewer. If you pass in different values, you can get dramatically different results:

---

```
irb(main):005:0> candidate = String.new.scramble!('hello')
=> "wnwdi"
irb(main):006:0> candidate.mutate_until_matches!('hello')
string #0 = wnwdi
string #5 = onsdj
string #10 = lnpgj
string #15 = ijlkj
string #20 = hemlj
string #25 = hemll
string #30 = hemlo
I match after 34 mutations
=> 34
```

---

We'll explore this program further in our next script, `methinks_meta.rb`.

## ***Hacking the Script***

The `select_fittest` method could be expressed as follows in terms of `sort_by`, rather than `inject`. The returned value is exactly the same, whether it's the memoization within `inject` or the member of the sorted `Children` at the zeroth index. Using `sort_by` would also allow us to eliminate the `fitter_than?` method entirely.

---

```
return sort_by do |child|
  child.deviance_from(target)
end[0]
```

---

The `replace` in `mutate_until_matches!` is what makes it destructive, making it appropriate for its name to end with a bang. The `mutate_until_matches!` method could easily have been purely functional by replacing the last two lines of the method with `return fittest.mutate_until_matches(target, params)`, although the name would then have been misleading, even without the bang—

perhaps simply `get_match` would be a better name in this case. In addition, the `@mutation_attempts` variable would not be retained from mutation to mutation. We would have to alter `mutate_until_matches!` (or `get_match`, or whatever other new name it would have) to accept `mutation_attempts` as an optional argument, defaulting to zero for the first call. Its treatment would be very similar to how `els_parser.rb` updates `@search_params[:term]` with the optional term argument.

What would stop us from implementing the `propagate` method (❷) with something like the following code?

---

```
return [self] +
      (1..params[:generation_size]).to_a.map do |gen|
        self.mutate(params)
      end
```

---

The main problem is that the returned value from `propagate` would be an Array, not a Children, meaning that it would not have access to the `select_fittest` method that we added to Children, our subclass of Array. We could use our new definition of `propagate` by eliminating the subclassing of `Children < Array` (❶) and simply adding the `select_fittest` method to all Arrays.

You could also modify this program to be a more accurate model of a more complex type of cumulative selection, such as real-world Darwinian selection. Such a program would have multiple competing “species” of Strings, something to represent food supplies (which would be in finite supply and be consumed by the reproduction process), multiple potentially-successful targets not preset by the programmer, and so on. The changes would allow some Strings’ descendants to be unable to produce competitive children (and thus become extinct), while other Strings’ descendants would flourish, just like organisms in the real world.

## #36 Mutating the Mutation of Strings into Weasels (`methinks_meta.rb`)

This script uses the previous one, `methinks.rb`, so make sure you understand how that one works before trying this one, `methinks_meta.rb`. This script uses techniques similar to those used in `methinks.rb` to find the “best” input parameters for `methinks.rb`.

The previous script’s performance (the number of generations it takes to match the target) can vary greatly from one run to the next. Two major factors affect that variation in our results: The first factor is the set of arbitrary starting parameters. We saw that a target of `hello` was much easier to reach quickly than a target of `methinksitislikeaweasel`. Using other values for `:mutation_rate` or the other parameters also has an impact. The second factor is the unpredictable nature of the random variations while the program runs. Over time, after many runs, the laws of probability will cause this second

factor to be less and less important—and in any case, randomness is part of the given problem. Our arbitrary starting parameters are crucial. How do we decide what they should be?

**NOTE** *Varying the `:display_filter` has no impact on how many generations it takes to reach the target, only how often the program reports on its own progress. Also, genuine random number generation is possible with computers—often by measuring the decay of radioactive elements or listening to noise from a microphone—but our “random” number generation is actually only pseudo-random. Pseudo-random numbers come from a process that has a pattern, making them unsuitable for use in heavy-duty applications like stress testing or cryptography. They’re random enough for our script’s purposes, though. This pseudo-random caveat applies to all random numbers in this book.*

The arbitrary set of input parameters is the major problem facing the efficiency of our string’s mutations. Luckily, we’d recognize an ideal set of parameters if we saw them, and we can easily rate parameter sets as better or worse in relation to each other, because we have an easy way to measure success: A low number of generations needed to reach the target String. We already have a way to process candidates repeatedly to reach a given target—it’s called `methinks.rb`.

Just as we can create a Proc that returns another Proc (as shown in “#24 Nesting lambdas” on page 111), we can create a mutator that operates at a higher level of mutation—mutating not just Strings, but the mutation of those Strings. We can define `fitter` as *requiring a lower number of generations to reach the target*, plug in some parameters, and go. Our new script, `methinks_meta.rb`, will (pseudo-)randomly vary arbitrary input parameters and filter them by this fitness criterion to find ever-better input parameters for us. Let’s see the code.

## The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# methinks_meta.rb

❶ require 'methinks'

class Hash

  ❷ def get_child()
    new_hash = {}
    each_pair do |k,v|
      new_hash[k] = (rand(v) + (v/2))
    end
    new_hash[:display_filter] = 5
    return new_hash
  end

end # Hash
```

```

###

❸ class Meta_Mutator

  NEW_TARGET = 'ruby'
  MAX_ATTEMPTS = 2
  TARGET = NEW_TARGET || String::TARGET

  def initialize()
    @params_by_number_of_mutations = {}
  end

  ❹ def mutate_mutations!(params, did_no_better_count=0)
    return if did_no_better_count > MAX_ATTEMPTS

    num = update_params_by_number_of_mutations!(params)

    return mutate_mutations!(
      @params_by_number_of_mutations[best_num],
      get_no_better_count(num, did_no_better_count)
    )

  end

  ❺ def report()
    @params_by_number_of_mutations.sort.each do |pair|
      num, params = pair
      puts sprintf("%0#{digits_needed}d", num) +
        " generations with #{params.inspect}"
    end
  end

  private

  ❻ def best_num()
    @params_by_number_of_mutations.keys.sort[0] || nil
  end

  ❼ def digits_needed()
    @params_by_number_of_mutations.keys.max.to_s.size
  end

  ❽ def get_children(params, number_of_children = 10)
    (0..number_of_children).to_a.map do |i|
      params.get_child()
    end
  end

  ❾ def get_no_better_count(num, did_no_better_count)
    return did_no_better_count if (num == best_num)
    did_no_better_count + 1
  end
end

```

```

⑩ def update_params_by_number_of_mutations!(params)
  children = get_children(params)
  number_of_mutations = nil
  children.each do |params|
    candidate = String.new.scramble!(TARGET)
    number_of_mutations = candidate.mutate_until_matches!(TARGET, params)
    @params_by_number_of_mutations[number_of_mutations] = params.dup
  end
  return number_of_mutations
end

end # Meta_Mutator

###

params = {
  :generation_size => 200,
  :mutation_rate   => 30,
  :display_filter  => 5,
  :mutation_amp    => 7
}

mm = Meta_Mutator.new()
mm.mutate_mutations!(params)
mm.report()

```

---

## How It Works

Since we're performing operations that use `methinks.rb`, we require that file at ❶. We then immediately open the `Hash` class, adding a new method called `get_child` at ❷. The `get_child` method, which could also have been named *mutate* or *reproduce*, performs random variations on all of the values for the given `Hash`. It assumes that those values are `Integers`, and can thereby be varied with the `rand` method—in this case, from half the given value to 1.5 times the given value. Since the `:display_filter` value has no impact on fitness, we just forcibly set that to 5. We accomplish the mutation through the construction of a `new_hash` by iterating over `self` with the `each_pair` method and making the necessary changes before writing to `new_hash`, which we then return.

**NOTE** *We already noted how `get_child` makes the assumption that all of its `Hash`'s values are `Integers`. It also assumes that the `Hash` has a key called `:display_filter`. This assumption works fine for our script, but if the `get_child` method were to become part of a commonly-used library, we would have to make it play nicely with other programs. A programmer can avoid this method for inappropriate `Hashes`, but a better solution would be for the programmer to take responsibility for making new methods more robust when he or she opens an existing class and adds a new method. A production-ready version of `get_child` would check that the `Hash`'s values can implement numeric addition and also check for the presence of a `:display_filter` key before performing the operations laid out in our example.*

Next, we create our `Meta_Mutator` class at ❸. It has several Constants. The `NEW_TARGET` Constant defines a different target String. This was mainly for the convenience of having a shorter target, so that runs of the program would take a shorter time. The `MAX_ATTEMPTS` Constant defines the maximum number of attempts we should make to beat our previously fittest mutation attempt before giving up and trying a new set of parameters. `TARGET` is either our `NEW_TARGET` or the familiar `String::TARGET` from `methinks.rb`. This definition allows us to override the `TARGET` easily while still having a default value, and not having to constantly change code later when we want different targets—we just always use `TARGET`. The `Meta_Mutator` class also has the expected `initialize` method, which takes no arguments and defines an empty Hash for `@params_by_number_of_mutations`. We'll see this instance variable in action later.

Next comes the public method `mutate_mutations!` at ❹. Note that it is destructive, and it takes two arguments: a required `params` Hash, and an optional Integer for the `did_no_better_count`, assumed to be zero, which makes sense for an initial run. It has a return guard, which allows it to exit early if the `did_no_better_count` is greater than the `MAX_ATTEMPTS` allowed. Assuming it should continue, it calls `update_params_by_number_of_mutations!` (defined at ❺), passes in the `params` argument, and places its returned value into the local `num` variable.

Let's jump down to ❻ to see what `update_params_by_number_of_mutations!` does. It creates some children, using `get_children`, defined at ❸. Then `get_children` creates an Array to be returned by mapping the operation of calling `get_child` on the `params` Hash onto an Array with as many members as the requested `number_of_children` (assumed to be 10). The `update_params_by_number_of_mutations!` method then loops through each of those children, calling each one `params`. It constructs a new candidate and determines the `number_of_mutations` needed to reach the `TARGET` by calling `mutate_until_matches!` (from `methinks.rb`) on that candidate. We now have our measure of fitness and the `params` used to achieve that level of fitness. We update `@params_by_number_of_mutations`, setting the value at the `number_of_mutations` key to be `params`, as the name `@params_by_number_of_mutations` suggests. It then returns the `number_of_mutations` required by this pass through `mutate_until_matches!`.

Back in `mutate_mutations!` (❹), we recursively call `mutate_mutations!` again, this time with the “fittest” result in `@params_by_number_of_mutations` as the first argument and the result of calling `get_no_better_count(num, did_no_better_count)` as the second argument.

The `best_num` method is defined at ❻, and it is straightforward. The keys of `@params_by_number_of_mutations` are the number of mutations needed to reach the target. Since they're Integers, the lowest (and therefore “fittest”) value will be the first element of the resulting Array when we sort them. We can get that easily with `[0]`. The `get_no_better_count` method is defined at ❼; it takes the existing `num` and `did_no_better_count` as its only arguments. It returns 0 if this pass' `num` is the `best_num`, resetting the `did_no_better_count`. Otherwise, it returns `did_no_better_count + 1`.

That's it for `mutate_mutations!`. There's one other public method, `report`, defined at ❸. It sorts through each pair within `@params_by_number_of_mutations`, outputting results via `puts`, `inspect`, String interpolation, and the `digits_needed` method, defined at ❹. It simply takes all the keys of `@params_by_number_of_mutations`, finds the `max`, and converts that highest Integer to a String with `to_s`. That String's `size` method returns the number of characters, which is our desired number of `digits_needed` for display purposes.

We can compute values as well as report them. We establish default params near the bottom of `methinks_meta.rb`, instantiate a `Meta_Mutator`, and call its `mutate_mutations!` and `report` methods. Let's see the results.

**NOTE** *This script is not meant to demonstrate proper statistical analysis. Your results could be highly variable based on initial conditions. To accurately measure the improvement (or lack thereof) between variations, you should perform multiple runs of each version and verify that the differences you're seeing are statistically significant. That's beyond the scope of this book though. If this program inspires you to write programs that manipulate other programs, it's done its job.*

## Running the Script

---

```
$ ruby -w methinks_meta.rb
```

---

## The Results

---

```
string #0 = onfi
string #5 = ppbm
string #10 = rtbq
string #15 = rubv
I match after 18 mutations
string #0 = tfjc
string #5 = uuar
I match after 9 mutations
string #0 = qmsi
string #5 = rqln
string #10 = rugv
I match after 13 mutations
string #0 = yuqa
string #5 = uupf
... (several lines removed)...
string #0 = umsv
string #5 = rupy
I match after 10 mutations
string #0 = vclv
string #5 = rlay
I match after 8 mutations
04 generations with {:generation_size=>243, :mutation_rate=>25,
:mutation_amp=>11, :display_filter=>5}
```

```
08 generations with {:generation_size=>251, :mutation_rate=>28,
:multiplication_amp=>7, :display_filter=>5}
09 generations with {:generation_size=>234, :mutation_rate=>31,
:multiplication_amp=>10, :display_filter=>5}
10 generations with {:generation_size=>112, :mutation_rate=>15,
:multiplication_amp=>7, :display_filter=>5}
11 generations with {:generation_size=>162, :mutation_rate=>26,
:multiplication_amp=>7, :display_filter=>5}
12 generations with {:generation_size=>118, :mutation_rate=>30,
:multiplication_amp=>5, :display_filter=>5}
13 generations with {:generation_size=>100, :mutation_rate=>24,
:multiplication_amp=>3, :display_filter=>5}
14 generations with {:generation_size=>191, :mutation_rate=>29,
:multiplication_amp=>5, :display_filter=>5}
15 generations with {:generation_size=>146, :mutation_rate=>22,
:multiplication_amp=>8, :display_filter=>5}
17 generations with {:generation_size=>161, :mutation_rate=>14,
:multiplication_amp=>7, :display_filter=>5}
18 generations with {:generation_size=>112, :mutation_rate=>18,
:multiplication_amp=>3, :display_filter=>5}
22 generations with {:generation_size=>277, :mutation_rate=>40,
:multiplication_amp=>4, :display_filter=>5}
24 generations with {:generation_size=>112, :mutation_rate=>41,
:multiplication_amp=>4, :display_filter=>5}
27 generations with {:generation_size=>120, :mutation_rate=>24,
:multiplication_amp=>3, :display_filter=>5}
36 generations with {:generation_size=>140, :mutation_rate=>17,
:multiplication_amp=>4, :display_filter=>5}
```

---

Our winner is `{:generation_size=>243, :mutation_rate=>25, :multiplication_amp=>11, :display_filter=>5}`, with a match after only four generations. Again, the `:display_filter` doesn't matter, it's the other three parameters that really make a difference. You can rerun `methinks_meta.rb` as many times as you like, seeing if your winning values seem to hover around a given range of values for each important parameter. You can then reset the default params at the bottom of `methinks_meta.rb` and keep going as long as you want.

## Hacking the Script

If we want the results to always show the params keys in alphabetical order, we could override the built-in `inspect` method of all Hashes with the following code:

---

```
def inspect()
  '{' + keys.sort_by do |k|
    k.inspect
  end.map do |k|
    "#{k.inspect} => #{self[k].inspect}"
  end.join(', ') + '}'
end
```

---



## Chapter Recap

This chapter's mandate was to use techniques you've already learned at some broader levels. However, there were still a few new concepts or approaches.

- Equidistant Letter Sequences and larger-scale text searches
- Extracting single characters from Strings
- The `chr` method
- Modeling natural selection with `methinks.rb`
- Subclassing (`Children < Array`) and inheritance
- Calculating differences between Strings
- `select_fittest : inject` versus `sort_by`
- Genuine random versus pseudo-random
- Meta-mutation with `methinks_meta.rb`
- Alphabetizing `inspect` through overriding

Our next chapter is the second of two chapters that consider more complex programs. While this chapter mainly expanded upon concepts we've already learned, the next one uses an exciting new type of abstraction, known as a *callback*. Let's get to it.



# 10

## MORE COMPLEX UTILITIES AND TRICKS, PART II



In this chapter, I'll describe an important functional technique called the *callback*, in which a general-purpose method uses a Proc to determine its specific result. We've actually seen this plenty of times before, because it's built right into many Ruby methods. Let's say we want to double every number in a list. That's easy. We just use `[0, 1, 2].map { |x| x * 2 }` and get `[0, 2, 4]` as the result. If we want to find all numbers greater than 1, we use `[0, 1, 2].find_all { |x| x > 1 }` and get `[2]` instead.

All we're doing in either case is using a general purpose method like `map` or `find_all` that takes a block, like `{ |x| x * 2 }` or `{ |x| x > 1 }`, and bases its output on the results of that block. The `map` method performs the block's operation on every member of its calling object, while `find_all` returns a collection that only contains members that passed the test that the block describes. In both cases, the specifics are completely determined by the block. Conceptually, that's all a callback is. Let's see a specific useful example that uses Procs instead of blocks to describe callbacks.

## #37 Overnight DJ (radio\_player1.rb)

One of my friends has had a very colorful employment history. He's been a DJ and general manager of a radio station, a union organizer, a journalist and translator in Japan, and a professional nightclub musician.<sup>1</sup> Back when he was running a jazz radio station, he had a problem: His station relied heavily on volunteers and automation, as many jazz stations do, and the station operators would set up an automated computer system to play sound files overnight. The drawback was that the system had no logging, so if a listener heard something he or she liked at 2:47 AM, the operators couldn't find out what the specific tune was. No one was at the station to take a phone call, and the next morning, there was no log of what sound file was played when, so no one could track down what was playing at a specific time that morning before anyone came in.

Enter `radio_player1.rb` and `radio_player2.rb`. These programs demonstrate a solution to this type of problem. The `radio_player1.rb` script gets us started with the basics, including an explanation of how Ruby uses callbacks, and `radio_player2.rb` does the real heavy lifting, including logging. Note that `radio_player1.rb` doesn't really do any playback, it just demonstrates the techniques.

### The Code

---

```
#a/usr/bin/env ruby
# radio_player1.rb
```

#### Callbacks

- ```
❶ PLAY_FILE_PROC = lambda do |filename|
  puts "I'm playing #{filename}."
end

❷ DONT_PLAY_FILE_PROC = lambda do |filename|
  puts "I'm not playing #{filename}. So there."
end

❸ class RadioPlayer
```

#### CVS

- ```
❹ DIRS_TO_IGNORE = ['.', '..', 'CVS']

❺ PICK_FROM_DIR_PROC = lambda do |dir, callback_proc, dir_filter|

  puts "I'm inside #{dir}" if $DEBUG
  ❻ (Dir.open(dir).entries - DIRS_TO_IGNORE).sort.each do |filename|

    ❽ if ((filename =~ dir_filter) or not dir_filter)
      item = "#{dir}/#{filename}"
      puts "#{item} passes the filter" if $DEBUG

    ❾ if File.directory?(item)
      puts "#{item} is a directory" if $DEBUG
```

---

<sup>1</sup> Now he blogs and podcasts at <http://thejasoncraneshow.com>.



The `self.walk` method takes three arguments: `dir`, `callback_proc`, and `dir_filter`. The first two are mandatory, while `dir_filter` is optional, defaulting to `nil`. It prints an empty line with `puts`, and if the script is called with the `-d` flag (which sets `$DEBUG` to `true`), `self.walk` also prints some boilerplate indicating what it's doing. It then executes a call to a Proc Constant called `PICK_FROM_DIR_PROC`, using the same three arguments—`dir`, `callback_proc`, and `dir_filter`.

Now, to understand what that means, we'll describe the `RadioPlayer` class at ❸. It has two Constants: `DIRS_TO_IGNORE` and `PICK_FROM_DIR_PROC`. `DIRS_TO_IGNORE` (❹) lists the directories that the script should not care about. It includes the current directory (`'.'`), the directory up a level (`'..'`), and the directory used by CVS.

**NOTE** *Concurrent Versions System (CVS) is a program that keeps track of different versions of files. It's most often used for software development. You can read more about it at <http://www.nongnu.org/cvs>.*

The second Constant within `RadioPlayer` is `PICK_FROM_DIR_PROC` (❺), which is a Proc that picks from directories. We create it in the usual way with `lambda` and define it to take three arguments: `dir`, `callback_proc`, and `dir_filter`. These correspond to the three arguments to `walk` (❾) that we described at the bottom of this script at ❿.

Now we get to see what these arguments end up being used for. The `PICK_FROM_DIR_PROC` Constant has several debugging lines that `puts` a given message if `$DEBUG` is set to `true`. I won't detail each of them, as they should be fairly self explanatory. We start by looping through each sorted filename, based on the entries within `dir`, minus the `DIRS_TO_IGNORE` (❻). Next, we verify that either the filename matches the `dir_filter` with a regular expression test, or there is no `dir_filter` in place (❼). Assuming we should proceed, we assign the interpolated String `"#{dir}/#{filename}"` into a local variable called `item`. We'll be using `item` frequently enough that it's worthwhile to set it once and reuse it, rather than recalculate it every time.

Next, we use the `File.directory?` predicate (❸) to determine whether or not `item` is a directory. If it is a directory, we need to pick from that directory as well, so we recursively call `PICK_FROM_DIR_PROC`, with the arguments `item`, `callback_proc`, and `dir_filter`. The current value of `item` now becomes the value of `dir` in the new recursive call, so when we get to the assignment into `item` within the recursive call, that `item` consists of a String like the following: `"#{top_dir}/{next_dir}/#{filename}"`, and so on. This keeps happening until we reach a non-directory filename. What happens then?

In this case we consult the `else` clause within the `if` block at ❸. Here, we finally call the `callback_proc`, with `item` as the argument. Let's assume that we are using `PLAY_FILE_PROC` as the `callback_proc`. We'll therefore `puts` a message saying that we're playing `filename`. This happens for every terminal (non-directory) filename within the execution of `self.walk` (❾). Let's see it in action. First let's see the contents of `extras/soundfiles`:

---

```
$ ls -R extras/soundfiles/  
extras/soundfiles/  
01-Neal_And_Jack_And_Me.ogg  CVS  legal  promo
```

```
extras/soundfiles/ CVS:
Entries Repository Root

extras/soundfiles/legal:
CVS legal1 legal2

extras/soundfiles/legal/ CVS:
CVS Entries Repository Root

extras/soundfiles/legal/ CVS/ CVS:
Entries Repository Root

extras/soundfiles/promo:
CVS promo1 promo2

extras/soundfiles/promo/ CVS:
CVS Entries Repository Root

extras/soundfiles/promo/ CVS/ CVS:
Entries Repository Root
```

---

Other than those CVS directories I mentioned, we have a file called `01-Neal_And_Jack_And_Me.ogg` at the top level, a directory called `legal` with the files `legal1` and `legal2`, and a directory called `promo` with the files `promo1` and `promo2`. Now, let's run `radio_player1.rb` with various arguments.

## ***The Results***

---

```
$ ruby -w radio_player1.rb
```

```
I'm not playing extras/soundfiles/01-Neal_And_Jack_And_Me.ogg. So there.
I'm not playing extras/soundfiles/legal/legal1. So there.
I'm not playing extras/soundfiles/legal/legal2. So there.
I'm not playing extras/soundfiles/promo/promo1. So there.
I'm not playing extras/soundfiles/promo/promo2. So there.
```

---

We provided no `ARGV[0]`, so it assumed `DONT_PLAY_FILE_PROC` for the callback. It also had no `dir_filter`, so it “not played” every file within `extras/soundfiles`, except within the directories we told it to ignore—maybe it's silly to explicitly “not play” sound files, but I just wanted a callback that could show in an obvious fashion that it was being called. Let's see some more.

```
$ ruby -w radio_player1.rb play legal
```

```
I'm playing extras/soundfiles/legal/legal1.
I'm playing extras/soundfiles/legal/legal2.
```

---

Here, `ARGV[0]` is `'play'`, and `ARGV[1]` limits available files to those matching `/legal/`. It worked.

---

```
$ ruby -w radio_player1.rb play
```

```
I'm playing extras/soundfiles/01-Neal_And_Jack_And_Me.ogg.  
I'm playing extras/soundfiles/legal/legal1.  
I'm playing extras/soundfiles/legal/legal2.  
I'm playing extras/soundfiles/promo/promo1.  
I'm playing extras/soundfiles/promo/promo2.
```

---

It worked again.

### ***Hacking the Script***

The most basic hack of this script is to call it with the `-d` command-line option. That tells you where the script is at any given point, and it may reveal some useful information as you try different arguments, create your own files and directories with `extras/soundfiles`, or do whatever other customization you think is appropriate.

The beauty of callbacks is that you can hack your program by simply using a different one. The overall structure of the manner in which you do some particular operation stays the same, while the specific operation being done can change, often quite drastically. We'll see an example of that in the next script.

## **#38 Better Overnight DJ (radio\_player2.rb)**

This script, `radio_player2.rb`, is an improvement on `radio_player1.rb`. Instead of placeholder Procs, it will actually play sound files, as well as log playback with specific times.

### ***The Code***

---

```
#a/usr/bin/env ruby  
# radio_player2.rb  
  
❶ LOG_FILE = '/tmp/radio_player2.log'  
  
❷ PLAYERS = {  
  '.mp3' => 'mpg321',  
  '.ogg' => 'ogg123',  
  '' => 'ls'  
}  
  
❸ # these are variables, local to Kernel.  
# They work just as well as constants.  
play_file_proc = lambda do |filename|  
❹ ext = File.extname(filename)  
❺ system("#{PLAYERS[ext]} #{filename}") if PLAYERS[ext]  
❻ File.open(LOG_FILE, 'a') do |log|  
  log.puts([Time.now, filename].join("\t") + "\n")  
end
```

Callbacks



```

end

dont_play_file_proc = lambda do |filename|
  puts "I'm not playing #{filename}. So there."
end

class RadioPlayer

  DIRS_TO_IGNORE = ['.', '..', 'CVS']

  PICK_FROM_DIR_PROC = lambda do |dir, callback_proc, dir_filter|

    (Dir.open(dir).entries - DIRS_TO_IGNORE).sort.each do |filename|

      if ((filename =~ dir_filter) or not dir_filter)
        item = "#{dir}/#{filename}"

        if File.directory?(item)
          PICK_FROM_DIR_PROC.call(
            item, callback_proc, dir_filter
          )
        else
          callback_proc.call(item)
        end
      end

    end

  end

end

def self.walk(dir, callback_proc, dir_filter=nil)
  puts
  PICK_FROM_DIR_PROC.call(dir, callback_proc, dir_filter)
end

end

dir = 'extras/soundfiles'
callback = (ARGV[0] == 'play') ? play_file_proc : dont_play_file_proc
dir_filter = ARGV[1] ? Regexp.new(ARGV[1]) : nil
RadioPlayer.walk(dir, callback, dir_filter)
puts

```

---

## ***How It Works***

For this section, I'll merely detail the changes between `radio_player1.rb` and `radio_player2.rb`. The first change is the definition of the `LOG_FILE` Constant at ❶. As you might expect, this is the filename into which `radio_player2.rb` writes logging messages. Next, we declare a Hash Constant called `PLAYERS` at ❷, with keys of file extensions for particular types of soundfiles and values of the names of programs that one might use to play those types of files on a Unix system.

Next, we define our Procs at ❸, this time as variables rather than Constants. There's no particular reason to use variables instead of Constants, as the comment notes. I just wanted to show that either approach works well for our purposes. Aside from being variables rather than Constants, the playing Proc is substantively different.

The `play_file_proc` acts as a closure, binding the `PLAYERS` Hash inside itself. It establishes the extension (and therefore, type) of its `filename` argument as `ext` at ❹. It then tries to play that filename using `system` at ❺, but only if the `PLAYERS` Hash has an appropriate player for that file extension. I made sure that `PLAYERS` had an entry for no file extension at all, so `radio_player2.rb` could still demonstrate that it was either playing or not playing the dummy files like `legal1` and `promo2` that have no file extension. Since I just wanted to show the dummy files, I decided that the Unix command `ls`, which just lists files, was the appropriate value to use in `PLAYERS`.

The `radio_player2.rb` script also logs playback within the `play_file_proc`. At ❻, it opens a new file for appending, using `'a'` as the second argument to `File.open`. It then refers to that log file as `log`, and uses `log's puts` method to append the current `Time` and the `filename` being played, separated by tabs, all followed by a carriage return. Whenever we use `radio_player2.rb`, we can check the contents of `LOG_FILE` to see what's been played.

The only other differences are the removal of the debugging messages and referring to the Procs by the lowercase variable names rather than the all-caps Constant names. Let's see this version in action.

## The Results

Let's try a basic playback of everything.

---

```
$ ruby -w radio_player2.rb play
```

```
Audio Device: OSS audio driver output
```

```
Playing: extras/soundfiles/01-Neal_And_Jack_And_Me.ogg
Ogg Vorbis stream: 2 channel, 44100 Hz
Title: Neal and Jack and Me
Artist: King Crimson
Album: Beat
Date: 1982
Track number: 01
Tracktotal: 08
Genre: Prog Rock
Composer: Belew, Bruford, Fripp, Levin
Musicbrainz_albumid: 5ddb867-ebce-445d-a175-d90516e426da
Musicbrainz_albumartistid: b38225b8-8e5f-42aa-bcdc-7bae5b5bdab3
Musicbrainz_artistid: b38225b8-8e5f-42aa-bcdc-7bae5b5bdab3
Musicbrainz_trackid: 30a23275-11ef-4f07-bdc8-0192ae34e67d
```

```
Done.  
extras/soundfiles/legal/legal1  
extras/soundfiles/legal/legal2  
extras/soundfiles/promo/promo1  
extras/soundfiles/promo/promo2
```

---

That command-line call played the Ogg file (again, from my favorite band King Crimson) using a system call with `ogg123`, the appropriate value within `PLAYERS` for the `.ogg` extension, and then it “played” the other files with `ls`, the appropriate `PLAYERS` value for files with no extension at all.

Now let’s filter, with fake playback.

---

```
$ ruby -w radio_player2.rb play legal
```

```
extras/soundfiles/legal/legal1  
extras/soundfiles/legal/legal2
```

---

And again, without fake playback.

---

```
$ ruby -w radio_player2.rb dont legal
```

```
I'm not playing extras/soundfiles/legal/legal1. So there.  
I'm not playing extras/soundfiles/legal/legal2. So there.
```

---

Notice that playback merely lists the dummy files, while non-playback executes the full `dont_play_file_proc`, including the immature `So there.` suffix.

### ***Hacking the Script***

The value of `LOG_FILE` is Unix-specific. Windows users (or anyone else) can certainly change that filename to something more appropriate for their operating system. Also, if you prefer a more robust system for the dummy files, you could give them their own extension, like `dummy`, and change `PLAYERS` so that the key for `'ls'` is that new extension.

## **#39 Numbers by Name (to\_lang.rb)**

In previous scripts, notably “#16 Adding Commas to Numbers (`commify.rb`)” on page 75 and “#17 Roman Numerals (`roman_numeral.rb`)” on page 81, we talked about how numbers can be represented in a variety of ways. Both of those scripts showed meaningful ways of representing Integers as Strings, other than the handy but trivially different `to_s` method. This script, `to_lang.rb`, extends that discussion by representing Integers as Strings consisting of how those numbers are spoken in two real-world languages: English and Spanish.

## The Code

This code is broken into three separate files, for reasons that I will make clear in “How It Works” on page 198.

### representable\_in\_english.rb

---

```
=begin rdoc
This is intended for use with to_lang.rb
=end
```

❶ module Representable\_In\_English

```
=begin rdoc
Return a <b>Hash</b> whose keys are <b>Integer</b>s and whose values
are the words representing the same values.
=end
```

❷ def create\_english()  
    need\_ones\_in\_english.merge(dont\_need\_ones\_in\_english)

end

❸ def special\_replacements\_in\_english(num\_as\_string)  
    add\_hyphens\_to\_tens(num\_as\_string).strip  
end

**Syntactic Sugar** ❹ def to\_english()  
    to\_lang('english')  
end

❺ alias :to\_en :to\_english

❻ private

❼ def add\_hyphens\_to\_tens(num\_as\_string)  
    num\_as\_string.sub(/ty/, 'ty-').sub(/-?- ?/, '-')  
end

❽ def need\_ones\_in\_english()  
    return {  
        10 \*\* 9 => 'billion',  
        10 \*\* 6 => 'million',  
        10 \*\* 3 => 'thousand',  
        100    => 'hundred',  
    }  
end

❾ def dont\_need\_ones\_in\_english()  
    return {  
        90 => 'ninety',  
        80 => 'eighty',  
        70 => 'seventy',  
        60 => 'sixty',  
        50 => 'fifty',  
    }

```

40 => 'forty',
30 => 'thirty',
20 => 'twenty',
19 => 'nineteen',
18 => 'eighteen',
17 => 'seventeen',
16 => 'sixteen',
15 => 'fifteen',
14 => 'fourteen',
13 => 'thirteen',
12 => 'twelve',
11 => 'eleven',
10 => 'ten',
9 => 'nine',
8 => 'eight',
7 => 'seven',
6 => 'six',
5 => 'five',
4 => 'four',
3 => 'three',
2 => 'two',
1 => 'one',
0 => '',
}
end

end

```

---

Next will be a very similar file, also storing a module/mixin definition. The only meaningful differences pertain to the choice of language: this one details Spanish, rather than English.

### **representable\_in\_spanish.rb**

---

```

=end
This is intended for use with to_lang.rb
=end

```

❶ module Representable\_In\_Spanish

```

=end
Return a <b>Hash</b> whose keys are <b>Integer</b>s and whose values
are the words representing the same values.
=end

```

❷ def create\_spanish()  
  need\_ones\_in\_spanish.merge(dont\_need\_ones\_in\_spanish)  
end

❸ def special\_replacements\_in\_spanish(num\_as\_string)  
  add\_hyphens\_to\_tens(num\_as\_string).strip  
end

**Syntactic Sugar** ❹ def to\_spanish()

```

    to_lang('spanish')
end

❷ alias :to_es :to_spanish

❸ private

❹ def add_hyphens_to_tens(num_as_string)
  num_as_string.sub(/ta/, 'ta-').sub(/-?- ?/, '-')
end

❺ def need_ones_in_spanish()
  return {
    10 ** 12 => 'billon',
    10 ** 9  => 'mil millones',
    10 ** 6  => 'millon',
    10 ** 3  => 'mil',
    100      => 'ciento',
  }
end

❻ def dont_need_ones_in_spanish()
  return {
    90 => 'noventa',
    80 => 'ochenta',
    70 => 'setenta',
    60 => 'sesenta',
    50 => 'cincuenta',
    40 => 'cuarenta',
    30 => 'treinta',
    20 => 'veinte',
    19 => 'diecinueve',
    18 => 'dieciocho',
    17 => 'diecisiete',
    16 => 'dieciseis',
    15 => 'quince',
    14 => 'catorce',
    13 => 'trece',
    12 => 'doce',
    11 => 'once',
    10 => 'deiz',
    9  => 'nueve',
    8  => 'ocho',
    7  => 'siete',
    6  => 'seis',
    5  => 'cinco',
    4  => 'cuatro',
    3  => 'tres',
    2  => 'dos',
    1  => 'uno',
    0  => '', # 'cero'
  }
end

end

```

Finally, we have the code that directly gives Integers the ability to represent themselves in spoken languages. It does so through the use of the modules above, as you'll see.

## to\_lang.rb

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby -w
# to_lang.rb

=begin rdoc
Implement representation of numbers in human languages:
1 => 'one',
2 => 'two',
etc.
```

This is an generalized extension of ideas shown for the specific case of roman numerals in `roman_numeral.rb`

Note that similar work has already been done at <http://www.deveiate.org/projects/Linguistics/wiki/English> This version focuses only on converting numbers to multiple language targets, and pedantically considers "and" to be the pronunciation of the decimal point.

```
=end
```

```
class Integer
```

### Requiring Our Own Mixins

```
❶ require 'representable_in_english'
   require 'representable_in_spanish'
```

```
❷ include Representable_In_English
   include Representable_In_Spanish
```

```
❸ EMPTY_STRING = ''
   SPACE        = ' '
```

```
❹ @@lang_of ||= Hash.new()
```

```
❺ def need_ones?(lang)
  send("need_ones_in_#{lang}").keys.include?(self)
end
```

### The send Method

```
❻ def to_lang(lang)
  return EMPTY_STRING if self.zero?

  @@lang_of[lang] ||= send("create_#{lang}")

  base      = get_base(lang)
  mult      = (self / base).to_i
  remaining = (self - (mult * base))

  raw_output = [
    mult_prefix(base, mult, lang),
    @@lang_of[lang][base],
```

```

        remaining.to_lang(lang)
    ].join(SPACE)

    return send(
        "special_replacements_in_#{lang}",
        raw_output)
end

❷ private

❸ def get_base(lang)
    return self if @@lang_of[lang][self]
    @@lang_of[lang].keys.sort.reverse.detect do |k|
        k <= self
    end
end

❹ def mult_prefix(base, mult, lang)
    return mult.to_lang(lang) if mult > 1
    return 1.to_lang(lang)   if base.need_ones?(lang)
    return EMPTY_STRING
end

end

```

---

## How It Works

Let's examine each file in turn. Since `representable_in_english.rb` and `representable_in_spanish.rb` are so similar, we can deal with them simultaneously.

### The Two Mixins

Both `representable_in_english.rb` and `representable_in_spanish.rb` are *mixins*, the mechanism Ruby uses to give shared behavior to classes with different ancestry, like giving both bats and birds the ability to fly. In our case, instead of giving organisms the ability to fly, we're giving the object we mix our mixins into the ability to represent itself in some human languages: English and Spanish, in this case.

We define the appropriate Module, in both `representable_in_english.rb` and `representable_in_spanish.rb`, at ❶. I'll keep the numbered callouts in the code in parallel across these two files throughout this example. At ❷, we define our `create_english` or `create_spanish` methods. The purpose of either method is to return a Hash whose keys are Integers and whose values are the representation of those Integers in the module's language. The resulting Hash's pairs will form our base cases, and we'll use them very similarly to the ones we used in the `roman_numerals.rb` script in Chapter 5. Then at ❸, we define a special `replacements` method, customized and named for the language. Every language is likely to have some special treatment, even beyond what we can do with the differences in the Hash returned by `create_english` or `create_spanish`. So far, all we need to do is add hyphens



to numbers with tens components. To accomplish that task, we call the `add_hyphens_to_tens` method, which we define at ⑦.

At ④ and ⑤, we add some of what programmers call *syntactic sugar*, or a simplification of a language’s syntax. The term *syntactic sugar* can have a negative connotation, but it doesn’t have to. It generally refers to a shortcut that a programmer uses to more easily accomplish a commonly needed technique, such as adding method aliases with `alias`. It’s relatively easy to add syntactic sugar to Ruby, as our examples show. We can add methods like `to_english` or `to_spanish` by calling `to_lang` (soon to be defined in `to_lang.rb`) with the appropriate `lang` argument.<sup>2</sup> We can also use `alias` to make `to_en` refer to `to_english`, and `to_es` refer to `to_spanish`.

Some of our methods can be private, so we declare that at ⑥. We’ve already discussed `add_hyphens_to_tens` ⑦, so we can move on to `need_ones_in_english` and `need_ones_in_spanish` ⑧. This method returns a Hash whose keys are Integers and whose values are the representation of those Integers in the module’s language. This should sound familiar. What makes the pairs in this Hash notable is a characteristic they all share: They all need the prefix *one* (in the appropriate language) when there is in fact only one of those numbers. The number *100* is pronounced *one hundred* in English, for example.

“Of course!” you might think. However, contrast the Hashes returned by `need_ones_in_english` ⑧ and `dont_need_ones_in_english` ⑨. The Integer keys of the Hash created at ⑨ do not need the *one* prefix. You don’t say *one twenty* for *20*, for example, so we need a way to differentiate between numbers that need the prefix and those that don’t. The different methods at ⑧ and ⑨ are our way to do so. When we want all of them together and when we don’t care about the prefix issue we can simply merge the two Hashes together. This is exactly what we will do in the `to_lang.rb` file, which we’re about to examine.

## The Main Code

The first thing we do in `to_lang.rb` is open the Integer class, since we want to add new behavior to Integers. At ①, we require the mixin files just discussed, and at ②, we include them within the Integer class, giving all Integers the methods defined in the mixin files, including both aliases. We also want some Constants, mainly for convenient text manipulation, so we define those at ③. We close off the pre-methods section by defining a class variable called `@@lang_of` at ④. It’s a Hash that will eventually store the merged result of the two Hashes from the mixins’ markers at ⑧ and ⑨. Since we define it with `||=`, it is only defined in the first Integer instantiated, and then it is shared among all of them.

At ⑤, we define a predicate called `need_ones?`, which takes a `lang` argument and simply makes a call to either `need_ones_in_english` (defined in `representable_in_english.rb`) or `need_ones_in_spanish` (defined in `representable_in_spanish.rb`), as appropriate to the `lang` argument. It doesn’t matter which of the files the called method is defined in, because they are both included at ② in `to_lang.rb`.

---

<sup>2</sup> Note that our definitions of `to_english` and `to_spanish` essentially curry to `to_lang`, making new curried methods that are simpler to call (i.e., that take fewer arguments) by making assumptions, namely which language to convert into.

Our main workhorse method `to_lang`, appears at ❹; this method takes a single, mandatory `lang` argument. It returns early with the `EMPTY_STRING` if `self` is zero. This means that if we call `0.to_lang('english')`, we get the empty string as the result, instead of the String `'zero'`. (See “Hacking the Script” on page 202 for a way to change that.) Assuming the case should proceed beyond that, `to_lang` then sets the value of `@@lang_of[lang]`. The `@@lang_of` class variable had already been declared as a Hash when the first Integer was instantiated, but only as a Hash with no keys or values. The value put into `@@lang_of[lang]` is the result of calling a method called `send` with the argument `"create_#{lang}"`, which you should recognize as an interpolating String.

The `send` method takes any number of arguments, the first of which must be an expression that evaluates to the name of a method. It then calls that method with the rest of the arguments. This allows you to do exactly what we’re doing here, which is dynamically calling a method whose name you don’t yet know. You could work around this by having a test on the `lang` argument, and there are many ways to do so. Instead of a traditional method like `create_english` or `create_spanish`, you could use Procs as Hash values, as we’ve done many times since Chapter 6. You could also do something like this:

---

```
@@lang_of = if (lang == 'english')
  create_english()
else
  create_spanish()
end
```

---

Note that we take advantage of the fact that all statements in Ruby return the last expression evaluated, including the `if` statement. You have many different options for calling a method whose name you don’t know, but the point is that it doesn’t need to be that difficult. Ruby provides us with the `send` method, which is incredibly useful and appropriate.

At this point, `@@lang_of[lang]` will contain the Hash that is the merged result of both `need_ones_in_english` and `dont_need_ones_in_english` (for English) or `need_ones_in_spanish` and `dont_need_ones_in_spanish` (for Spanish.) Let’s take a cue from `send` and express those as `"need_ones_in#{lang}"` and `"dont_need_ones_in#{lang}"`. We then want to create some local variables called `base`, `mult`, and `remaining`.

The `base` variable is the highest Integer key within `@@lang_of[lang]` that is equal to or less than `self`. We get it from the `get_base` method, defined at ❺, which finds the first key in a reverse-sorted version of `@@lang_of[lang]` that is equal to or less than `self`. It does this via the `detect` method (which I like to think of as “find first”). It also has a return guard, where it returns `self` if `self` is actually one of the keys of `@@lang_of[lang]`.

The `mult` variable is simply how many times `base` can go into `self`, rounded down to the nearest Integer. The `remaining` variable is whatever’s left. We then want to create `raw_output`, a String that holds the eventual output, before we make any of the special replacements already mentioned in “The Two Mixins” on page 198. The `raw_output` String will consist of something representing `(base * mult)`, a space, and then the result of making a recursive call to `to_lang` on whatever is left (`remaining.to_lang(lang)`).

We accomplish that by constructing an Array. The first element is the output of a method called `mult_prefix`, defined at ❹; it takes the arguments `base`, `mult`, and `lang`. If `mult` is greater than one, we know we need to have a prefix: the number `200` is pronounced *two hundred*, so we need the *two*. If `base` needs a one (as described already, pertaining to the `need_ones?` predicate), we know that we need to have *one* as a prefix, such as for *one hundred* or *one thousand*. Finally, in all other cases, we return a prefix that is the `EMPTY_STRING`, so the number `20` is pronounced *twenty* rather than *one twenty*, and `5` is *five* rather than *one five*. That's the multiple prefix and the first part of our eventual output.<sup>3</sup>

Next, we need whatever `base` is, as pronounced in `lang`. We get that via `@lang_of[lang][base]`. Finally, we need the rest of the number, which we get via `remaining.to_lang(lang)`. This keeps happening recursively, with a smaller Integer calling to `to_lang` and appending its results, until `base` is 0. Then `to_lang` returns the `EMPTY_STRING` due to its return guard, and the entire output is concatenated together within the first calling to `remaining.to_lang`.

That's the Array. You'll notice that `to_lang` joins that Array on a `SPACE`, so that the words in `raw_output` are separated by spaces, which is normal. Before we're done, we want to call our special replacements method (whichever one is appropriate for `lang`) on `raw_output`, and return the result of doing that. Since we again have a method name that depends on `lang`, we'll use `send`.

## The Results

Let's take it out for a spin. I've written a simple test script called `test_lang.rb` that I stored inside the `tests` directory. It uses `Test::Unit::TestCase` again, in a manner similar to the way we tested the temperature converter in Chapter 7. Here's its code:

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# test_lang.rb

require 'to_lang'
require 'test/unit'

class Tester < Test::Unit::TestCase

  def test_langs()

    tests = {
      'en' => {
        1    => 'one',
        5    => 'five',
        9    => 'nine',
        11   => 'eleven',
        51   => 'fifty one',
        100  => 'one hundred',
        101  => 'one hundred one',
        257  => 'two hundred fifty seven',
        1000 => 'one thousand',
```

---

<sup>3</sup> All of these specific examples assume English, of course. Substitute the Spanish terms when `lang` is `'spanish'`.

```

    1001 => 'one thousand one',
    90125 => 'ninety thousand one hundred twenty five',
  },
  'es' => {
    1    => 'uno',
    5    => 'cinco',
    9    => 'nueve',
    11   => 'once',
    51   => 'cincuenta-uno',
    100  => 'uno ciento',
    101  => 'uno ciento uno',
    257  => 'dos ciento cincuenta-siete',
    1000 => 'uno mil',
    1001 => 'uno mil uno',
    90125 => 'noventa-mil uno ciento veinte cinco',
  }
}
%w[ en es ].each do |lang|
  general_tester( tests, lang )
end
end

private

def general_tester(tests, lang)
  tests[lang].each_key do |num|
    assert_equal( num.send("to_#{lang}"), tests[lang][num] )
  end
end

end

```

---

And here's its output:

---

```

Loaded suite tests/test_lang
Started
.
Finished in 0.004543 seconds.

1 tests, 22 assertions, 0 failures, 0 errors

```

---

## ***Hacking the Script***

We could modify to\_lang to allow the pronunciation of zero, instead of returning the EMPTY\_STRING Constant. In order to do that and still work with the recursion, we'll need to send another optional argument into to\_lang that keeps track of the recursion depth (how many levels of recursion we have performed). We only care about distinguishing between the first call to to\_lang and the rest of the calls. We could then return the EMPTY\_STRING if self is zero and it's the first call to to\_lang; we can skip the return guard in all other cases. We'd also need to change the value for 0 in both dont\_need\_ones\_in\_english and dont\_need\_ones\_in\_spanish.

## #40 Elegant Maps and Injects (symbol.rb)

I'll close this chapter with a tiny script that I didn't even write. I certainly wish I had, because it's remarkably useful, especially for making your use of `map`, `inject`, and similar methods much more elegant. It's an example of the best kind of syntactic sugar, and it comes directly from the Ruby Extensions Project at <http://extensions.rubyforge.org>. This script and all other scripts at that site are licensed under the same terms as Ruby itself, which is what allows me to use it in this chapter.<sup>4</sup> The code is extremely simple.

### The Code

Symbol.to\_proc

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
class Symbol
  def to_proc()
    Proc.new { |obj, *args| obj.send(self, *args) }
  end
end
```

---

What's the point of this? It lets you use `uc_words = lc_words.map(&:upcase)` to accomplish the same thing as `uc_words = lc_words.map { |word| word.upcase }`. In both cases, the `uc_words` variable now contains uppercase versions of all the words in `lc_words`. As I said, it's basically just syntactic sugar, but it's very, very nice and clever.

### How It Works

First of all, this script creates a `Proc` using `Proc.new` that takes an object called `obj` and a variable number of args. Remember from `to_lang.rb` that `obj.send(methodname)` is the same as `obj.methodname`, so these are equivalent, with an `Array` `a`:

---

```
a.send(push, some_item)
a.push(some_item)
```

---

The remaining arguments (represented by `*args`) are also passed along to `obj`, which is using `each` or `map` or some other iterating method.

Secondly, you may remember previous discussion about how to convert between `Procs` and blocks using the ampersand (`&`), but we can also use the ampersand to cast more than blocks into `Procs`. Doing so calls a method called `to_proc`, which you can see we've overridden. We end up using a double character prefix of `&:`, because a colon is already the prefix for a `Symbol`. When we use the expression `&:some_name`, what we mean is *the expression returned by the `to_proc` method of the `Symbol` named `some_name`.*

---

<sup>4</sup>Those terms are made explicit at <http://www.ruby-lang.org/en/about/license.txt>

## The Results

Let's see it in action in irb.

---

```
irb -r symbol.rb
irb(main):001:0> digits = (0..9).to_a
=> [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
irb(main):002:0> digits.inject(&:+)
=> 45
irb(main):003:0> digits.map(&:inspect)
=> ["0", "1", "2", "3", "4", "5", "6", "7", "8", "9"]
irb(main):004:0> require 'to_lang'
=> true
irb(main):005:0> digits.map(&:to_en)
=> ["", "one", "two", "three", "four", "five", "six", "seven", "eight",
"nine"]
```

---

## Hacking the Script

This script is already a very elegant hack. Note that you need to use `Proc.new` rather than `lambda`, because you want it to be able to handle a variable number of args.

## Chapter Recap

What was new in this chapter?

- Callbacks
- CVS
- Mixins in action
- Calling methods with variable names via `send`
- Syntactic sugar
- `Symbol.to_proc`

That's it for this chapter. It tended to focus less on completely new concepts and more on new applications for familiar things, but it still managed to introduce more than a few novel ideas. The next chapter focuses on web programming, a venue in which Ruby has become quite popular.

# 11

## CGI AND THE WEB



Ruby has gotten a lot of attention as a language particularly well suited for web programming, especially in the context of the Rails development framework. Some people even go so far as to categorize Ruby as a web language, suggesting that it is not a full-fledged general-purpose programming language. I hope that the previous chapters have played at least a modest role in convincing readers that this assertion is false.

That said, Ruby is very useful for web work, and it does have some characteristics that make it better suited for web programming than (for example) video game programming. Ruby operates at a very high level of abstraction, giving programmers a large toolset to work with, and it executes code at a slower speed than some other languages. These characteristics make Ruby well suited for web work, since development speed is often critical, but program execution speed is often less critical than in other types of programs, such as real-time action video games.

The Rails development framework has been instrumental in bringing Ruby to the attention of an ever-larger audience. Some say it's Ruby's "killer app," analogous to Perl's CPAN or the GNU project's gcc. This is a general

Ruby book, not a Rails book, but Rails is important enough that it gets its own chapter. (Since we'll be using RubyGems, Ruby's package-management system, to install Rails, this book also has a chapter devoted to RubyGems.)

You'll have to wait two chapters for Rails. Aside from knowing how to install it with RubyGems, by then you should also know something about web programs in general—that's what this chapter is for. If you're a web app veteran, feel free to skip this chapter, although you may find some of the specific scripts novel and interesting, even if you already know how they work.

## Common Gateway Interface

The most common approach to web programming is the Common Gateway Interface (CGI). CGI is not a programming language; it's a set of rules for programs to follow when they run on the Web, regardless of the particular language in which each program might be written. CGI enables friendly cooperation among multiple files that could even be written in distinct programming languages but all exist together within a larger web application.

Using more than one language for a single web application is fairly common. I mentioned that Ruby's high level of abstraction makes it suitable for web programming. However, sometimes you might really want to use a library someone has already written in another language—like Python, for instance—in a web program. If you use CGI, you could write part of your web application in Python in order to use that library. You might also have a section of your web application that is highly speed critical, so you could write that part in C for execution speed, and the rest in Ruby for development speed. This is exactly the reason that Paul Graham and his colleagues chose to use a combination of Lisp and C for their company Viaweb, which eventually became Yahoo! Stores. They were able to do so because the CGI specification holds across multiple languages.

## Preparation and Installation

Before we get going with Ruby and CGI, we've got to do a little work to get our webserver ready. For the purposes of this chapter, I'll be focusing on getting CGI working for the Apache webserver running on a Unix-like environment. Apache is the most popular webserver, and Unix-like operating systems are the most common (and most stable) server operating systems.

You can get a copy of the Apache webserver at <http://httpd.apache.org>, or you can use a package manager to install it. (Mac OS X comes with Apache pre-installed.) I used `apt-get` on my Ubuntu system, as follows:

---

```
apt-get install apache2 apache2-doc
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree... Done
The following extra packages will be installed:
  apache2-common apache2-mpm-worker apache2-utils libapr0 libpcre3 ssl-cert
```



```
Suggested packages:
 lynx www-browser
The following NEW packages will be installed:
 apache2 apache2-common apache2-doc apache2-mpm-worker apache2-utils libapr0
 libpcre3 ssl-cert
0 upgraded, 8 newly installed, 0 to remove and 5 not upgraded.
Need to get 3555kB of archives.
After unpacking 16.4MB of additional disk space will be used.
Do you want to continue [Y/n]? Y
```

---

I answered `Y`. You can see that I chose the `apache2` version of the Apache webserver. After installing Apache, you'll also want to install packages for `mod_ruby`, which allows Ruby programs to be run within the webserver. I'll explain the benefits of this when we get to the script that shows `mod_ruby` being used. You can install `mod_ruby` by typing `apt-get install libapache2-mod-ruby liberuby` on a Debian-based system. Now that the installation is done, let's start with our first simple CGI script.

## #41 A Simple CGI Script (`simple CGI.rb`)

This script is fairly quick and dirty, but it shows the basics of how to use Ruby for CGI and introduces Ruby's aptly named `cgi` library. You'll need to put this script in your system's `cgi-bin` directory. It's `/usr/lib/cgi-bin/` on my system, although your system's location may be different. You can then browse to `http://localhost/cgi-bin/simple CGI.rb`, because your webserver will provide access to the contents of your `cgi-bin` directory via `http://localhost/cgi-bin/`.

**NOTE** *You'll also need to give `simple CGI.rb` 755 permissions, meaning that its owner can do anything with it and everyone else can read and execute it, but not write (change) it. For more information, see `man chmod`.*

Before we even get started with the script, you should also browse to `http://localhost/`. If you see either a page telling you that Apache is installed correctly or a listing of files in a directory, your webserver is probably working. If you don't see either of these things, consult the Apache documentation (available at `http://httpd.apache.org/docs`) to diagnose the problem. If your webserver is working, you can proceed to the script.

### The Code

---

```
#!/usr/bin/env ruby
# simple CGI.rb

❶ require 'cgi'

❷ class Simple_CGI

❸   EMPTY_STRING = ''
   TITLE = 'A simple CGI script'
```

Requiring  
CGI.rb

```

def display()
❹  cgi = CGI.new('html4')
❺  output = cgi.html do
    cgi.head do
        cgi.title { TITLE }
    end +
    cgi.body do
        cgi.h1 { TITLE } +
❻  show_def_list(cgi)
    end
    end
❼  cgi.out { output.gsub('><', ">\n<") }
end

private

❸  def get_items_hash()
    {
        'script' => ENV['SCRIPT_NAME'],
❾  'server' => ENV['SERVER_NAME'] || %x{hostname} || EMPTY_STRING,
        'software' => ENV['SERVER_SOFTWARE'],
        'time' => Time.now,
    }
end

❷  def show_def_list(cgi)
    cgi.dl do
        items = get_items_hash.merge(cgi.params)
        items.keys.sort.map do |term|
            definition = items[term]
            "<dt>#{term}</dt><dd>#{definition}</dd>\n"
        end.join( EMPTY_STRING )
    end
end

end

Simple_CGI.new.display()

```

---

## How It Works

The first thing we do in the script is require the `cgi` library at ❶. Then we define a class called `Simple_CGI` at ❷ and the Constants `EMPTY_STRING` and `TITLE` at ❸. Next, within the `display` method (at ❹), we create an instance of `CGI` called `cgi`, defining it in terms of `html4`, which is one of the versions of HTML that `CGI` is aware of. We'll use `cgi` to create an HTML document that `simple_cgi.rb` will output.

Instances of `CGI` have several methods that take blocks, whose names are the same as the tags they will create. Every HTML document needs an `<html>` tag, so we include that at ❺. For reasons I'll explain shortly, I want to store the contents of the `<html>` tag in a temporary local variable called `output`.

We can go through the HTML document we want to create, opening new tags with the appropriate method of `cgi` (like `head`, `title`, `h1`, etc.). Hierarchical nesting is accomplished using blocks, as you can see, and tags that are at the same level (*siblings*) are concatenated with the `+` method.

You'll notice that within `cgi.body`, which creates the `<body>` tag within our resulting output, I have used a method at ❸ called `show_def_list` (defined at ❶). This is mainly to avoid multiple levels of block nesting for the methods of `cgi`, but it also performs other tasks. Let's examine it at ❶. It outputs a definition list as you'd expect using `cgi.dl` with a block. To do so, it pulls both terms and their definitions from a Hash called `items`, wrapping them in `<dt>` and `<dd>` tags, respectively.

The `items` Hash is defined by the output of `get_items_hash` (❷) merged with `cgi.params`. The `cgi.params` Hash represents the query string, so if you browse to `http://localhost/cgi-bin/simple.cgi.rb?key1=value1&key2=value2`, `cgi.params` would be `{ 'key1' => 'value1', 'key2', 'value2' }`. The `get_items_hash` method returns a Hash representing some values that I thought might be worth demonstrating, such as the script name, the server, and so on. In general, the script simply reads from the machine's environment, using values of the `ENV` Hash. At ❸, the value for `'server'` in the Hash is slightly more complex than the others. It tries to read from `ENV` like the others, falling back to a system execution of the `hostname` command, and finally falling back to the `EMPTY_STRING`, if necessary. This resulting Hash is then returned implicitly, because it's the last evaluated expression in the method.

Back at ❷, we call `cgi.out`, giving it a block with a slight massaging of the output variable using `gsub`. I'll be the first to admit that this is a little unusual. Normally, you call `cgi.out` with a block that includes `cgi.html` and all the other methods I used to fill the output variable. Why did I do it this way? There are two related reasons.

The first reason is that `cgi.out` is not purely functional: It doesn't return a value to be printed using `puts`. Instead, it does the outputting by itself. The second reason is that `cgi`'s methods don't introduce line breaks between tags. This is good for speed optimization, in that each new character, even just a line break, is slightly more content to transfer. However, it doesn't make the resulting HTML source very readable. I like readable HTML source, so I use `gsub` at ❷ to introduce line breaks between adjacent tags. If you don't mind your HTML all strung together in a single line, by all means, put your `cgi.html` and similar calls within the block for `cgi.out`.

Everything we have discussed so far has been within the `display` method. We call it on the last line of the script, directly on an anonymous new instance of `Simple_CGI`. There's no real need to instantiate it into a variable, like so:

---

```
scgi = Simple_CGI.new
scgi.display()
```

---

However, if you're more comfortable doing that, there's also no reason not to. Let's see how it works.

## The Results

On your system, browse to `http://localhost/cgi-bin/simple CGI script` and see what you get. It should be something more or less like Figure 11-1.

Note that the software value will probably differ, unless you're also using a fairly stock Ubuntu system, and the time will obviously differ a great deal. You can see that the tab shows the page title, which is *A simple CGI script* (the same as the large bold header).

Values that should not differ are the script and server, unless you've intentionally changed the filename from `simple CGI script` to something else or browsed to a hostname other than `localhost`. Astute readers will also see that I had another tab open to the Apache website.

Now let's try changing the query string a bit, with `http://localhost/cgi-bin/simple CGI script?lang=Ruby`. I won't bother showing a new screenshot, but you should now see five entries in the definition list instead of four. The new one is the key `lang`, which has a value of `Ruby`. This appears because `cgi.params` is a part of the items Hash within `show_def_list` at ⑩, and when we use the query string `lang=Ruby`, `cgi.params` is `{ 'lang' => 'Ruby' }`, which is then one of the pairs in `items`.

Now let's try giving an explicit value within the query string to one of the keys that already appears in `items`, with the URL `http://localhost/cgi-bin/simple CGI script?lang=Ruby&server=some_other_server_name`. You should still see the key `lang` with a value `Ruby`, but in addition, the value for `server` is no longer `localhost`, but is instead `some_other_server_name`. The reason this happens is that `cgi.params` is the argument to `merge`, and it overrides any conflicting pair already in the Hash on which `merge` is called. Therefore, anything in `cgi.params` takes precedence.

## Hacking the Script

This is just a simple script showing the basics of CGI. You could modify and extend it in countless ways. One suggestion would be to incorporate part of `currency_converter2.rb`. For example, you could display the time, just as this script already does, and take arguments for the currencies to convert from and to as well as the amount of money to convert. Many people also use CGI to execute system calls on a machine and display the results, showing the processes running on the machine, how much disk space is used, and other information of interest to system administrators.



Figure 11-1: The output of `simple CGI script`

## #42 Mod Ruby (mod\_ruby\_demo.rhtml and mod\_ruby\_demo.conf)

CGI is great for many applications. However, sometimes you may want to have files that are mainly HTML, with only subsections that need to be executed by your programming language, Ruby or otherwise. Wouldn't it be great if you had an HTML tag that meant *Start Ruby code now*, after which you could add some Ruby code, and then use another tag that meant *Done with Ruby code, go back to plain old HTML*?

There is such a system, for many languages. It's the default behavior for the PHP language, and similar systems are available for Perl and Python, among others. One of the systems that does this for Ruby is eRuby, which will be embedded directly within the webserver via the mod\_ruby software.

One of the problems with CGI is speed. When someone makes a web request that needs dynamic CGI execution, that request spawns a new Ruby interpreter;<sup>1</sup> that interpreter then evaluates the CGI program, returns its value to the webserver process, and closes down. For the next CGI request, the whole process start all over again. All of this takes time. What mod\_ruby and similar systems do is have a Ruby interpreter always running in the background, ready to evaluate scripts and return their results to the webserver, but without the overhead of spawning and shutting down a distinct ruby process for each script. This makes the webserver start up a bit slower, because it needs to do more, but it saves a lot of machine overhead after just a few requests.

In the code, you'll see `<%` and `>`, the opening and closing tags that mean *Interpret my contents in Ruby, not as HTML*. But first we need to set up Apache so that it knows how to handle mod\_ruby. We've already installed the mod\_ruby packages, but we need a configuration file. That's mod\_ruby\_demo.conf below.

### The Code

#### mod\_ruby\_demo.conf

#### An Apache Config File

---

```
<IfModule mod_ruby.c>
# for Apache::RubyRun
RubyRequire apache/ruby-run

# for Apache::ERubyRun
RubyRequire apache/eruby-run

# handle *.rcss as eruby files.
❶ <Files *.rcss>
  AddType text/css .rcss
  AddType application/x-httpd-ruby *.rb
  SetHandler ruby-object
  RubyHandler Apache::ERubyRun.instance
</Files>
```

---

<sup>1</sup> Or an interpreter for whichever language the CGI program uses.

```

# handle *.rhtml as eruby files.
❷ <Files *.rhtml>
    AddType text/html .rhtml
    AddType application/x-httpd-ruby *.rb
    SetHandler ruby-object
    RubyHandler Apache::ERubyRun.instance
</Files>

RubyRequire auto-reload

</IfModule>

```

---

This file isn't Ruby code—it uses Apache's configuration file format. Put this file in `/etc/apache2/mods-available/`, with a symlink in `/etc/apache2/mod-enabled/`.<sup>2</sup> If you're using Apache version 1.X (such as 1.3, which is still popular), you'll add the contents of this file within your `/etc/apache/httpd.conf` file. As I noted for the `cgi-bin` directory, these specific file and directory locations are accurate for my system, but yours might be different.

### **mod\_ruby\_demo.rhtml**

This file should be more recognizable as a weird hybrid of HTML and Ruby code.

---

```

<!DOCTYPE html
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml" xml:lang="en" lang="en">

<head>
<title>Mod Ruby</title>
<style>
code {
    background-color: #ddf;
    color: #f00;
    padding: 0.3em;
}
</style>
</head>

<body>
<h1>Mod Ruby</h1>

<p>
The eRuby command below should print <q>Hello, world!</q>
</p>

<p>
❸ <q>% print "Hello, world!" %></q>
</p>

```

% tags

---

<sup>2</sup>You can create a symlink with the command `ln -s` in a Unix shell.

```

<p>
❶ Welcome to <em><%= ENV['SERVER_NAME'] %></em>. If you see a server name,
❷ <%= 'e' + 'Ruby' %> is probably working.
</p>

<p>
❸ The current time is <%= Time.now %>.
</p>

<p>
<%
❹ def function_within_mod_ruby(input)
    "#{input} was passed through a function.\n"
end

print function_within_mod_ruby("Some sample input")
print '<br />'
print function_within_mod_ruby("Some other sample input")
%>
</p>

</body>
</html>

```

---

Put this file somewhere browsable via the Web. I'll assume it's in `http://localhost/mod_ruby/`, making it accessible as `http://localhost/mod_ruby/mod_ruby_demo.rhtml`.

## How It Works

Hopefully, `mod_ruby_demo.conf` will be completely opaque. I'm kidding, of course, but it's not critical at this point if you don't understand everything about this file. It's great to know about Apache configuration files, and you can certainly learn a great deal from the Apache website (<http://www.apache.org>) or the various Apache-related books out there, but what's important for our purposes are points ❶ and ❷. At ❶, we declare that files having the `.rcss` extension are to be interpreted as Ruby files. At ❷, we make the same declaration about files having the `.rhtml` extension.

**NOTE** *Why these extensions? It's a fairly common practice to define filename extensions for dynamically interpreted files with the normal extension and an additional preceding letter representing the programming language used. For example, `.rhtml` is used for Ruby files that generate HTML output, `.rcss` is used for Ruby files that generate CSS stylesheets, and so on. You may also sometimes see `.phtml` files that integrate Perl or PHP, or even `.mhtml` files that use the software Mason, written in Perl.*

That's it for `mod_ruby_demo.conf`. In `mod_ruby_demo.rhtml`, we have some additional points of interest. It should look like standard HTML until ❸. At that point, we see this line: `<q><% print "Hello, world!" %></q>`. The `<%` and `%>` are the *Interpret my contents as Ruby* tags I mentioned earlier, so anything within

those tags will be interpreted as Ruby code. In this case, we're asking Ruby to print 'Hello, world!', which it does, incorporating the printed output within the eventual HTML.

You'll probably expect that we often want to print output that will be incorporated into the HTML. It would be tedious to keep using print statements, so there's a shortcut, which you can see at ❹. If you use an initial code tag of `<%=`, Ruby assumes that you want the evaluated expression to be printed. At ❺, we incorporate the value of `ENV['SERVER_NAME']` within an `<em>` tag. Just to show that what falls between `<%=` and `%>` can be any expression, at ❻, we concatenate two Strings, only caring about the result.

The printed output doesn't have to be a simple literal expression, either. At ❼, I show the value of a method call, which in this case results in the current local time. Finally, at ❼, we define a completely new method within our `.rhtml` file called `function_within_mod_ruby`, which is then available anytime afterward for use, as you can see in the code.

## The Results

When I call this script via my own webserver, I get the results shown in Figure 11-2.

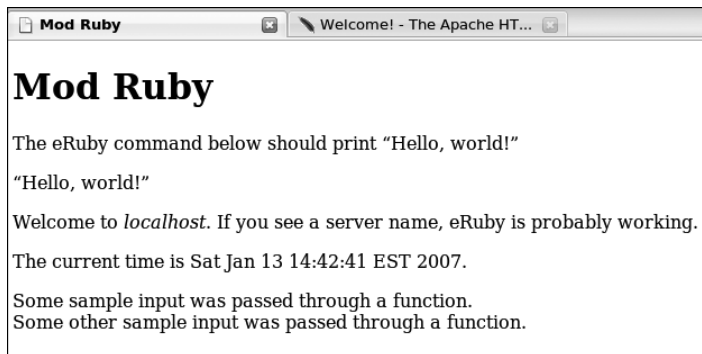


Figure 11-2: The output from `mod_ruby`

The time will obviously be different in your result, but that should be the only difference, unless you specifically browse to your machine by a name other than `localhost`, or you placed `mod_ruby_demo.rhtml` under a different directory or gave it a different name.

## Hacking the Script

This script is a modification playground. You can put any Ruby expressions you want within those `<%` or `<%=` tags. Try using `require`, either with files that you know are part of the standard library (like `cgi`) or your own files. This technique lets you define all your real “things” as classes in `.rb` library files, reserving your `.rhtml` files for display.



## #43 CSS Stylesheets, Part I (stylesheet.rcss)

Having .rhtml files is great—they allow you to dynamically generate whatever visible HTML you want. But you can use `mod_ruby` for more than that. A major portion of any well-designed modern website will be its stylesheets. One of the frustrations that web designers have to deal with is incomplete or incompatible CSS support among the various browsers. There are lots of potential solutions for those frustrations, which you can find at sites like <http://www.richinstyle.com> or <http://alistapart.com>. One obvious solution for programmers is to determine exactly which browser someone is using (via `ENV['USER_AGENT']`) and serve that user a stylesheet customized for his or her specific browser.

That's a great solution, put into practice countless times all over the Web. There is another solution, however. Why not make the stylesheet itself a dynamic .rcss file? With this approach, the stylesheet becomes polymorphic, to use a term from object-oriented programming. Every browser would refer to the same stylesheet by name and would then receive specific content that works just right for that browser. Here's an example.

### The Code

---

```
/*
This file outputs CSS data customized by user_agent via eruby.
There is a blog entry about some similar ideas at
http://blog.airbladesoftware.com/2006/12/11/cssdryer-dry-up-your-css
*/
<%
# define functions
❶ def alpha_width(user_agent)
  width =
    if (user_agent =~ /Windows/)
      11.8 if (user_agent =~ /Opera/)
      11.8 if (user_agent =~ /MSIE 6/)
      14  if (user_agent =~ /MSIE/)
      11.8
    elsif (user_agent =~ /Palm/)
      5
    else
      11.8
    end
  end
❷ return %Q[\twidth:#{width}em;]
end

❸ def beta_width(user_agent)
  width =
    if (user_agent =~ /Windows/)
      15.8 if (user_agent =~ /Opera/)
      15.8 if (user_agent =~ /MSIE 6/)
      18  if (user_agent =~ /MSIE/)
      15.8
    elsif (user_agent =~ /Palm/)
      7
```

```

        else
            15.8
        end
    ❹ return %Q[\twidth:#{width}em;]
end

❺ def margin_left(user_agent)
    margin =
        if (user_agent =~ /Mac/)
            3 if (user_agent =~ /Opera/)
            1 if (user_agent =~ /MSIE/)
            2.5 if (user_agent =~ /Safari/)
            2 if (user_agent =~ /Gecko/)
            2.7
        elsif (user_agent =~ /Windows/)
            1.5
        else
            2 if (user_agent =~ /Opera/)
            2 if (user_agent =~ /onqueror/)
            1.8 if (user_agent =~ /Galeon/)
            2.5
        end
    ❻ return %Q[margin-left:-#{margin}em;]
end
%>

❼ li { <%= margin_left(ENV['HTTP_USER_AGENT']) %> }

#navAlpha {
    position:absolute;
    ❸ <%= alpha_width(ENV['HTTP_USER_AGENT']) %>
    top:2em;
    left:2em;
    border:0.5em double #333;
    background-color:#ada;
    padding:1em;
    z-index:2;
}

#navBeta {
    position:absolute;
    ❸ <%= beta_width(ENV['HTTP_USER_AGENT']) %>
    top:2em;
    right:2em;
    border:0.5em double #333;
    background-color:#ada;
    padding:1em;
    z-index:1;
}

```

---

## How It Works

Much like `mod_ruby_demo.rhtml`, this is mainly a file with some other format (in this case a CSS stylesheet) that happens to have a little Ruby interspersed

within it. We define a new function called `alpha_width` at ❶ that determines the value of a local variable called `width`, finally returning it within a bit of text that follows CSS formatting at ❷. Note that this function takes advantage of the fact that even if statements in Ruby return a value, in this case, assigning that value into `width`. We do something similar with `beta_width` at ❸, which returns its own CSS-formatted output at ❹. Finally, we define `margin_left` at ❺, which returns CSS at ❻.

**NOTE** *Why those particular functions? I found that the CSS support variations that frustrated me the most were the differences involving margins and padding and left margins for list items, so those are the functions I made. People who know more about CSS than I do have probably found more elegant solutions, but sometimes a pretty good solution now is better than a perfect solution when it's too late. The point of this script is also to demonstrate that the polymorphic stylesheet technique can be done, but this isn't precisely how it should be done. If you care a great deal about CSS, you can use this technique to accomplish much bigger things.*

Then we use the output of `margin_left` within a CSS declaration for a list element at ❼. The stylesheet also defines two IDs called `#navAlpha` and `#navBeta`, which are just identifiers for column divs. Within `#navAlpha` at ❽, we use the output of `alpha_width` for the width of `#navAlpha`, and at ❾, we do something analogous for `#navBeta`.

## The Results

Here's the output of `stylesheet.rcss` when I browse to it using Mozilla Firefox on an Ubuntu system:

---

```
/*
This file outputs CSS data customized by user_agent via eruby.
There is a blog entry about some similar ideas at
http://blog.airbladesoftware.com/2006/12/11/cssdryer-dry-up-your-css
*/

li { margin-left:-2.5em; }

#navAlpha {
  position:absolute;
  width:11.8em;
  top:2em;
  left:2em;
  border:0.5em double #333;
  background-color:#ada;
  padding:1em;
  z-index:2;
}

#navBeta {
  position:absolute;
  width:15.8em;
```

```

top:2em;
right:2em;
border:0.5em double #333;
background-color:#ada;
padding:1em;
z-index:1;
}

```

---

You'll notice that the appropriate values are interpolated within the `li` and `width` CSS declarations. Your results may differ, since the whole point of this file is to provide different output for different browsers.

### ***Hacking the Script***

There are many hacking options for this script. One is our next script, `stylesheet2.rcss`.

## **#44 CSS Stylesheets, Part II (stylesheet2.rcss)**

In many ways, this script is just a glorified hack of `stylesheet.rcss`. I separated it mainly to allow for comparison. The major difference between the two files is that `stylesheet2.rcss` generalizes the `width` values into a single function.

### ***The Code***

---

```

/*
This file outputs CSS data customized by user_agent using eruby.
*/
<%
# define functions
❶ def width(type, user_agent)
❷   small = {
       'alpha' => 11.8,
       'beta'  => 15.8,
     }
❸   large = {
       'alpha' => 14,
       'beta'  => 18,
     }
❹   palm = {
       'alpha' => 5,
       'beta'  => 7,
     }
❺   width =
       if (user_agent =~ /Windows/)
         small[type] if (user_agent =~ /Opera/)
         small[type] if (user_agent =~ /MSIE 6/)
         large[type] if (user_agent =~ /MSIE/)
         small[type]

```

```

        elsif (user_agent =~ /Palm/)
            palm[type]
        else
            small[type]
        end
    return %Q[\twidth:#{width}em;]
end

def margin_left(user_agent)
    margin =
        if (user_agent =~ /Mac/)
            3 if (user_agent =~ /Opera/)
            1 if (user_agent =~ /MSIE/)
            2.5 if (user_agent =~ /Safari/)
            2 if (user_agent =~ /Gecko/)
            2.7
        elsif (user_agent =~ /Windows/)
            1.5
        else
            2 if (user_agent =~ /Opera/)
            2 if (user_agent =~ /onqueror/)
            1.8 if (user_agent =~ /Galeon/)
            2.5
        end
    return %Q[margin-left:-#{margin}em;]
end
%>

li { <%= margin_left(ENV['HTTP_USER_AGENT']) %> }

#navAlpha {
    position:absolute;
    <%= width('alpha', ENV['HTTP_USER_AGENT']) %>
    top:2em;
    left:2em;
    border:0.5em double #333;
    background-color:#ada;
    padding:1em;
    z-index:2;
}

#navBeta {
    position:absolute;
    <%= width('beta', ENV['HTTP_USER_AGENT']) %>
    top:2em;
    right:2em;
    border:0.5em double #333;
    background-color:#ada;
    padding:1em;
    z-index:1;
}

```

---

## How It Works

At ❶, we define the general width function, which you'll see now takes two arguments: the user agent as before, but also the type of column we're generating width for. We then have separate Hashes for small (❷), large (❸), and palm (❹). Palm devices always use their own Hash, while other browsers use either the small or large Hash, depending on the specific user agent. Then at ❺, we determine the width.<sup>3</sup> The type is simply the key for whichever Hash has already been decided on. Everything else is identical to `stylesheet.rcss`, except that calls to either `alpha_width` or `beta_width` are now calls to `width`, as described already.

## The Results

As before, here's the output with my setup.

---

```
/*
This file outputs CSS data customized by user_agent using eruby.
*/

li { margin-left:-2.5em; }

#navAlpha {
  position:absolute;
    width:11.8em;
  top:2em;
  left:2em;
  border:0.5em double #333;
  background-color:#ada;
  padding:1em;
  z-index:2;
}

#navBeta {
  position:absolute;
    width:15.8em;
  top:2em;
  right:2em;
  border:0.5em double #333;
  background-color:#ada;
  padding:1em;
  z-index:1;
}
```

---

This output is basically the same as that for `stylesheet.rcss`, except for the preliminary comments.

---

<sup>3</sup>Don't be confused by the fact that there is both a function called `width` and a local variable inside it also called `width`. Anything outside the function can't get at the variable, and the function knows to check whether or not there's a variable by that name before automatically making a recursive call to itself.

## *Hacking the Script*

As I already noted, someone with a better grasp of CSS could really customize this script to do some marvelous things. There are undoubtedly better ways to accomplish what this script does, but its point was to show the technique in broad strokes. I hope you found it useful.

## **Chapter Recap**

What was new in this chapter?

- Using Ruby for CGI scripts
- The `cgi` library
- `cgi.params`
- `mod_ruby`
- `.rhtml` and `.rcss` files
- Apache configuration files

This chapter scratches the surface of CGI programming, with Ruby or other languages. Its purpose was to get you comfortable with using Ruby to interact with a webserver and browser. Most web-based coding in Ruby makes use of the Rails framework, which we'll get to soon. But first, we'll be installing Rails with the RubyGems system, so that is the subject of our next chapter.





# 12

## RUBYGEMS AND RAILS PREPARATION



In this chapter, we'll discuss Ruby's package-management system, RubyGems, as well as Ruby's most prominent web development framework, Rails. These somewhat disparate subjects are lumped together because the "canonical" way to install Rails is with the RubyGems software. By the end of this chapter, you will be able to install Rails via RubyGems and understand the basic structure and purpose of the files that make up a Rails application.

### **RubyGems**

Good operating systems have good package-management systems—software that can keep track of the other software needed or provided by that operating system and make sure everything stays up to date. Mac OS X has Software Update, Windows has Windows Update, and the various flavors of GNU/Linux have programs like RPM, YUM, and my favorite, APT. Good programming

languages have similar programs that give programmers and other users access to vast libraries of software written in that language. Perl has the Comprehensive Perl Archive Network (<http://cpan.org>), Python has the Cheese Shop (<http://cheeseshop.python.org/pypi>), and Ruby has RubyGems (<http://rubygems.org>).

**NOTE** *The most up-to-date RubyGems information is available at <http://docs.rubygems.org>. This chapter is intended to give you a basic introduction and help you get Rails up and running. If you find your curiosity piqued about RubyGems (as I hope you will), I highly recommend making <http://docs.rubygems.org> one of your regular stops on the Web.*

RubyGems has already become the de facto method of creating stand-alone Ruby software (especially libraries and programmer utilities) for use by others in the Ruby community. With this system, you can easily use other programmers' software to make your job easier, and you can also share your own work, likely making some other programmer's job easier. Each bundle of software that is packaged together as a single unit via RubyGems is called a *gem*, and users are able to manipulate such gems with the appropriately named `gem` command.

## ***Installing RubyGems***

You will want to browse to [http://rubyforge.org/frs/?group\\_id=126](http://rubyforge.org/frs/?group_id=126) to download the most recent version of RubyGems. Files are provided in both TGZ and Zip formats, as well as gem files (for updating after you already have RubyGems installed) and patch files. For this example, I've downloaded `rubygems-0.9.2.tgz`. Uncompress the downloaded file, and use the command `ruby setup.rb` to run the `setup.rb` program found inside the newly created directory. You'll probably have to do this as the root user (if applicable to your operating system). You can type `gem -v` to see which version of RubyGems you now have installed on your system.

## ***Using RubyGems***

If you run `gem` with no arguments, it should return something similar to this:

---

RubyGems is a sophisticated package manager for Ruby. This is a basic help message containing pointers to more information.

```
Usage:
  gem -h/--help
  gem -v/--version
  gem command [arguments...] [options...]
```

```
Examples:
  gem install rake
  gem list --local
  gem build package.gemspec
  gem help install
```

Further help:

gem help commands	list all 'gem' commands
gem help examples	show some examples of usage
gem help <COMMAND>	show help on COMMAND (e.g. 'gem help install')

Further information:  
<http://rubygems.rubyforge.org>

---

## Listing Installed and Installable Gems

By executing `gem list --local`, you can see which gems are already installed on your system. Here is the result of running `gem list --local` immediately after installing RubyGems on my machine:

---

\*\*\* LOCAL GEMS \*\*\*

sources (0.0.1)

This package provides download sources for remote gem installation

---

The sources gem makes it possible for you to install other gems by maintaining retrieval information about them. We can query that information via `gem query --remote`, which outputs a very long list of available gems, shown here in highly truncated form:

---

\*\*\* REMOTE GEMS \*\*\*

abstract (1.0.0)

a library which enable you to define abstract method in Ruby

ackbar (0.1.1, 0.1.0)

ActiveRecord KirbyBase Adapter

action\_profiler (1.0.0)

A profiler for Rails controllers

---

## Installing Gems

Each individual gem is installable via the command `gem install --remote some_gem_name`. As an example, let's install the rails gem with `gem install --remote rails`.

---

```
Install required dependency rake? [Yn]
Install required dependency activesupport? [Yn]
Install required dependency activerecord? [Yn]
Install required dependency actionpack? [Yn]
Install required dependency actionmailer? [Yn]
Install required dependency actionwebservice? [Yn]
Successfully installed rails-1.2.2
Successfully installed rake-0.7.1
Successfully installed activesupport-1.4.1
Successfully installed activerecord-1.15.2
Successfully installed actionpack-1.13.2
```

```
Successfully installed actionmailer-1.3.2
Successfully installed actionwebservice-1.2.2
Installing ri documentation for rake-0.7.1...
Installing ri documentation for activesupport-1.4.1...
Installing ri documentation for activerecord-1.15.2...
Installing ri documentation for actionpack-1.13.2...
Installing ri documentation for actionmailer-1.3.2...
Installing ri documentation for actionwebservice-1.2.2...
Installing RDoc documentation for rake-0.7.1...
Installing RDoc documentation for activesupport-1.4.1...
Installing RDoc documentation for activerecord-1.15.2...
Installing RDoc documentation for actionpack-1.13.2...
Installing RDoc documentation for actionmailer-1.3.2...
Installing RDoc documentation for actionwebservice-1.2.2...
```

---

I answered Y to all requests for confirmation. You can see that the RubyGems system is intelligent enough to know which gems are required by other gems, and it will install your requested gem's dependencies automatically. We now have a functioning Rails system, which we'll explore in the next chapter.

**NOTE** *At the time of my installation, there were some minor warnings related to actionpack's ri and RDoc documentation. They had no impact on the functioning of the code and may be out of date by the time you read this book, so I have omitted them from the output examples in this chapter.*

## Updating Gems

You can update gems already present on your system with the `gem update` command. A good precursor is to query whether any gems need updating with `gem outdated`. I ran this command on one of my systems that had some out-of-date gems and I got the following results:

---

```
Bulk updating Gem source index for: http://gems.rubyforge.org
activerecord (1.15.1 < 1.15.2)
rails (1.2.1 < 1.2.2)
actionwebservice (1.2.1 < 1.2.2)
rubygems-update (0.9.1 < 0.9.2)
actionpack (1.13.1 < 1.13.2)
actionmailer (1.3.1 < 1.3.2)
activesupport (1.4.0 < 1.4.1)
```

---

Updating the gems with `gem update rails` (as root) produced this output:

---

```
Updating installed gems...
Bulk updating Gem source index for: http://gems.rubyforge.org
Attempting remote update of rails
Install required dependency activesupport? [Yn]
Install required dependency activerecord? [Yn]
Install required dependency actionpack? [Yn]
Install required dependency actionmailer? [Yn]
Install required dependency actionwebservice? [Yn]
```

```
Successfully installed rails-1.2.2
Successfully installed activesupport-1.4.1
Successfully installed activerecord-1.15.2
Successfully installed actionpack-1.13.2
Successfully installed actionmailer-1.3.2
Successfully installed actionwebservice-1.2.2
Installing ri documentation for activesupport-1.4.1...
Installing ri documentation for activerecord-1.15.2...
Installing ri documentation for actionpack-1.13.2...
Installing ri documentation for actionmailer-1.3.2...
Installing ri documentation for actionwebservice-1.2.2...
Installing RDoc documentation for activesupport-1.4.1...
Installing RDoc documentation for activerecord-1.15.2...
Installing RDoc documentation for actionpack-1.13.2...
Installing RDoc documentation for actionmailer-1.3.2...
Installing RDoc documentation for actionwebservice-1.2.2...
Gems: [rails] updated
```

---

I specifically chose rails as the gem to be updated because it is a gem with many dependencies, as we learned when installing it for the first time. Therefore, updating it shows how dependencies are automatically updated along with the requested gem. Rails depends on Active Record (a software package that provides sophisticated database access tools), so updating the rails gem also automatically updates the activerecord gem, as you can see in the update session results above. All other rails dependencies are updated in a similar manner.

**NOTE** *After updating your gems, you probably want to execute `rake rails:update` within each of your Rails application directories. This ensures that any application files you have already generated will be updated to account for the change in gems, as well.*

### Learning More About RubyGems

You can always learn more about the gem command as it exists on your own machine with `gem help` and `gem help some_specific_command`. This information will always be up to date and specific to your system.

## Rails Preparation

You should now know enough about RubyGems to have used it to install Rails. The rest of this chapter will familiarize you enough with Rails that you can start creating a Rails application in the next chapter. This book introduces Rails (with a focus on general design philosophy, rather than an exhaustive list of the API), but it would be silly to think that a few chapters could give Rails the attention it deserves. The definitive text on Rails is *Agile Web Development with Rails*, now in its second edition, by Dave Thomas, David Heinemeier Hansson (creator of Rails), and others (Pragmatic Bookshelf, 2006). Other members of the Rails community also give high praise to *Ruby for Rails* by David Alan Black (Manning Publications, 2006).

## ***What Is Rails?***

According to its website (<http://rubyonrails.org>), Rails is “an open-source web framework that’s optimized for programmer happiness and sustainable productivity. It lets you write beautiful code by favoring convention over configuration.” The site describes it as “Web development that doesn’t hurt.” What does that mean?

Since it optimizes for programmer happiness and focuses on the ability to write beautiful code, Rails is well within the design philosophy of Ruby itself. Rails picks sensible defaults for its behavior, and as long as you are willing to follow those conventions, your job as the programmer becomes relatively easy. Rails provides shortcuts and tools for you to generate a skeleton of a web application very quickly; it allows you to place each piece of code in a reasonable location within the directory structure that is appropriate to the job that code is expected to perform. This provides clean, well-ordered, reusable code that helps you develop an application quickly, efficiently, and painlessly.

## ***Other Options for Installing Rails***

Using RubyGems isn’t the only way to install Rails. There are several other options that you may want to use, for example, if you haven’t been following along with the text, or if you simply wish to install Rails via some other method. It should be noted, however, that installation as a gem is the recommended way to install Rails.

### **Via Operating System Package Manager**

Some operating systems’ package managers, such as APT, provide Rails as an installable package. For example, on my Ubuntu system, the command `apt-cache search rails` shows (among other packages) this result:

---

```
rails - MVC ruby based framework geared for web application development
```

---

If you want to use Rails, but you don’t need the most recent bleeding-edge version, and you want to avoid installing RubyGems (for whatever reason), this option may work well for you.

### **From Source**

As with any free or open source software, there is always the option to install from source. You can browse to <http://rubyonrails.org/down> for the most recent recommended source tarball.

### **Pre-Packaged**

There are also some pre-packaged versions of Rails available. For Windows, there is Instant Rails (<http://instantrails.rubyforge.org>), and for Mac OS X, there’s Locomotive (<http://locomotive.sourceforge.net>). Either of these pieces of software can get you up and running with Rails. Note that there may be subtle differences in configuration between these packages and the

default Rails setup. Consulting the website for your chosen pre-packaged application is probably your best bet when encountering such a situation.

## **Databases**

Rails needs to have access to a database program to function properly. Generally, that database is MySQL (<http://mysql.com>), although other options are possible. If you're installing via gems or through your operating system's package manager, you should install MySQL. This is probably easiest to do through your operating system's package manager. The pre-packaged Rails installers like Instant Rails and Locomotive generally come with their own pre-configured databases; however, for all subsequent examples, I'll assume you installed Rails as a gem and you're using MySQL.

## **The Structure of a Rails Application**

Rails operates under a design philosophy (or *pattern*) for software called Model-View-Controller (MVC), developed by Norwegian computer scientist Trygve Reenskaug<sup>1</sup> while he was working at Xerox PARC in the late 1970s. It was originally developed in relation to traditional graphical user interfaces (GUIs), but MVC has recently become very popular in web development. The basics of this pattern are as follows. The *Model* represents the data and is an object of some sort. The *View* is a way of presenting data, whether directly to a user or to some other computer, or as any other type of output. The *Controller* is the traffic cop or manager that keeps track of any requested actions, queries or manipulates the Model to get or update data, and gives the View whatever information it needs to format the data as necessary.

Let's consider an example to help explain this pattern. Back in our second currency conversion script (“#19 Currency Conversion, Advanced (currency\_converter2.rb)” on page 90), we used data retrieved from an RSS feed. In MVC terms, that data is the Model. That same data could have been presented (or Viewed) on a traditional HTML web page, as a plaintext file for download, or as a YAML file. In all of these different examples, the Model would stay the same and would be something like ExchangeRate or CurrencyUnit, depending on how the application was designed. The Controller would also be the same, and it would be responsible for retrieving the data from a server. We'd probably call it the Download Controller, since it would be used to download data from a server.

For the sake of argument, let's say that we also wanted to present our Model in some completely different way, perhaps written down on paper. The written piece of paper would use a different Controller, one that deals with paper instead of servers. Perhaps we'd call it the Pencil Controller. The View would also be different in each of these examples: RSS, HTML, ASCII, WrittenOnAPieceOfPaper, and so on. These are all simply different ways of presenting the same data, which is the Model. For example, our Rails application in the next chapter has Views for both HTML and RSS display of photographs and related information.

---

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Reenskaug is online at <http://heim.ifi.uio.no/~trygver>.

## Generating a Rails Application

You create a Rails application with the command `rails application_name`. If you execute `rails rails_sample_app` in a suitable workspace directory, you should see a very long output similar to the following truncated version:

---

```
$ rails rails_sample_app
  create
  create  app/controllers
  create  app/helpers
  create  app/models
  create  app/views/layouts
  (several lines deleted)
  create  public/javascripts/application.js
  create  doc/README_FOR_APP
  create  log/server.log
  create  log/production.log
  create  log/development.log
  create  log/test.log
```

---

A large number of directories and files are automatically created for you. We'll briefly touch on the `app`, `doc`, `lib`, `log`, `public`, `script`, and `test` directories. The `app` directory contains the code you'll write for your application: Models, Views, Controllers, and so on. The `doc` directory contains documentation. Nothing is initially created in the `lib` directory, but you'll put generic library files (such as extensions that add new methods to existing classes) here. The `log` directory contains the application log files, which are split up for production, development, and testing. The `public` directory contains non-Ruby files that are viewed or used in a web browser, such as static HTML files, images, JavaScript files, CSS stylesheets, and the like. The `script` directory contains useful small programs meant to be run by the developer or administrator of the application. The `test` directory contains files that allow you to easily automate testing of the application.

We'll discuss what each of these files and directories does shortly, but first, let's test our application to make sure it's running properly.

## Viewing Your Rails Application

Execute `cd rails_sample_app` to navigate to the newly created directory `rails_sample_app`, and execute the command `ruby script/server`. This starts Rails' built-in webserver that it uses for development purposes. You should see output similar to the following:

**Starting  
WEBrick**

---

```
$ ruby script/server
=> Booting WEBrick...
=> Rails application started on http://0.0.0.0:3000
=> Ctrl-C to shutdown server; call with --help for options
[2007-02-10 12:43:54] INFO WEBrick 1.3.1
```



```
[2007-02-10 12:43:54] INFO  ruby 1.8.4 (2005-12-24) [i486-linux]
[2007-02-10 12:43:54] INFO  WEBrick::HTTPServer#start: pid=27162 port=3000
```

Your specifics may be different. The pid value will almost certainly be different, and your Ruby version may be a later one. Your webserver may also be something else, such as Mongrel, which is a newer webserver for Rails. (WEBrick is the older webserver that serves as a default fallback.) What is unlikely to be different is the port: 3000. You can test your application by browsing to that port on your local machine (just point your favorite web browser to `http://localhost:3000`). Figure 12-1 shows what that URL looked like when I viewed it on my Ubuntu machine with the Epiphany web browser.



Figure 12-1: Viewing your application in a web browser with the URL `http://localhost:3000`

As you can see, this page provides useful information about how to set up your application as well as links to Rails-related information on the Web. Two points of particular interest are that the database connection is described in the YAML file `config/database.yml` and that `script/generate` is available to help you generate Models and Controllers.

## Basics for Generating Applications

Within the directory `rails_sample_app`, execute the command `ruby script/generate model ExchangeRate`, following our MVC example earlier. We're telling Rails that we want to *generate* something, the thing we want to make is a *Model*, and the name of the Model is *ExchangeRate*. Here are the results:

### Making a Model

---

```
ruby script/generate model ExchangeRate
  exists app/models/
  exists test/unit/
  exists test/fixtures/
  create app/models/exchange_rate.rb
  create test/unit/exchange_rate_test.rb
  create test/fixtures/exchange_rates.yml
  create db/migrate
  create db/migrate/001_create_exchange_rates.rb
```

---

As well as some useful testing- and database-related files, this command created a Ruby file called `app/models/exchange_rate.rb`, the contents of which are the following:

---

```
class ExchangeRate < ActiveRecord::Base
end
```

---

There doesn't seem to be a lot there, but appearances can be deceiving. The Model follows the Rails naming convention of using CamelCase for class names and `multi_word_separated_lowercase` for filenames. You'll also notice that `ExchangeRate` is a child of something called `ActiveRecord::Base`. Active Record is the software that gives Rails its intuitive database interaction. It defines Models (which are classes) such that each instance represents a record in a database table. Not only that, but the name of the table is always the plural of the class. Therefore, the file `exchange_rate.rb` defines a class called `ExchangeRate`, each instance of which is stored in a database table called `exchanges_rates`. This all takes place under the hood—Rails does it for you automatically, and it is even smart enough to know that the plural of `person` is `people`, the plural of `baby` is `babies`, and so on.

**NOTE** *Active Record provides what's called object-relational mapping (ORM). ORM enables a specific instance of a class to represent a record in a database table. For those who are curious, each field in the table also represents an instance variable in the appropriate class. We'll talk about this topic more in the next chapter.*

Our Model doesn't do anything yet. We won't start adding to Models until the next chapter, so let's make a Controller with the command `ruby script/generate controller server_access rss html ascii yaml`, telling Rails that this time we want to generate a Controller and that it should have the Views `rss`, `html`, `ascii`, and `yaml`. Here are the results:

### Making a Controller

---

```
ruby script/generate controller server_access rss html ascii yaml
  exists app/controllers/
  exists app/helpers/
```

---

```
create app/views/server_access
exists test/functional/
create app/controllers/server_access_controller.rb
create test/functional/server_access_controller_test.rb
create app/helpers/server_access_helper.rb
create app/views/server_access/rss.rhtml
create app/views/server_access/html.rhtml
create app/views/server_access/ascii.rhtml
create app/views/server_access/yaml.rhtml
```

---

This output is slightly more complicated. We see that we now have a Controller called `server_access_controller.rb` in `app/controllers/`, and we now have the files `rss.rhtml`, `html.rhtml`, `ascii.rhtml`, and `yaml.rhtml` inside `app/views/server_access/`. Let's take a look at `app/controllers/server_access_controller.rb`.

---

```
class ServerAccessController < ApplicationController

  def rss
  end

  def html
  end

  def ascii
  end

  def yaml
  end
end
```

---

We now see another class definition, this time descended from `ApplicationController`, and several empty methods whose names match the names of our requested Views. Now point your browser at `http://localhost:3000/server_access` and see what's there (Figure 12-2).



Figure 12-2: Unknown action

What happened? We browsed to the same top-level URL for our Rails application, this time adding the name of our new `server_access` Controller, and our application complained. Let's try the URL `http://localhost:3000/server_access/rss` instead. My result is shown in Figure 12-3.

Then try using `http://localhost:3000/server_access/ascii` as the URL (Figure 12-4).



Figure 12-3: The RSS View's default result

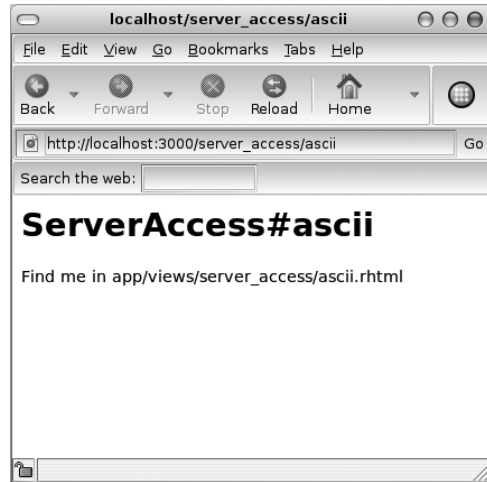


Figure 12-4: The ASCII View's default result

In the latter two cases, Rails told us which file provides content for the URL requested. We browse to the top-level Rails application and provide the Controller name as the first directory and the View name as the next element in the URL. This means that in our first example (`http://localhost:3000/server_access`), we provided no View. How will Rails interpret that?

Similar to how the default HTML file in a directory is `index.html`, the default View used when none is explicitly provided is `index`. However, `ServerAccessController` does not have a method called `index`, so it complained. Don't worry—we'll create an `index` View in our sample application in the next chapter.

However, the URL `http://localhost:3000/server_access/ascii` used a View that we know we have, `ascii`, and its results told us to look inside `app/views/server_access/ascii.rhtml`. Let's do so.

---

```
<h1>ServerAccess#ascii</h1>
<p>Find me in app/views/server_access/ascii.rhtml</p>
```

---

There's just enough HTML content there to provide the visible information. The file informs us that the Controller name is the class, and the View name is the method, using the `#` sign to indicate that it's an instance method (the `#` sign is often used in the Ruby community to distinguish an instance method from a class method). To write a real Rails application, we'll start filling these empty classes, methods, and HTML stub files with real content, and we'll also connect to a database to retrieve our information.

Since our View files are `.rhtml` files, not just static `.html` files, we can use techniques similar to those we've already seen in the context of `mod_ruby` to put Ruby code directly into our `.rhtml` files.<sup>2</sup> This will be crucial in the next chapter.

## Chapter Recap

What was new in this chapter?

- Package management
- Installing RubyGems
- Installing, updating, and querying specific gem package files
- Rails basics
- Installing Rails
- The MVC pattern
- ORM basics
- Viewing your first Rails application
- Generating Models and Controllers
- The `index` View used as the default View
- Distinguishing instance methods from class methods with `#`
- HTML stub files for Views

With just that information, you could create some interesting applications that do a variety of dynamic tasks. However, the real power of Rails stems from its ability to access a database and manipulate content. That will be the focus of our next and final chapter.

---

<sup>2</sup> Technically, `mod_ruby` uses `eRuby`, while Rails uses `erb`; these are two different ways to embed Ruby code within markup, but they are very similar in practice.



# 13

## A SIMPLE RAILS PROJECT



In the previous chapter, you installed Rails and became acquainted with the basics of the internal structure of a Rails application.

In this chapter, we'll be creating a Rails app that is a bit more complex—it retrieves multiple instances of a given data type from a database and iterates over those instances for presentation. We'll also look into some more sophisticated ways of organizing code within Rails.

### Creating the Application

For our purposes, any simple application will suffice. I've chosen to create a photo album that will display a few photos from my wedding. It will be able to display all of the photos in a list as thumbnail images with accompanying descriptive text, as well as display each individual image in greater detail. It will also provide navigation tools to allow the user to jump around within the

list. All of this will be accomplished via HTML, the default presentation format for the Web. In addition, the application will provide an RSS feed (the XML format we used as a data source in `currency_converter2.rb`) that will describe all the images.

## **Initial Creation**

We'll create our application (called `photo_album`) within an appropriate directory with the command `rails photo_album`. Then type `cd photo_album` and `ruby script/server` to start the app. We can verify that Rails is running by browsing to `http://localhost:3000`, as we did in "Viewing Your Rails Application" on page 230.

## **Preparing the Database**

For this application, I'll be using the MySQL database. I'll assume that you can get MySQL running on your machine and are able to do simple queries. If that's not the case, you may want to brush up on MySQL with a book specifically on that topic, such as *Managing and Using MySQL*, by George Reese, Randy Jay Yarger, and Tim King (O'Reilly, 2002). If you are using a database other than MySQL, I'll assume you are able to work out the subtle differences in the resulting Rails app on your own, with the help of the documentation available from your database vendor and at `http://rubyonrails.org`.

One thing you may need to do is alter the `config/database.yml` file, especially if you're using a database program other than MySQL. I had to edit the value for `socket:` to be `/var/run/mysqld/mysqld.sock`. If you get the error `No such file or directory - /tmp/mysql.sock`, a mismatch in the socket description is the most likely cause. Rails is looking for the MySQL socket file at `/tmp/mysql.sock`, and you need to set it to the right file location. You can find the location of the socket file with this command (preferably as root) on a Unix-like operating system: `find / mysql.sock | grep mysql.sock`.

## **Adding Data**

The photo album app differs from the simple structural example in Chapter 12 in that it has real data in a database, which we will now assume is handling that data. One of the most convenient ways to manage data for Rails (especially for simple test data like ours), is by using a migration. A *migration* in Rails is a description of data in Ruby that is created and deleted as needed. Let's take a look at our migration file at `db/migrate/001_create_photos.rb`:

### **Migrations**

---

```
class CreatePhotos < ActiveRecord::Migration
```

- ```
  ❶ COLUMN_NAMES = [:description, :image_path, :title, :photographer]
  ❷ SAMPLE_PHOTOS = [
```



```

    {
      :title      => 'Tonawanda Creek',
      :description => 'A waterway in Tonawanda, NY.',
      :image_path => '001_creek.jpg',
      :photographer => 'Vince',
    },
    {
      :title      => 'Travis',
      :description => %q[My friend Travis. His wife Laura's head is partly in
view as well.],
      :image_path => '002_travis.jpg',
      :photographer => 'Vince',
    },
    {
      :title      => 'Liam & Ducks',
      :description => 'My nephew Liam with some ducks.',
      :image_path => '003_liam.jpg',
      :photographer => 'Vince',
    },
  ],
]

```

```

❸ def self.up

❹   create_table :photos do |t|
     COLUMN_NAMES.each { |c| t.column c, :text }
   end

❺   SAMPLE_PHOTOS.each do |sp|
     p = Photo.create(sp)
     p.save!
   end

end

❻ def self.down
  drop_table :photos
end
end

```

---

At ❶ and ❷, we define Constants for both the `COLUMN_NAMES` and `SAMPLE_PHOTOS`, which we use for data insertion. `COLUMN_NAMES` should be obvious, and each element of `SAMPLE_PHOTOS` is a Hash representing a database record, in which each key is the Symbol representation of a column name and the value is whatever data will be in that database field. At ❸, we define the `self.up` method, which contains all the code that will run when we perform our migration.

One of the most important tasks within `self.up` is the creation of the table, which is done at ❹. The `create_table` method takes a Symbol argument for the table name and a block describing what should be done to that table. In our case, `create_table` loops through the `COLUMN_NAMES`, creating a column for table `t`, named with the current value of `c`, of type `text`.

**NOTE** *All our database table fields are of type text. If we had more complex data with different types, we would probably replace the Array COLUMN\_NAMES with a Hash called COLUMNS, in which each key would be the column's name and each key's value would be the column's data type.*

At ⑤, we create a new Photo instance called p; it is based on each member of SAMPLE\_PHOTOS, which we call sp in turn. We then save! each version of p, which stores its data into the database table. At ⑥, we show that when we're done with this migration, the :photos table will be dropped. We execute the migration with the command rake db:migrate. Let's examine the results.

**NOTE** *Note that save! is named with a bang, because it is destructive (since it saves to the database). Also, running rake db:migrate runs whichever of your defined migrations is needed to make your migrations current. We only have one, so that's the only one that runs.*

---

```
== CreatePhotos: migrating
=====
-- create_table(:photos)
   -> 0.1226s
== CreatePhotos: migrated (0.3359s)
=====
```

---

The migration was successful. We can double check that by querying MySQL (or whichever database you're using).

**NOTE** *At the prompt, I entered the password I have already set up for my specific MySQL installation. Yours is whatever you have already chosen, or it may be unset. This will depend on the specific way you installed MySQL on your machine.*

---

```
echo 'select * from photo_album_development.photos' | mysql -uroot -p
Enter password:
id      description      image_path      title      photographer
1       A waterway in   001_creek.jpg   Tonawanda  Tonawanda
2       My friend      002_travis.jpg  Travis     Vince
3       My nephew      003_liam.jpg    Liam &     Ducks      Vince
      Liam with some ducks.
```

---

We can now see that we have data in the database for use in our Rails app. Let's move on to creating the other portions of the app.

## ***Creating the Model and Controllers***

As you've already seen in the previous chapter, Rails makes it very easy to create Models, Controllers, and Views. For the photo album application, we'll be creating a Model called *Photo* and Controllers called *Album* and *Feed*.

### **Creating the Photo Model**

Within the photo\_album directory, execute ruby script/generate model photo, which creates the Model file app/models/photo.rb.

## Creating the Album and Feed Controllers

Next, within `photo_album`, execute `ruby script/generate controller album index show` and `ruby script/generate controller feed images`. These create the Album Controller with the `index` and `show` Views and the Feed Controller with the `images` View, implemented by multiple files within the `app/controllers` and `app/views` subdirectories.

## Dissecting the Application

Now that we have created the basic skeleton of our application, let's examine how it works. Think of this section as similar to the sections "The Code" or "How It Works" in previous chapters.

### *Dissecting the Photo Model*

Our photo album app has one basic piece of data, represented in a Model called `Photo`. Let's add some code to what's already there and explore what it does. Edit `app/models/photo.rb` to match the following:

---

```
class Photo < ActiveRecord::Base

  =begin explain
  Closely follows Object-Relational Model, each instance is
  also a record in the table called 'photos'.
  =end

  ❶ def next_id()
    return Photo.minimum(:id) if last_id?
    next_id = @attributes['id'].to_i.succ
    next_id.succ! until Photo.find(next_id)
    next_id.to_s
  end

  ❷ def prev_id()
    return Photo.maximum(:id) if first_id?
    prev_id = (@attributes['id'].to_i - 1)
    prev_id = (prev_id - 1) until Photo.find(prev_id)
    prev_id.to_s
  end

  private

  ❸ def last_id?()
    @attributes['id'] == Photo.maximum(:id).to_s
  end

  ❹ def first_id?()
    @attributes['id'] == Photo.minimum(:id).to_s
  end

end
```

---

At ❶ and ❷, we have the `next_id` and `prev_id` methods, respectively. Within them, we make free use of built-in Rails methods. One of these is `minimum`, which is available to all Models; it takes a Symbol argument that establishes which attribute of that Model the minimum status will be based on. Another method is the `find` method, which is a wrapper for SELECT statements in SQL that takes specific arguments for filtering. Also available in Rails is the `@attributes` instance variable, which is a Hash whose keys are the field names from the database table and whose values are that column's content for that particular instance of the Model. The Photo instance representing the database record with the ID 2 would have an `@attributes['id']` equal to 2, for example.

At ❸ and ❹, we also have two private predicates that inform us if our Photo instance is the one with the `last_id?` and `first_id?`, respectively. We accomplish this by performing some simple equality testing with the known maximum and minimum id values. Note that the returned id values from `maximum` and `minimum` are Integers, while the values stored in `@attributes` are Strings. The `photo.rb` Model therefore makes liberal use of the `to_i` and `to_s` methods as needed.

## ***Dissecting the Controllers***

Now that we understand our Photo Model, we need to interact with it in some way. That's the job of one or more Controllers. Our photo album app has two Controllers, Album and Feed, each of which have their own Views.

### **Dissecting the Album Controller**

Similar to what we did with the Photo Model, let's add code to the Album Controller and explore what it does. Edit `app/controllers/album_controller.rb` to match the following:

---

```
class AlbumController < ApplicationController

  =begin explain
  This metaprogramming directive allows us to define a specific
  helper called FooterHelper in app/helpers/footer_helper.rb
  that can be shared among multiple Controllers.
  =end
  ❶  helper :footer

  =begin explain
  As with HTML files, this is the default implicit behavior.
  all_photos is found in app/controllers/application.rb
  =end
  ❷  def index()
      @photos = all_photos()
    end

  =begin explain
  Set up any instance variables to be used in the View
  or Helper, such as @photo here.
  =end
```

```
③ def show()  
  @photo = Photo.find(params[:id])  
end  
  
end
```

---

As is customary in an MVC application, `album_controller.rb` will be responsible for manipulating and processing data in ways that pertain to our photo album. In this particular case, `album_controller.rb`'s methods generally redirect to something defined in another file or simply provide a useful shortcut.

For this demonstration Rails app, I wanted to have an HTML footer that would remain consistent across multiple pages within the Album Controller. The question is then how to implement that feature and where to place its code. One answer would be to duplicate the necessary code in every View that has the footer, but that would be bad design. A better option would be to place the footer creation code in the appropriate Controller and simply call that code in every View where it's needed.

However, there are situations in which you'd want the code outside of the base Controller. What if you want to implement a common feature across multiple Controllers? Each Controller in a Rails app is a child of the next file we'll look at (`app/controllers/application.rb`), so putting the code in that file is an option. Another option is to use what Rails calls Helpers. *Helpers* are add-ons to the MVC framework and are similar to the mixin concept we used in `to_lang.rb` in Chapter 10. At ❶ in `album_controller.rb`, we see from the RDoc that our footer-related code is in a distinct file called `app/helpers/footer_helper.rb`, and we can make use of that code within `album_controller.rb` by simply including the line `helper :footer`. If we had a Helper at `app/helpers/credit_card_authorization_helper.rb`, we could make use of its code in a Controller with the line `helper :credit_card_authorization`, and so on. In true object-oriented fashion, this allows us to organize code according to problem domain or topic in separate files, make use of them where needed, and not have to worry about the specific implementations. Of course, we'll discuss the implementation of the footer code when we get to `app/helpers/footer_helper.rb`, but it's very convenient that `album_controller.rb` needn't concern itself with that level of detail.

**NOTE** *Helpers are even defined as Modules, just as traditional mixins are. This application has a lot of code in Helper files, which I'll describe shortly, after I talk about the Controllers.*

Along with the Helper inclusion at ❶, we also have definitions of methods corresponding to the `index` and `show` Views at ❷ and ❸. The `show` method at ❸ is merely a shortcut for the built-in Rails method `find`. In this case, it takes an argument of the `id` parameter passed into the web application, which is available to us as `params[:id]`. This is how we show the specific requested photo. The `index` method at ❷ is (as we know from Chapter 12) the default method called when none is explicitly provided. It merely establishes an instance variable within the Controller called `@photos`. To do so, it calls a method named `all_photos`, which is defined in our next file, `app/controllers/application.rb`.

**NOTE** *The `params Hash` in a Rails app is equivalent to `cgi.params`, which we saw in the `simple CGI` script in Chapter 11.*

## Dissecting the Application Controller

The `application.rb` file in any Rails application describes the superclass of all Controllers. If there is any behavior or characteristic that you want to be truly universal across all Controllers, this is the place to put it.

**NOTE** *Note that you can modularize your code (i.e., break it down by topic into Helpers) and still make it universal. Just organize your code into Helpers, and then include all of those Helpers with helper lines in `app/controllers/application.rb`. Easy.*

Edit `app/controllers/application.rb` to match the following:

---

```
# Filters added to this Controller apply to all Controllers in the
application.
# Likewise, all the methods added will be available for all Controllers.

class ApplicationController < ActionController::Base
  # Pick a unique cookie name to distinguish our session data from others'
  session :session_key => '_photo_album_session_id'

  =begin explain
  Now all_photos() can be used in any other Controller.
  =end
  ❶ def all_photos()
    Photo.find(:all)
  end

end
```

---

All we've done in this file is define the `all_photos` method at ❶. This is arguably silly, in that it only provides a slightly shorter way to call `Photo.find(:all)`. However, this is primarily a demonstration app, and it does show that `all_photos` is now available to any Controller, anywhere in the application.

**NOTE** *The session information is automatic, and it helps Rails disambiguate among multiple users that are using the app at the same time. For example, I can browse the entire list of photos with the Album's index View, while you simultaneously look in greater detail at the second photo with Album's show View.*

## Dissecting the Feed Controller

The Album Controller is not our only Controller. I also want to provide an RSS feed of information about these images, and the Feed Controller is our way of doing so. Just like `album_controller.rb`, it descends from `app/controllers/application.rb`, so it has the `all_photos` method available to it.

Edit `app/controllers/feed_controller.rb` to match the following:

---

```
class FeedController < ApplicationController

  ❶ CONTENT_TYPE = 'application/rss+xml'

  =begin explain
  all_photos() found in app/controllers/application.rb
  =end
  ❷ def images()
      @photos = all_photos()
      @headers['Content-Type'] = CONTENT_TYPE
    end

end
```

---

At ❶, we define a constant for the `CONTENT_TYPE`, declaring something appropriate for an RSS feed. Then at ❷, we declare our only method, `images`. It establishes the `@photos` instance variable just as `album_controller.rb` does, and also sets `@headers['Content-Type']`. The `@headers` variable is, as you might expect, the variable used to define the HTTP headers of the application's output. Before moving on to the Views, let's see what's going on in our Helper files.

## ***Dissecting the Helpers***

Models, Controllers, and Views are not the only types of files in a Rails app. I touched on the concept of Helpers in our discussion of the Photo Model, but now we'll explore them in depth.

### **Dissecting the Album Helper**

Edit `app/helpers/album_helper.rb` to match the following:

---

```
module AlbumHelper

  ❶ CONFIRM_MESSAGE = %q[Are you sure you want to see the full list?]

  NUMBER_OF_ROW_TYPES_FOR_DISPLAY = 3

  LISTING_HEADER_COLUMNS = <<END_OF_HERE_DOC
  <tr>
    <th>Image</th>
    <th>Description</th>
  </tr>
  END_OF_HERE_DOC

  ❷ IMAGE_STYLE = {
    :base => 'margin-bottom: 0.5em; padding: 0.5em;',
    :thumb => 'height:48px; width:64px;'
  }
```

```

=end explain
Outputs a CSS classname used for prettification.
=end
❶ def row_class_from_index(i)
  'row' + ((i % NUMBER_OF_ROW_TYPES_FOR_DISPLAY) + 1).to_s
end

❷ def show_listing_header_columns()
  LISTING_HEADER_COLUMNS
end

❸ def show_photo(photo)
  image_tag(
    photo.image_path,
    :alt => "Photo of #{photo.title}"
  )
end

❹ def show_thumbnail_for_list(photo)
  image_tag(
    photo.image_path,
    :alt => "Photo of #{photo.title}",
    :style => IMAGE_STYLE[:thumb]
  )
end

❺ def page_title()
  @photo ? @photo.title : controller.action_name
end

❻ def title_with_thumbnail(photo)
  [h(photo.title), show_thumbnail_for_list(photo)].join(
    ApplicationHelper::HTML_BREAK
  )
end

end

```

---

At ❶, we start defining some useful Constants, including one of our old friends, a Hash with Symbol keys, at ❷. At ❸, we define a method called `row_class_from_index`, whose RDoc explains that it merely outputs text representing the appropriate CSS class. This allows us to change the CSS style of a row easily, and the modulus makes it repeat. At ❹, we have a method called `show_listing_header_columns` that simply returns the corresponding Constant. The `show_photo` method at ❺ uses the built-in Rails method `image_tag`, which takes the location of the image (the `src` attribute of the `img` tag, in other words) as the first argument. The second argument is a Hash whose keys will be any additional `img` attributes and whose values will be used as the values for the corresponding `img` attributes. The location (i.e., `img src`) is the photo's `image_path`, and since all `img` tags should have an `alt` attribute, we provide that, with an appropriate identifying String based on the photo's title. At ❻, we



define `show_thumbnail_for_list`, which is a Helper method for presentation that is very similar to `show_photo`. It only differs by including a style attribute for the resulting `img` tag, whose value is `IMAGE_STYLE[:thumb]`.

**NOTE** *One easy way to refactor this code (meaning to change its internal structure without changing its overall behavior) would be to combine `show_photo` and `show_thumbnail_for_list` into a single `show_photo` method that takes an optional third argument, which declares whether or not the photo is a thumbnail. You can read more about the process of refactoring in Martin Fowler's book *Refactoring (Addison-Wesley Professional, 1999)*.*

Next, at ⑦, we define `page_title`. If there is a `@photo` present, `page_title` will return that `@photo`'s title. If there is no `@photo`, it will fall back to the `action_name` of the controller. What does that mean? The `@photo.title` should be straightforward. The `action_name` is essentially the name of the View. This means that when we browse using the index View (or `action_name`) and have not yet selected a specific photo to view in greater detail with the show View, the `page_title` will simply be `index`.

Finally, at ⑧, we define `title_with_thumbnail`. It uses several other methods and Constants. Rails has a built-in method called `h`, which formats its input for HTML presentation. For example, `h(&)` returns `&amp;`. This is useful in our app because we have a photo whose title is *Liam & Ducks*, but we don't want that ampersand to break the HTML validity of the output. The `title_with_thumbnail` method uses our home-brewed `show_thumbnail_for_list` and joins it with `page_title`, using whatever we've defined `HTML_BREAK` to be within the `ApplicationHelper`.

### WHERE TO PUT CODE: CONTROLLER OR HELPER (OR ELSEWHERE)?

As you can see, the Album Helper is noticeably bigger than the Controller it aids. When should you put code in the Controller, and when should you put it in a Helper? That's a good question. When there isn't a clear division by topic, such as for the `footer_helper.rb` below, it becomes more difficult to answer. When something is truly fundamental to the data, such as the Photo methods that directly pertain to `ids`, it probably belongs in the Model. When something is completely presentation-specific, it can probably go in the appropriate View. However, it's considered bad style to have too much dynamic content in a View file. Anything more complicated than looping over a set of items should probably be abstracted into a method, rather than being in the View itself.

That leaves either the Controller or a Helper. As you can see, I like to have a fairly sparse, minimalist Controller—critics might say that makes my Helpers too busy. Other coders might put many methods directly in the Controller, making little use of Helpers at all. Still others might have broken anything related to thumbnail images into yet another Helper called `thumbnail_helper.rb`.

There are many options. As long as you don't put presentation-related methods in your Model, and you keep your Views relatively free of code that actually *does stuff* (instead including mostly code that *presents stuff*), you're probably doing fine.

## Dissecting the ApplicationHelper

We've already seen that `album_helper.rb` expects a definition for `HTML_BREAK` within `ApplicationHelper`. Let's see how it does it.

Edit `app/helpers/application.rb` to match the following:

---

```
# Methods added to this helper will be available to all templates in the
application.
module ApplicationHelper

  HTML_BREAK = '<br />'

end
```

---

There isn't much there—it's basically just the `Constant` definition we expected. Why is it defined here, and not in `AlbumHelper`? Because we'll also need it in `FooterHelper`. Note that while `Controllers` automatically descend from `ApplicationController`, `Helpers` don't automatically descend from `ApplicationHelper`.

## Dissecting the FeedHelper

Edit `app/helpers/feed_helper.rb` to match the following:

---

```
module FeedHelper

  ❶ AUTHOR      = 'Kevin C. Baird'

  DESCRIPTION = %q{Photos from Jenn and Kevin's Wedding}

  ICON        = {
    :url      => 'rails.png',
    :width    => 77,
    :height   => 69,
  }

  LANGUAGE    = 'en-us'

  ❷ LINK_OPTIONS_DEFAULTS = {
    :only_path => false,
    :controller => 'album',
  }

  ❸ LINK_OPTIONS = {
    :index => LINK_OPTIONS_DEFAULTS.merge( { :action => 'index' } ),
    :show => LINK_OPTIONS_DEFAULTS.merge( { :action => 'show' } ),
  }

  RSS_OPTIONS = {
    'version' => '2.0',
    'xmlns:dc' => 'http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/'
  }

end
```

```

TITLE      = 'Baird/Cornish Wedding Photos'

❷ def feed_description()
  h( DESCRIPTION )
end

❸ def rss_url_for_image(image)
  return url_for( FeedHelper::LINK_OPTIONS[:index] ) unless image
  url_for( FeedHelper::LINK_OPTIONS[:show].merge( { :id => image } ) )
end

end

```

---

At ❶, we start with our usual Constant declarations. These include a declaration at ❷ for `LINK_OPTIONS_DEFAULTS`, which stores information common across multiple types of links, and one for `LINK_OPTIONS` at ❸, which uses these defaults and also adds a pair whose key is `:action` and whose value is either `:index` or `:show`, depending on how it's called. These `:index` and `:show` values represent Views within the Album Controller, of course, as the value for `:controller` in `LINK_OPTIONS_DEFAULTS` indicates. `FeedHelper` also defines several other Constants with values useful for an RSS feed.

At ❹ we have a method called `feed_description`, which simply passes the value of the `DESCRIPTION` Constant through the Rails built-in method `h`, which we've already seen and which formats for HTML presentation. Finally, `rss_url_for_image` at ❺ is a wrapper we've built around the Rails method `url_for`, which behaves as its name suggests. (It is described in greater detail at <http://api.rubyonrails.org/classes/ActionView/Helpers/UrlHelper.html#M000484>.) If an `image` is not passed in, `rss_url_for_image` returns the `url_for` for the `LINK_OPTIONS` appropriate for an `:index` View. If there is an `image`, `rss_url_for_image` returns the `url_for` for the `LINK_OPTIONS` appropriate for a `:show` View and includes the `:id` of the image to be shown.

**NOTE** *The behavior of `rss_url_for_image`, which differs depending on whether or not there is an `image`, is similar to the potential melding of `AlbumHelper.show_photo` and `AlbumHelper.show_thumbnail_for_list` proposed earlier.*

## Dissecting the FooterHelper

Edit `app/helpers/footer_helper.rb` to match the following:

---

```

module FooterHelper
❶  BAR_SEPARATOR = %q[ | ]

  RSS = {

    :icons => %w[feed-icon16x16.png xmlicon.png],

    :link_options => {
      :action      => %q[images],

```

**The link\_to  
and image\_tag  
Methods**

```
        :controller => %q[feed],
      }
    }

    ❷ def show_footer()
      '<p id="rails_img_wrapper">' +
      [rails_link_to_top, rss_icon_links].join(
        ApplicationHelper::HTML_BREAK
      ) + '</p>'
    end

    private

    ❸ def rails_link_to_top()
      link_to(
        image_tag(
          'rails.png',
          :alt => 'Home',
          :border => 0,
          :id => 'rails_img',
          :style => AlbumHelper::IMAGE_STYLE[:base]
        ), :controller => 'album'
      )
    end

    ❹ def rss_icon_links()
      RSS[:icons].map do |icon|
        link_to(
          image_tag(
            icon,
            :alt => 'RSS Feed',
            :class => 'xmlicon'
          ), RSS[:link_options]
        )
      end.join(BAR_SEPARATOR)
    end
  end
end
```

---

At ❶, we define two Constants, `BAR_SEPARATOR` and `RSS`. The `BAR_SEPARATOR` Constant is a simple delimiter for presentation, while `RSS` is another Hash with Symbol keys that details information pertinent to `:icons` and `:link_options`, respectively. In these definitions, I've used `%q[]` instead of single quotes to define `BAR_SEPARATOR`, just as a reminder that the option is available.<sup>1</sup>

At ❷, our main public method, `show_footer`, just returns the outputs of the private methods `rails_link_to_top` and `rss_icon_links`, joined on the `HTML_BREAK` Constant that we've already seen, and all wrapped in an HTML paragraph tag with the id `rails_img_wrapper`. We create our paragraph tag the old-fashioned way—by outputting plaintext. You can still do that in Rails, although the availability of methods like `url_for` and `image_tag` make the practice uncommon.

---

<sup>1</sup>For example, you might want to use `%q[]` instead of quotation marks if the String to be defined included quotation marks; some programmers might simply prefer using `%q[]`.

So what do the private methods do? The `rails_link_to_top` method at ❸ just creates a link with the Rails built-in `link_to`, which takes the link argument and a Hash describing the `:controller` to be used: 'album', in this case. The Hash can also describe the `:action`, if needed. The `rss_icon_links` method at ❹ maps an operation onto each member of `RSS[:icons]`. That operation is also a call to `link_to`, where the linked image is the current element within `RSS[:icons]` (called `icon`) and the Hash describing the `:controller` and `:action` is always `RSS[:link_options]`. The Array resulting from the `map` is then joined on the `BAR_SEPARATOR`.

## Dissecting the Album Controller's Views

Now, let's move on to the Views. Since we've already defined so much of the application in methods within either the Model, Controller, or various Helpers, our Views should be fairly sparse. View files differ from the files we've seen so far in that they are `.rhtml` files (similar to `mod_ruby_demo.rhtml`), not pure Ruby `.rb` files. That's one of the reasons (apart from good application design principles) that having too much dynamic Ruby content in your View files is discouraged. It's relatively easy to debug Ruby within Ruby, but it isn't so easy when you have to keep shifting back and forth between Ruby and HTML.

### Dissecting the index View

Edit `app/views/album/index.rhtml` to match the following:

---

```
❶ <!--
row_class_from_index()
show_listing_header_columns()
show_thumbnail_for_list()
all in app/helpers/album_helper.rb

@photos derived from AlbumController's index method

-->

<h1>Listing photos</h1>

<table>
❷ <%= show_listing_header_columns() %>
❸ <% @photos.each_with_index do |photo,i| -%>
  <tr>
❹      <td class="<%= row_class_from_index(i) %>">
❺      <%=
          link_to(
            title_with_thumbnail(photo),
            :action => 'show',
            :id => photo.id
          )
        %>
  </td>
```

```

❹      <td class="<%= row_class_from_index(i) %>"
❺      <%= photo.description %>
      </td>

      </tr>
❻      <% end %>

</table>

<hr />

❼ <%= show_footer %>

```

---

At ❹, we have HTML comments explaining where to find the methods that we put to use within this file. The file then continues with ordinary, unsurprising HTML. You may wonder why there are no `<html>`, `<head>`, or `<body>` tags. For that answer, you'll have to wait until we introduce the concept of layouts and describe the file `app/views/layouts/album.rhtml` later in this chapter.

The first appearance of Ruby at ❺ is a call to `show_listing_header_columns`, which we know (and which our HTML comments remind us) was defined in `app/helpers/album_helper.rb`. This allows the View to call a method whose name says what it does, without worrying about the implementation. Next, at ❻, we will loop through each photo within `@photos`, along with its index, which we'll call `i`. You'll notice that the `each_with_index` line ends its Ruby escape with `-%`, not just `%`. This tells Rails that there should not be an automatic carriage return in the interpreted output. It's not critical here, but you can imagine this could be very useful within a `<pre>` tag, for example.

What do we do with each photo? We'll present it within a table, applying the CSS class of `row_class_from_index(i)` to each `<td>` element at ❸. The content within that `<td>` element will be the result of a multi-line Ruby call that begins at ❹. Its value is the result of a `link_to` call on the `title_with_thumbnail` that points to the `'show'` :action and displays the photo identified by `photo.id`.

In addition to the thumbnail `<td>` cell, we also want another `<td>` cell that contains the photo's description. That begins at ❺, with another call to `row_class_from_index`. Its `<td>` cell contains simply `photo.description` at ❻. We then close the `each_with_index` call from ❸ with `end` at ❼. Finally, at ❹ we call `show_footer`, which we've already discussed in `footer_helper.rb`.

## Dissecting the show View

Now let's look at the `show` View, which displays a particular photo in greater detail. Edit `app/views/album/show.rhtml` to match the following:

---

```

<!--
image_tag is built in to Rails
prev_id and next_id are in app/models/photo.rb
show_photo is in app/helpers/album_helper.rb
-->

```

```

<table id="dark_bg">
  <tr>
    <td>
      <div class="photo">
❶      <%= show_photo( @photo ) %>
      </div>
    </td>

    <td class="desc_wrapper">
      <div class="description">
❷      <h1><%= h(@photo.title) %></h1>
❸      <p class="description"><%= @photo.description %></p>
      </div>
    </td>
  </tr>
</table>

<hr style="clear:both;" />

<ul class="navlinks">
❹  <li><%=
      link_to 'First',
            :action => 'show',
            :id      => Photo.minimum(:id)
    %></li>

❺  <li><%=
      link_to 'Previous',
            :action => 'show',
            :id      => @photo.prev_id %></li>

❻  <li><%=
      link_to 'Next',
            :action => 'show',
            :id      => @photo.next_id %></li>

❼  <li><%=
      link_to 'Last',
            :action => 'show',
            :id      => Photo.maximum(:id) %></li>

  <!-- You have the option of some GUI helpers in the optional parameters
  hash -->

  <!-- like :confirm for a JS confirm box -->
❽  <li><%= link_to(
      'Full List',
      { :action => 'index' },
      { :confirm => AlbumHelper::CONFIRM_MESSAGE }
    ) %></li>

```

```

<!--
  See RSS[:link_options] in app/helpers/footer_helper.rb
  for how to link across multiple Controllers
-->

</ul>

⑨ <%= show_footer %>

```

We start off again with some HTML reminder comments. The first real Ruby appears at ❶—it is a call to `show_photo` from `AlbumHelper`, passing in `@photo`, which is the particular photo instance that matches the `id` parameter used to call the `show` View. Then at ❷, we pass `@photo`'s title through the `h` formatter method, and at ❸, we wrap the `@photo`'s description within an appropriately classed paragraph tag.

Under a horizontal rule, we have an unordered list, each item of which is a call to the `link_to` method. At ❹, we provide a link called 'First' that shows the photo with the `minimum :id`. At ❺, the link destination shows the photo with the previous `id` via the text 'Previous', and at ❻, the destination shows the Photo with the `next_id` via the text 'Next'. At ❼, it shows the 'Last' photo, defined as the one with the `maximum :id`.

The links so far have all been formatted in the simple `<a href>` style, but there are other options available. For instance, Rails provides many built-in methods to perform some common JavaScript operations. One of these is the confirm box, which interrupts your browsing with a box asking you to confirm some question. I'm sure you've seen them while browsing, but Figure 13-1 shows one in the Epiphany browser on Ubuntu.

The code at ❸ creates this box for us. Choosing Cancel makes it do nothing, while choosing OK causes it to proceed as if it were a standard link, this time to the `'index'` :action. The code to describe this also adds a second Hash to `link_to`, with the key `:confirm` and with a value taken from the `AlbumHelper::CONFIRM_MESSAGE`

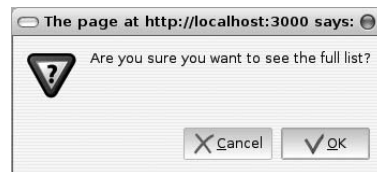


Figure 13-1: A confirm box automatically generated by Rails

Constant. Notice that this link provides the otherwise-optional curly brace delimiters for the Hashes, to show which pairs go with which Hash. The text for the confirm box link is 'Full List', since it brings us back to the `index` View. After some more HTML comments, we see a call to `show_footer` at ❹.

## Dissecting the Feed Controller's images View

In general, everything I've said about the Album Controller's Views will also apply to the Feed Controller's View. The same basic design principles apply. However, there are a few slight differences. The Feed Controller is more lightweight and has fewer responsibilities. It also only has one View, which we're about to explore.



As already noted, Album is not our only Controller. We also want to use Feed to display our images within an RSS Feed. Let's see how that's done. Edit `app/views/feed/images.rxml` to match the following. Note that the file extension is `.rxml` instead of `.rhtml`, since we're creating XML for an RSS Feed instead of regular HTML.

---

```
=begin explain
The various FeedHelper:: Constants are in app/helpers/feed_helper.rb,
as are the feed_description() and rss_url_for_image() methods.
=end
```

**Outputting XML** ❶ `xml.instruct!`

```
❷ xml.rss( FeedHelper::RSS_OPTIONS ) do

  ❸ xml.channel do
    xml.title      FeedHelper::TITLE
    xml.language   FeedHelper::LANGUAGE
    xml.link       rss_url_for_image( nil )
    xml.pubDate    Time.now
    xml.description feed_description()

  ❹ xml.image do
    xml.title      FeedHelper::TITLE
    xml.link       rss_url_for_image( nil )
    xml.url        FeedHelper::ICON[:url]
    xml.width      FeedHelper::ICON[:width]
    xml.height     FeedHelper::ICON[:height]
    xml.description feed_description()
  end

  ❺ @photos.each do |image|
    xml.item do
      xml.title      image.title
      xml.link       rss_url_for_image( image )
      xml.description h( image.description )
      xml.pubDate    Time.now
      xml.guid       rss_url_for_image( image )
      xml.author     FeedHelper::AUTHOR
      # image.photographer could also be the author
    end
  end

end

end
```

---

This file uses a project called XML::Builder (<http://rubyforge.org/projects/builder>), an XML generation library that comes built in to Rails. At ❶, we call `xml.instruct!`, which starts the XML document. (XML::Builder's relationship to Rails ensures that the `xml` variable is available, and we don't have to do anything ahead of time.) Then at ❷, we set up our RSS Feed by calling `xml.rss` with `FeedHelper::RSS_OPTIONS`. Each RSS Feed has a `channel`, which we establish at ❸, and an associated image, which we define at ❹.

The content (or articles) within our RSS Feed are each a single photo with associated descriptive text. At ❸, we use `@photos` from the `FeedController`'s `images` method, looping through each of them, calling them `image` in turn. Then we create an `xml.item`, passing in a block defining each of the appropriate characteristics. Notice how many of them are either expressible as a `Constant` (such as `FeedHelper::TITLE`) or as the result of a method call (such as `rss_url_for_image`, with or without an `image` argument).

## Dissecting the Album Controller's Layout

Remember when I first talked about `app/views/album/index.rhtml` and mentioned that that file lacked certain expected HTML content, such as the `<html>` tag? Think about that for a minute. You might expect such content to appear in every View's `.rhtml` file, but that would produce a great deal of duplicated content. Duplication is precisely what programmers try to avoid, so we should find some other solution to that problem. One approach would be to define methods in the Controller or a Helper like `doctype_tag`, `html_tag`, `head_tag`, and so on, similar to the `image_tag` method that Rails already provides for us.

That would be a reasonable approach, except that invariably what is being created is content in a format that is tightly bound to a particular type of View, most commonly HTML. We already have `.rhtml` files for that express purpose. Shouldn't we find a way to have some sort of `.rhtml` template?

That's exactly what layouts are. They wrap View output within a template. Edit `app/views/layouts/album.rhtml` to match the following:

---

```
<!--
This (app/views/layouts/album.html)
is a "wrapper" that encloses all Views for the
Album Controller.
-->

<html lang="en-us">

<head>

<title>
❶ Album: <%= page_title %>
</title>

CSS Link Tag ❷ <%= stylesheet_link_tag('master') %>
❸ <%= stylesheet_link_tag(controller.action_name) if controller %>

</head>

<body>

<!--
"yield :layout" outputs the View's results, whichever it is.
-->
```

```
④ <%= yield :layout %>

</body>

</html>
```

---

At ①, we use `page_title` from `app/helpers/album_helper.rb` for the `<title>`. At ② and ③, we use Rails' built-in `stylesheet_link_tag` method to include stylesheets. We always want the `master.css` stylesheet, and if the Controller has an `action_name`, we want that associated stylesheet as well. Finally, at ④, we see `yield :layout`. What does this do?

We already know that `yield` within a method that takes a `block_argument` functions the same way as `block_argument.call` does. This is similar, except that the output from the requested View takes the place of the block. It's the equivalent of saying *Always wrap whatever is requested inside me, and place whatever was requested at this point*.

**NOTE** *If you already know Rails, you know that there are other options for solving this problem, such as using `partials`, which approach the problem from the bottom up, rather than from the top down. Read more at <http://wiki.rubyonrails.org/rails/pages/Partials> if you're interested.*

## Using CSS

The `master.css` stylesheet is used throughout the application, and each action automatically includes a stylesheet with the same name (see ② and ③ in `app/views/layouts/album.rhtml` in “Dissecting the Album Controller's Layout” on page 256). When we browse with the `show` View, we will make use of the `show.css` stylesheet, for example. If you're curious about CSS, you can learn more at websites like <http://csszengarden.com>. The stylesheets `master.css`, `public.css`, and `index.css` are available for download at this book's website.

## Using the Application

At this point, we have a photo album application, as well as a decent understanding of how its component parts are organized and how they work, both individually and as part of the whole. Now let's take a look at this app in action, starting by opening it in a web browser.

Figure 13-2 shows how the default action of the Album Controller looks when I view it with the Epiphany web browser. Its appearance should differ only trivially in other graphical browsers, like Firefox or Internet Explorer. Figure 13-3 shows the appearance of the first image, as displayed by the `show` View of the Album Controller.

Figures 13-4 and 13-5 show the appearance of the `images` View of the Feed Controller. Figure 13-4 shows it (again) in Epiphany, while Figure 13-5 shows it in Akregator, which is a program designed specifically for viewing RSS feeds.

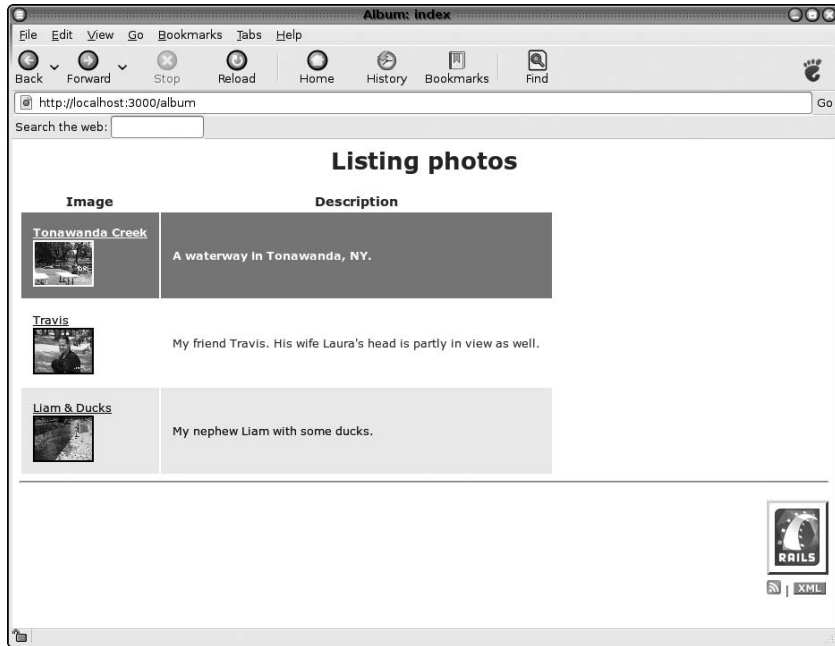


Figure 13-2: Browsing the Album Controller



Figure 13-3: Showing the first image in the Album Controller

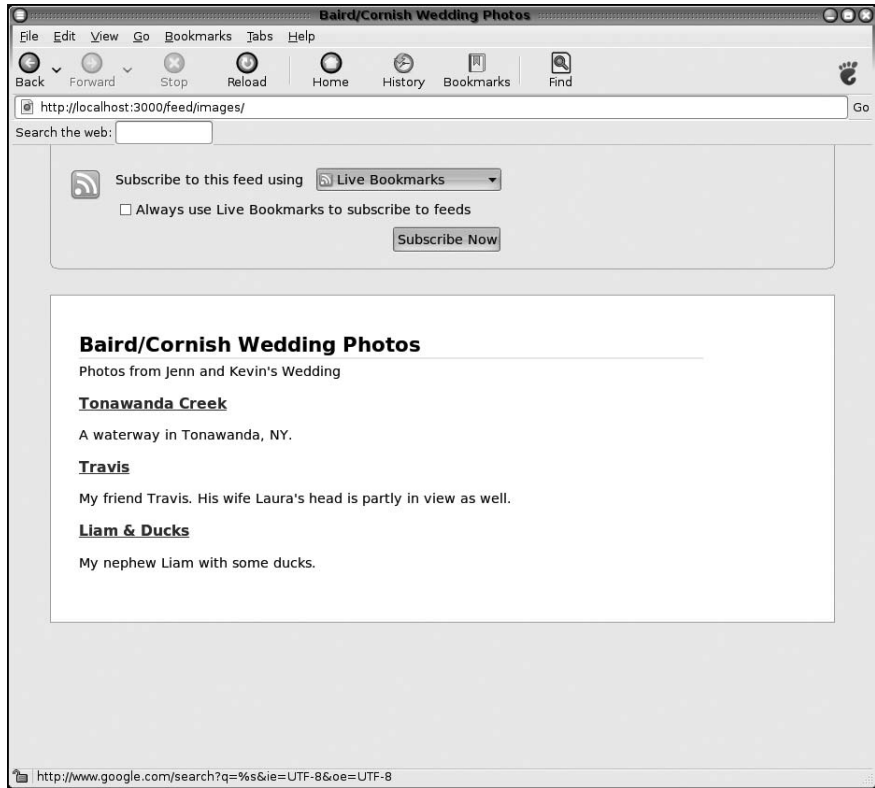


Figure 13-4: Browsing the RSS images in the Feed Controller with Epiphany

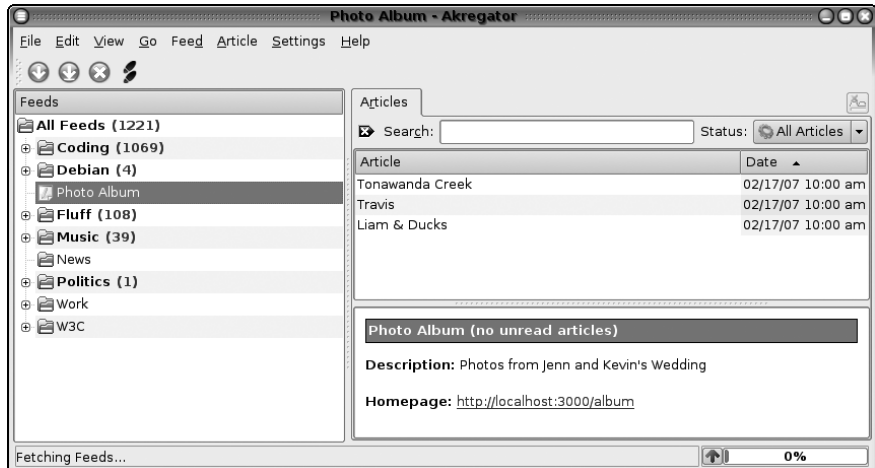


Figure 13-5: Browsing with the Akregator RSS reader

## Learning More About Rails

This chapter has only scratched the surface of Rails. I've barely described some of the Helper methods (like `image_tag` and `link_to`), and I haven't even touched on topics like ActiveRecord's ability to create relationships between multiple Models, Unit Testing within Rails, forms within Rails, user creation and authentication, session handling, and much more. Even so, this is already the longest chapter in a Ruby book that tried very hard to be about Ruby, as distinct from Rails—and I even had to describe the basic anatomy of a Rails application in the chapter before this one. There's a lot to learn in Rails, and you can always read more at <http://rubyonrails.org>. Just don't forget that Ruby has a lot to offer apart from Rails, too, as I hope the other chapters in this book have shown.

## Chapter Recap

What was new in this chapter?

- Using Rails with MySQL
- Adding data with migration files
- Creating a Model
- Creating multi-View Controllers
- Adding methods to Models and Controllers
- The ApplicationController superclass
- Using Helpers
- The ApplicationHelper module
- MVC as it relates to Controllers and Helpers
- Creating Views as `.rhtml` files
- Doing common JavaScript with Rails' built-in Helper methods
- Using layouts and incorporating the results of `[view].rhtml` within them
- Using stylesheets modularized by View type

I hope this book has given you some useful information about coding in Ruby. I've tried to play to what I see as the language's greatest strengths: readability, a high level of abstraction (and great ease in extending that abstraction even higher), internal consistency, and conceptual elegance. All of these characteristics of Ruby remain, whether or not you're working within Rails. If you do find yourself using Rails, don't forget that along with each, you can still use `map` and `inject`.

Thanks for reading.

## HOW DOES RUBY COMPARE TO OTHER LANGUAGES?

One of the best ways to describe something is to talk about what it isn't. This appendix describes similarities and differences between Ruby and some other popular languages.

### C

Even though it isn't the oldest language around, *C* is the granddaddy of languages in many programmers' minds. For the purposes of this discussion, we'll be focusing more on the differences between Ruby and C than the similarities. C is *procedural*, meaning that its programs are intended to be thought of as sets of instructions that proceed stepwise through time: *Do this, then do this, then do that*. C is neither object oriented nor functional, although the closely related languages C++ and Objective C are object oriented. C undeniably has *functions*, bits of reusable code that accept various inputs and return various outputs, but they are generally not *purely functional* functions. C functions often depend on information other than the strict inputs to the function, and they have side effects that mean the second call to a given function will not necessarily produce the same result as the first call. C functions often return values indicating their success, relying on side effects to accomplish their main purpose.

C's advantages over Ruby include execution speed, greater familiarity to more people, more widespread deployment, and the additional benefits that come from its code being compiled, rather than interpreted. (Note that compiled versus interpreted is its own holy war.) When a C program compiles, you know it has passed at least one specific benchmark of reliability.

Ruby's advantages over C include a faster development cycle, flexibility, conceptual elegance, and configurability. If you are interested in combining the strengths of both Ruby and C, you can start by exploring the RubyInline project, available as the `rubyinline` gem or at <http://www.zenspider.com/ZSS/Products/RubyInline>.<sup>1</sup>

C also has what is called *strong, static typing*. This means that variables in C are defined to be a certain type of data (the integer 42, for example), and they will always remain that type of data. That's the static part. If you wanted to express the integer 42 as a floating-point number, such as 42.0, you would need to pass it through a casting conversion function. Ruby is also strongly typed (requiring programmers to convert integers to floating-point numbers before using them that way), although it is *dynamic*, meaning that variables can change type. C also lacks anything similar to Ruby's `irb`.

## Haskell

The fact that Haskell is included in this listing of languages indicates how important the functional paradigm is to this book. *Haskell* is a purely functional language designed by committee and released in 1998. It has several fascinating features, most notably *lazy evaluation*, whereby the value of a given piece of data does not need to be known (or even meaningful) until it needs to be used. This allows a programmer to define things in terms of infinite series, such as the set of all integers.

Haskell is the language used for *Pugs*, an implementation of the new Perl 6 language, which some people think is drawing more attention to Haskell than to Perl itself. Haskell has an interactive environment similar to Ruby's `irb`, but it doesn't allow function definitions except in external files that are imported, whereas `irb` allows full definitions for classes, methods, and functions. Like C, Haskell has both strong and static typing. Haskell is an excellent language that's very suitable for teaching purely functional techniques, as well as general-purpose programming. You can read more about it at <http://haskell.org>.

## Java

For the purposes of this discussion, Sun Microsystems' *Java* is a moderately complex, object-oriented language similar to C. Java has both strong and static typing. In one way, Java is more object oriented than Ruby is: A programmer coding in Java must use an object-oriented paradigm for his own

---

<sup>1</sup> I was lucky enough to see a demonstration of RubyInline by its author, Ryan Davis, at the 2005 RubyConf. It's a very impressive piece of code, and I highly recommend it to anyone interested in combining Ruby and C.



programs. On the other hand, Java is less object oriented than Ruby is in the way that it implements its own built-in features. For example, to get the absolute value of the integer 100 in Java, you would do this:

---

```
Math.abs(100)
```

---

This means that the programmer wants to use a method called `abs`, which is associated with `Math`, to perform that method's action on the integer 100. The equivalent operation in Ruby would be performed as follows:

---

```
100.abs
```

---

Using Ruby's methodology, the programmer simply asks the number 100 to report its own absolute value. This approach is common in Ruby, and it assumes that every piece of data knows the best way to deal with operations on itself. An advantage of this is that the same symbol can be used for different (but conceptually related) operations. The `+` sign signifies simple addition for numbers, for example, while signifying concatenation for strings, as discussed in Chapter 1.

Java is also compiled, rather than interpreted, generally using a special type of compilation called *bytecode*, which is the same method that projects like Parrot, Python, and Ruby 2.0 use.<sup>2</sup> There is also an interesting project called JRuby (<http://jruby.codehaus.org>), which is an implementation of Ruby written in Java. Java is described in greater detail at <http://java.sun.com>. The Java specification was written by Guy Steele, although he didn't create the language itself (fellow Lisper James Gosling did). When he wrote the Java specification, Steele already had the distinction of being the co-creator of Scheme, arguably the most conceptually pure version of Lisp.

## Lisp

As one of Ruby's most prominent ancestors, *Lisp* deserves some space in this section. Lisp has been called "the most intelligent way to misuse a computer."<sup>3</sup> It is properly understood as a family of languages or a language specification, rather than a single language. It is also diverse enough to resist many classification attempts, but for our purposes, the Lisps can be thought of mainly as functional languages with weak, dynamic typing. Renowned Lisper Paul Graham describes "What Made Lisp Different" at <http://paulgraham.com/diff.html>, and it's interesting to note that Ruby shares all of these features except for Lisp's peculiar syntax.

Lisp's syntax (or lack thereof) is probably its most noteworthy feature, at first glance. Lisp code consists of bits of data bound by opening and closing parentheses. These bits are called *lists*, and they give Lisp its name (which

---

<sup>2</sup>You can read more about Parrot at <http://www.parrotcode.org>; I'll cover Python later in this appendix.

<sup>3</sup>Dutch computer science Edsger Dijkstra said this; you can find this and other interesting quotes compiled by Paul Graham at <http://www.paulgraham.com/quo.html>.

comes from *LISt Processing*).<sup>4</sup> Having a syntax that is representable as a data structure within the language itself is Lisp's most defining characteristic. Arguably, another language that implemented this same feature would not be a distinct language per se, but rather another dialect of Lisp.<sup>5</sup> A good argument can be made that Ruby tries to take concepts from Lisp and present them within a more user-friendly framework that also takes advantage of good ideas from object orientation, as well as good text manipulation. Matz has said, "Some may say Ruby is a bad rip-off of Lisp or Smalltalk, and I admit that. But it is nicer to ordinary people."<sup>6</sup> Ruby owes much to Lisp, and along with many other languages, it owes much of its powerful text manipulation to this next language, Perl.

## Perl

*Perl* is known by its mantra TMTOWTDI, and it is an extremely flexible and utilitarian language—one that has certainly had an impact on both Ruby and programming, in general. *TMTOWTDI* stands for *There's More Than One Way To Do It*, which is a design philosophy that Perl certainly exemplifies. Its role in stressing the importance of regular expressions is enough to earn it a place in history. Perl was invented in 1987 by Larry Wall, and it was primarily intended to perform a role similar to that of Unix-centric languages like shell, awk, and sed. Perl focuses on ease of use for tasks like Unix system administration, and it is heavily used for web applications, as well. Perl's initial design was procedural, but in recent years it has moved in an increasingly functional direction. It can also be used for object-oriented programming, a task for which it was never intended and for which it is not ideally suited—but the fact that this is even possible in Perl is a testament to its flexibility.

A new version of Perl is in the works (see the discussion of Pugs under Haskell), and it reminds me a great deal of Ruby. Coming from me, that is a compliment. Perl has weak dynamic typing, and like Ruby, it is interpreted. It has been called the *swiss army chainsaw* and the *Jeep* of programming languages, and it can be found at <http://perl.com>.

## PHP

*PHP* is another interpreted language using weak dynamic typing that is very popular for web applications. In fact, some people erroneously believe that PHP is only usable for web applications. It is technically a complete, general-purpose programming language, although it has several features that make it

---

<sup>4</sup> Critics contend that this feature makes Lisp a more appropriate acronym for *Lots of Irritating Superfluous Parentheses*. Larry Wall, the creator of Perl, suggested that Lisp code has all the aesthetic appeal of "oatmeal with toenail clippings." Clearly, Lisp has some public relations problems.

<sup>5</sup> Relatedly, Philip Greenspun's tenth Rule of Programming at <http://philip.greenspun.com/research> is "Any sufficiently complicated C or Fortran program contains an ad-hoc, informally-specified bug-ridden slow implementation of half of Common Lisp."

<sup>6</sup> This quote also comes from Paul Graham's website, <http://www.paulgraham.com/quotes.html>.

more popular for web work. Many of the languages discussed here can be used in embedded code within web pages, provided that the code is marked off from the rest of the page with the appropriate tags. PHP is unusual in that it must always be demarcated with such tags, even when it is used for command-line tasks that will never come near a webserver. It has weak, dynamic typing and is interpreted.

PHP and Ruby share the characteristic of having a relatively large number of built-in functions. Despite PHP's general applicability, its primary focus is undoubtedly on making it easy for relatively inexperienced programmers to generate dynamic web content quickly. PHP's web integration is such an important part of its most frequent use (if not its design) that it is often best compared to other programming languages when combined with their own web integration systems, such as Perl and Mason, or Ruby and eRuby or Rails. PHP's creator Rasmus Lerdorf began work on the project that would eventually become PHP in 1995. You can find out more about it at <http://php.net>.

## Python

*Python* is a language very similar to Ruby. Its creator, the “Benevolent Dictator For Life” Guido van Rossum, named it after the British comedy troupe Monty Python when he invented it in the early 1990s. It has strong, dynamic typing very similar to Ruby's and a similarly clean syntax, which is aided by its use of semantically significant whitespace. In Python, neither functions, blocks of code, nor statements need to have an explicit end-of-line mark (often a semicolon). Ruby's use of ending markers is also quite minimal, although not to the same degree as Python's is.

One area where Python and Ruby differ significantly is in flexibility. Python explicitly embraces the idea of *There should be one—and preferably only one—obvious way to do it*, reporting this along with other ideas at Python's interactive prompt when given the command `import this`.

Python and Ruby have an interesting relationship. Python has added several new features recently that borrow heavily from Ruby and Lisp, and at the time of this writing book sales for Ruby-related books also generally surpass those of Python-related books. Obviously, I hope those trends continue in relation to *this* book. Python and Ruby seem like contentious siblings who will hopefully continue to challenge and inspire each other to excel. The Pythonistas live at <http://python.org>.

## Smalltalk

*Smalltalk* is a fully object-oriented programming language invented at Xerox PARC by a team led by Alan Kay. While Simula is generally recognized as the first object-oriented language, Smalltalk was instrumental in popularizing object orientation. Ruby borrows very extensively from Smalltalk in two major areas: the notion that everything is an object, and the concept of methods as messages that are passed to objects.

What does it mean to say that everything is an object? We've touched on this briefly in the Java discussion. In many languages, real "object" status is reserved for larger or more complicated things, while basic parts of the language are not considered objects. That's why coders must invoke the `abs` method from within the `Math` namespace to get the absolute value of the integer 100 in Java. The *Everything is an object* idea that Ruby inherited from Smalltalk is what allows the more consistent approach of asking the integer 100 to report its own absolute value. We explored the benefits of methods being implemented as messages also in the `to_lang.rb` script in Chapter 10.

Check out Smalltalk at <http://smalltalk.org> and <http://squeak.org>.

## Summary of Ruby vs. Other Languages

To sum up, Ruby is interpreted, not compiled, making it fast to develop in and slow to run. It is object oriented and functional, not procedural. It has strong, dynamic typing, instead of either weak or static typing, and it only automatically casts type for Boolean tests. It has built-in regular expression support and a clean, readable syntax. It is a general-purpose programming language both in theory and in practice. It has a very large collection of built-in methods, and it allows you to add to, alter, and extend those methods easily. Like its ancestor Lisp, Ruby has a real, usable `nil` value, and it treats all values except for `nil` and `false` as `true`. Ruby is also very fun to program in, and it stays out of your way.

# INDEX

## Symbols & Numbers

`%Q` for instantiating Strings, 23,  
108–109, 215–216, 219, 239,  
245, 248–250

`%w` for instantiating Arrays, 47,  
113, 115

`&` (ampersand), for expressing blocks  
and Procs, 105–106

`!` (exclamation point), for destructive  
methods, 20, 22–23

`||` (or) operator, 17

`#` character  
for comments, 14  
for instance method, 234

`{}` for wrapping expression to be  
interpolated, 23

`#!` (shebang), 47

`$` (dollar sign), for bash prompt, 19

`*` (asterisk), in `irb` prompt, 8

`**` (asterisk doubled), for “to the  
power of,” 72

`/\d+/` in regular expression, for digits  
only, 79

`:needs_data` Symbol key, 116

`:nitems` Symbol key, 116

`:unless` Symbol key, 116

`?` (question mark)  
in predicate method names, 22  
in regular expression, for optional  
expressions, 144

`@` sign, for instance variable, 21–22

`@@` sign, for class variable, 82–84

`[]` (square brackets), for Array  
instantiation, 5–6

`[]` method (Array), 68

`\` (backslash), in regular expression,  
for literal characters, 144

`\w`, in regular expression, for  
whitespace, 66

`{ }` (braces)  
for blocks, 28  
for declaring Hash, 42

`{x}`, in regular expression, 79

`-` method (Hash), 93

`||=` operator, 77–78, 127

`|` (pipe) character, in regular  
expression, 56

`+` method of Integers and Strings, 3–4

`+` (plus sign), in regular  
expression, 62

`=` (equal sign), for assigning value to  
variable, 9

`==` operator, for equality testing, 14

`=begin rdoc`, 22

`=end`, 22

`<=>` method (Comparable), 145,  
150–151

`<%` and `%>` tags, 211

`<%=` tag, for printing expression, 214

`99bottles.rb` script, 20–25

## A

actionpack, warnings related to, 226

Active Record, Rails dependence  
on, 227

*Agile Web Development with Rails*  
(Thomas and Hansson), 227

Akregator, 257, 259

alias method, 34–35, 199

`all_photos` method  
(ApplicationController), 243

- alpha\_width method, 217
- ampersand (&), for transforming
  - blocks and Procs, 105–106
- ancestors method (Module), 75
- any? method (Enumerable), 44, 45
- Apache webserver
  - CGI for, 206
  - set up to handle mod\_ruby, 211–212
  - web resources, 213
- app directory for Rails, 230
- Apple operating systems, end-of-line
  - marker, 51
- ARABIC\_TO\_ROMAN Hash, 84
- ArgumentError exception, 106
- arguments, 8
- ARGV environment variable, 11, 16
- arity, 106
  - flexible with Proc.new, 116–117
- Array class, 27. *See also* Enumerable
  - module
    - Children class inheritance
      - from, 171
    - count\_of method, 65
    - detect method, 85–86
    - each\_with\_index method, 58
    - join method, 37
    - matches\_block method, 105
    - matching\_compound\_members method, 106
    - matching\_members method, 105
    - nitems method, 116
    - rand method, 18, 27
    - shuffle method, 27–28
    - shuffle! method, 27–28
      - for shuffled file playback, 26
    - sort\_by method, 27, 145, 175
    - as Strings, 36
  - array\_join.rb script, 36–39
- Arrays, 5–6
  - of Arrays, converting Hash into, 150
  - converting item into, 6
  - creating single-word, 116
  - filtering, 103–108
  - for return values, for factorial or
    - Fibonacci test, 125
  - instantiating with %w, 47, 113, 115
- ASCII values for characters, 171–172
- assert\_instance\_of method
  - (Test::Unit::Assertions), 140

- assert\_nil method
  - (Test::Unit::Assertions), 140
- assert\_raise method
  - (Test::Unit::Assertions), 140
- assert\_respond\_to method
  - (Test::Unit::Assertions), 140
- asterisk (\*)
  - doubled, for “to the power of,” 72
  - in irb prompt, 8
- Australian National University, 162

## B

- backslash (\), for literal characters
  - within regular expression, 144
- bang (!), for destructive methods, 22–23
- base, for exponentiation, 72
- bash prompt, \$ (dollar sign) for, 19
- begin keyword, 157
- =begin rdoc, 22
- Benchmark module and bm
  - method, 129
- benchmarking, 128–131
- Berners-Lee, Tim, 141
- best\_num method (Meta\_Mutator), 180
- The Bible Code* (Drosnin), 161
- Bignum, 3
- Black, David Alan, *Ruby for Rails*, 227
- The Blind Watchmaker* (Dawkins), 168
- blocks, 27
  - ampersand (&) and, 105
  - do and end for, 28
  - Procs and, 102
  - using Procs as, 110
- bm (Benchmark) method, 129
- Boole, George, 6
- Boolean type, 6
  - items evaluating to true, 7
- Boolean values, methods returning, 22
- boolean\_golf.rb script, 33–36
- bound variable, of inner lambda, 111
- braces ( { } )
  - for blocks, 28
  - for declaring Hash, 42
- browsers, dynamic stylesheet for, 215–218
- Buffalo, NY, clement weather in
  - November, 136
- bytecode, 263

## C

- C (programming language), 261–262
- call method (Proc), 100
- callback, 185
- CamelCase capitalization, 3
- capital letters, for constants, 10
- carriage return, 15, 52
- Cascading Style Sheets (CSS), 215–221, 246, 257
- case, of names, 3
- casting, 4–5, 33
  - Boolean, 7
- CD-ROM drive, Windows filesystem
  - access to, 20
- Celsius, vs. kelvins, 134
- CGI (Common Gateway Interface), 206
  - scripts, 207–210
- cgi library, 207
- cgi.out method, 209
- cgi.params Hash, 209
- chaining methods, 5*n*, 80
- characters
  - ASCII values for, 171–172
  - rotating in String, 68–70
- check\_payday.rb script, 14–16
- Cheese Shop (Python), 224
- Children class, 171
  - select\_fittest method, 171, 174, 175
- class
  - keyword, 21
  - method (Object), 3
- class variables, 83–84
- classes
  - adding “helper” method to, 65
  - defining, 20–21
  - instances of, 2–3
- CLI parsers in Ruby, 39
- closing files, 17
- code
  - placement in controller vs. helper, 247
  - reusable, 40
  - testing execution speed of, 128–132
- code coverage by testing, 139
- command-line interface, 39–45
  - Ruby options, 10
- comma (,), adding to numbers, 75–81
- comments, # character for, 14
- commify.rb script, 75–81
- Common Gateway Interface (CGI), 206
  - scripts, 207–210
- Comparable module, 145*n*
- comparing Strings, 145
- compiled language, 262
- compose method (Temperature\_Converter), 137
- composition of functions, 134
  - implicit, 137
- compounded filtering, Proc class for, 103–108
- Comprehensive Perl Archive Network, 224
- concatenation, 4, 80
- Concurrent Versions System (CVS), 188
- constants, 10, 125
  - declaring inside class, 42
  - defining, 14–15
- construct\_candidate method (ELS\_Parser), 166
- CONVERSIONS Hash, 135
- convert method (Temperature\_Converter), 135
- converting
  - item into Array, 6
  - temperatures, 132–137
- counting
  - tags, 148–154
  - words in file, 62–64
- count\_of method (Array), 65
- create\_english method (Representable\_In\_English), 198
- create\_spanish method (Representable\_In\_Spanish), 198
- create\_table method (CreatePhotos), 239
- crontab, 19

- CSS (Cascading Style Sheets), 215–221, 246, 257
- currency conversion
  - advanced, 90–98
  - basic, 87–90
- CurrencyConverter class
  - download\_new\_rates method, 94, 95
  - get\_rates method, 94
  - get\_value method, 89
  - get\_xml\_lines method, 94
  - initialize method, 89
  - output\_rates method, 94
  - pluralize method, 89
  - save\_rates\_in\_local\_file! method, 95–96
- currency\_converter1.rb script, 87–90
- currency\_converter2.rb script, 90–98
- cv method (String), 84

## D

- Darwinian selection model, 168, 176
- data-driven programming, 44
- databases for Rails application, 229
  - preparing, 238
- Dawkins, Richard, *The Blind Watchmaker*, 168
- declare\_regexpes\_and\_replacements method, 144
  - with inject, 148
- def keyword, 8, 21
- definition list, output in HTML, 209
- demo\_els\_parser.rb script, 167
- describe method (Him), 119
- describe2 method (Him), 119
- destructive methods, 23
- detect method (Array), 85–86
- Dijkstra, Edsger, 263*n*
- display method (Simple\_CGI), 209
- do keyword, for block, 28, 105
- doc directory, for Rails, 230
- DocBook, 62, 141
  - and spell checker, 154
- dollar sign (\$), for bash prompt, 19
- DOM (Document Object Model), 157
- dont\_play\_file\_proc Proc, 191
- DOS-to-Unix EOL conversion, 56
- dos2unix.rb script, 51–56

- double quotation marks in String, %Q for, 23
- downcase method (String), 47
- download\_new\_rates method (CurrencyConverter), 94, 95
- Drosnin, Michael, *The Bible Code*, 161
- dup method (Array), 37

## E

- e flag, for Ruby, 56
- each method vs. map method, 66
- each\_with\_index method (Array), 58
- eager evaluation, 127
- ELSes (equidistant letter sequences), 161
- ELS\_Parser class, 164
  - initialize method, 165
  - prepare method, 165
  - reset\_params method, 165
  - search method, 165
- els\_parser.rb script, 161–168
- email signatures, dynamic content for, 16–20
- empty? method (Wall), 22
- =end, 22
- end keyword
  - for block, 28, 105
  - for if expression, 7
  - and method call, 61
  - for method definitions, 24
- end-of-line marker, converting, 51–56
- END\_OF\_USAGE marker, 43
- English units, converting, 132–137
- Enumerable module
  - any? method, 44, 45
  - grep method, 65, 79
  - inject method, 60–61, 65, 107
    - declare\_regexpes\_and\_replacements method with, 148
- ENV environment variable, 17
- environment variables
  - ARGV, 16
  - ENV, 17
    - for Ruby, 10
- Epiphany web browser, 257
- equidistant letter sequences (ELSes), 161



- eRuby, 211
- exceptions
  - ArgumentError, 106
  - NoMethodError, 24, 39, 152
  - TypeError, 4
  - XMLParserError, 158
- exchange rates, XML file for, 94–95
- exclamation point (!), for destructive methods, 22–23
- execution speed of code, testing, 128–132
- exit conditions, 74
- exponentiation, 72
- expressions, 2, 4
  - value appearing inside String, 23
- eXtensible HyperText Markup Language (XHTML), 142
- eXtensible Markup Language (XML), 87, 141
  - file for exchange rates, 94–95
  - online tutorial, 90
  - validating, 156–158
- external content, -r command-line flag for, 22

## F

- factorial1.rb script, 122–124
- factorial2.rb script, 124
- factorial3.rb script, 125
- factorial4.rb script, 125–126
- factorial5.rb script, 126–127
- factorials, recursion for, 121–128
- fail method (Kernel), 94
- false, 6
  - non-nil value for expressions evaluated as, 7
- false? method (Object), 35
- feedback, in irb, 2
- feed\_description method (FeedHelper), 249
- Fibonacci series, recursion for, 121–128
- fibonacci1.rb script, 122–124
- fibonacci2.rb script, 124
- fibonacci3.rb script, 125
- fibonacci4.rb script, 125–126
- fibonacci5.rb script, 126–128

- File class
  - new method, 17
  - well\_formed\_xml? method, 156–158
- File objects, creating, 17
- filename extensions, 213
- files
  - counting words in, 62–64
  - name for class definition, 21
- filtering
  - Proc class for, 102–103
  - Proc class for compounded, 103–108
- find method (Rails Models), 242
- find\_all method, 185
- first-class functions, 111
- first\_if\_true method, 8
- fitness, measuring for survival of fittest, 173
- Fixnum module, 3
- flow control, 6–8
- format\_float method (Precision), 80
- format\_int method (Precision), 79–80
- Fowler, Martin, *Refactoring: Improving the Design of Existing Code*, 124, 247
- free variables, 111
- Friedl, Jeffrey, *Mastering Regular Expressions*, 55, 64
- functional programming, 60–61, 99
- functions
  - external libraries of, 40
  - first-class, 111
  - vs. methods, 8*n*
  - treating as objects, 100
- function\_within\_mod\_ruby method, 214

## G

- gem command, 224–225
  - gem install --remote, 225
  - gem list --local, 225
  - gem outdated, 226
  - gem query --remote, 225
  - gem update rails, 226–227
  - help, 227
- gems, 224
  - installing, 225–226
  - listing installed and installable, 225
  - updating, 226–227

- general\_tester method (Tester), 139
- get\_base method (Integer), 200
- get\_child method (Hash), 179
- get\_children method (Meta\_Mutator), 180
- get\_elements\_from\_filename method, 152
- get\_format method, 57
- get\_items\_hash method
  - (Simple\_CGI), 209
- get\_lines method, 57
- get\_no\_better\_count method
  - (Meta\_Mutator), 180
- GetOptLong, 39
- get\_output method, 58
- get\_proc\_via\_base\_unit method
  - (Temperature\_Converter), 136
- get\_rate\_for\_abbr\_from\_raw\_rate\_lines method
  - (CurrencyConverter), 95
- get\_rates method
  - (CurrencyConverter), 94
- get\_value method
  - (CurrencyConverter), 89
- get\_xml\_lines method
  - (CurrencyConverter), 94
- global substitution, 53
- Graham, Paul, 206, 263
- Greenspun, Philip, 264*n*
- grep method (Enumerable), 65, 79
- gsub method (String), 54–55
- gsub! method (String), 53

## H

- h method (Rails), 247
- Hansson, David Heinemeier, *Agile Web Development with Rails*, 227
- hard drives, Windows filesystem
  - access to, 20
- Hash class, 150
  - get\_child method, 179
  - keys method, 44
  - merge method, 151
  - pretty\_report method, 152
  - subtraction method, 93
- hash (#), for comments, 14
- Hash keys, Symbols as, 78

- Hashes, 42–43
  - ARABIC\_TO\_ROMAN, 84
  - default values, 152
  - for HTML tag replacement, 144
  - nesting, 135
  - Procs as values, 200
  - SUBTRACTIVE\_TO\_ROMAN, 84
- Haskell, 262
- have\_to\_base\_proc method
  - (Temperature\_Converter), 136
- Helpers in Rails, 243, 245–251
  - and modularizing code, 244
- here doc, 43
- Him class, 113
  - creating Procs with lambda, 115
- HOME directory, 11
- HTML (HyperText Markup Language), 141
  - cleaning up, 141–148
  - counting tags, 148–154
  - footer for page, 243
  - nesting tags, 209
  - non-compliant, 142
  - printing output within, 214
- <html> tag, variable for, 208
- HTML Tidy, 142
- html\_tidy.rb script, 141–148
- HyperText Markup Language. *See* HTML (HyperText Markup Language)

## I

- i flag, for Ruby, 56
- if statement, 6–8, 200
- images method (FeedController), 245
- implicit composition of functions, 137
- include? method (Enumerable), 44, 124
- index method (AlbumController), 243
- index of zero, 68
- index View in Rails, 234, 251–252
- inheritance, 26, 75–76, 171
- initialize method
  - CurrencyConverter, 89
  - ELS\_Parser, 165

- Meta\_Mutator, 180
- Wall, 21
- inject method, 171, 203–204
  - Enumerable, 60–61, 65, 107
    - declare\_regexpes\_and\_replacements method with, 148
- input parameters, arbitrary set of, 177
- inspect method, 110–111
  - overriding to display params keys in alphabetical order, 182
- installing, Rails, 228
- instance method, # character for, 234
- instance variables
  - @ sign for, 21–22
  - vs. methods, 96
- instances of classes, 2–3
  - creating, 115–116
- Instant Rails, 228
- instruct! method
  - (Builder::XmlMarkup), 255
- Integer class, 3–4
  - get\_base method, 200
  - round\_to\_base method, 86
  - to\_roman method, 81–87
- Integers, multiplying Strings by, 86
- Interactive Ruby (irb), 1–2
  - information in prompt, 8
  - starting, 2
- Internet connection, for opening
  - URLs, 95
- Internet protocols, end-of-line
  - marker, 52
- interpolation, 23
- irb. *See* Interactive Ruby (irb)

## J

- Java, 262–263
- JavaScript, 157
- join method (Array), 37, 47
- JRuby, 263

## K

- Kasahara, Motoyuki, 39
- Kay, Alan, 265
- kelvins, vs. Celsius, 134
- keys method (Hash), 44

- keys of Hash, 42
- King Crimson, 29–30, 192–193
- Knuth, Donald, 122*n*

## L

- lambda command, 43, 100–102
  - creating Procs with, 105, 115, 116
  - nesting, 111–112
- lazy evaluation, 127, 262
- Lerdorf, Rasmus, 265
- letters\_only method (String), 47
- lib directory for Rails, 230
- library file, 155, 156
- line break, 18
  - in HTML source, 209
- line feed character (newline), 15, 52
- line numbers, 2
  - displaying, 57–59
- line\_num.rb script, 57–59
- lines, definition, 2
- Linux, starting irb on, 2
- Lisp, 22, 263–264
  - as Ruby ancestor, 99
- lists, making, 36–39
- load\_old\_rates method
  - (CurrencyConverter), 97
- local method (Time), 15
- Locomotive, 228
- log directory for Rails, 230
- logs
  - messages by radio\_player2.rb, 191
  - radio station need for, 186
- long options, 39
- lookup tables, Hashes for, 42–43
- ls command (Unix), 192

## M

- Mac OS X
  - and Apache, 206
  - starting irb on, 2
- magic numbers, 15
- make\_exp example, 111
- make\_exp\_proc Proc, 112
- make\_incrementer method, 101
- make\_incrementer.rb script, 100–102
- map method, 66, 185, 203–204
  - filtering Proc via, 106

- Mastering Regular Expressions* (Friedl), 55, 64
- matches\_block method (Array), 105
- matching\_compound\_members method (Array), 106
- matching\_compound\_members.rb script, 103–108
- matching\_members method (Array), 105
- matching\_members.rb script, 102–103
- McKay, Brendan, 162
- memoization of results, 126–127, 131
- merge method (Hash), 151
- merge\_totals method (Hash), 151
- <meta> tag (HTML), 144
- Meta\_Mutator class
  - best\_num method, 180
  - creating, 180
  - get\_children method, 180
  - get\_no\_better\_count method, 180
  - initialize method, 180
  - mutate\_mutations! method, 180
  - report method, 181
  - update\_params\_by\_number\_of\_mutations! method, 180
- metaprogramming, 35
- methinks\_meta.rb script, 176–182
- methinks.rb script, 168–176
- methods, 8–9
  - alias of, 35
  - chaining, 5*n*, 80
  - creating, 21
  - dynamically calling, 200
  - vs. instance variables, 96
  - listing for object, 5
  - for Object class, 34
  - of objects, 3
  - parentheses for, 22
  - production-ready version, 179
  - with side effects, 61
- methods method (Object), 5
- metric units, converting, 132–137
- Microsoft operating systems, end-of-line marker, 51
- migrations in Rails, 238–239
- minimum method (Rails Models), 242
- mixins, 168, 198
- Model-View-Controller (MVC) design philosophy, 229
- modified\_join method (Array), 37
- mod\_ruby software, 211
- mod\_ruby\_demo.conf, 211–214
- mod\_ruby\_demo.rhtml, 211–214
- Module class, ancestors method, 75
- modules, 76
- Mongrel webserver, 231
- most\_common\_words.rb script, 65–67
- multiplicative identity, 73
- mult\_prefix method (Integer), 201
- multi-line Strings, 43
- music files, playing in shuffled order, 25–31
- mutate method (String), 173
- mutate\_char method (String), 173
- mutate\_mutations! method (Meta\_Mutator), 180
- mutate\_until\_matches! method (String), 173, 175
- mutating Strings, 168–182
- MySQL database, for Rails application, 229, 238

## N

- Nakada, Nobu, 39
- names
  - of classes, 21
  - of constants, 10, 14
  - of instances, 3
  - of methods, 8, 43, 103
    - question mark (?) in, 22, 34
  - of predicates, 22, 34
- natural selection, 168
- need\_ones? method (Integer), 199
- need\_ones\_in\_english method (Representable\_In\_English), 199
- need\_ones\_in\_spanish method (Representable\_In\_Spanish), 199
- :needs\_data Symbol key, 116
- nesting
  - Hashes, 135
  - HTML tags, 209
  - lambdas, 111–112

- new method
  - Class, 21
  - File, 17
  - Object, vs. initialize method, 24–25
  - Proc, 203
  - Time, 15
- newline, 15, 52
- nil, 6–7
  - and or (||) operator, 17
  - from defining method, 9
- nitens method (Array), 116
- :nitens Symbol key, 116
- NoMethodError exception, 24, 39, 152
- non-compliant HTML, 142
- not keyword, 9
- numbers
  - adding commas, 75–81
  - calculating powers, 72–75
  - currency conversion
    - advanced, 90–98
    - basic, 87–90
  - in irb prompt, 8
  - by name, 193–202
  - roman numerals, 81–87
  - Ruby storage of, 3
- num\_matches method (String), 64

## O

- Object class, 34
  - methods method, 5
  - new method, vs. initialize method, 24–25
  - send method, 203
- object orientation, 3
- objects, 2–3
  - methods of, 3
    - listing, 5
  - treating functions as, 100
- Ogg Vorbis files, 29
- open classes, 26
- open-uri library, 95
- operating system package manager,
  - for installing Rails, 228
- =~ operator, 53
- optimizing code, 122, 131
- OptionParser, 39
- or (||) operator, 17

- Orcish Maneuver, 127*n*
- output\_rates method
  - (CurrencyConverter), 94

## P

- p flag, for Ruby, 56
- package-management system. *See*
  - RubyGems
- packaged versions of Rails, 228
- palindrome.rb script, 45–48
- palindrome2.rb script, 45–48
- Palm devices, styles for, 220
- parameters, 8
- parentheses, for methods, 22
- parse\_opts method (SimpleCLI), 40, 43
- partials, 257
- perform\_replacements\_on\_contents
  - method, 145
- Perl, 99*n*, 127*n*, 144*n*, 211, 264
  - Comprehensive Perl Archive
    - Network, 224
- permissions, for simple CGI.rb
  - script, 207
- photo album with Rails, 237–241
  - using, 257–259
- PHP, 211, 264–265
- pipe (|) character, in regular
  - expression, 56
- play method (ShufflePlayer), 28
- play\_file\_proc Proc, 190
- pluralize method
  - (CurrencyConverter), 89
- plus sign (+), within regular
  - expression, 62
- pop method (Array), 38, 69
- power\_of.rb script, 72–75
- powers, calculating, 72–75
- Precision module, 75–76
  - format\_float method, 80
  - format\_int method, 79–80
- predicates, 22, 34
- prepare method (ELS\_Parser), 165
- pretty\_report method (Hash), 152
- print method, 15
- printing
  - output in HTML, 214
  - with puts, 18

- private keyword, 24
  - vs. protected keyword, 38–39
- private methods, changing to public, 164
- Proc class, 100
  - call method, 100
  - new method, 203
    - arity for, 116–117
- procedural language, C as, 261
- Procs, 43
  - ampersand (&) and, 105
  - for compounded filtering, 103–108
  - creating with `lambda`, 115, 116
  - for filtering, 102–103
  - filtering via `map`, 106
  - as Hash values, 200
  - returning as values, 108–111
  - square brackets ([]) for calling, 110
  - for text, 112–119
  - using as blocks, 110
- production-ready version of
  - method, 179
- profile library, 131
- profiling, 131–132
- Project Gutenberg, 162
- prompt, information in, 8
- propagate method (String), 173–174
- protected, 37
  - vs. private, 38–39
- pseudo-random numbers, 27, 177
- public directory for Rails, 230
- public methods, 24–25
  - changing private methods to, 164
- Pugs, 262
- Pull Up Method refactoring
  - operation, 156
- puts method, 15, 18
  - for log, 192
- Python, 211, 265
  - Cheese Shop, 224

**Q**

- %Q for instantiating Strings, 23,
  - 108–109, 215–216, 219, 239, 245, 248–250
- question mark (?), in method names, 22
- quotations, reading from file, 17

**R**

- r command-line flag, for external content, 22
- RadioPlayer class, 187
  - walk method, 187–188
- radio\_player1.rb script, 186–190
- radio\_player2.rb script, 190–193
- Raggett, Dave, 142
- Rails, 227–235
  - application generation, 230, 232
  - application structure, 229
  - databases for, 229
  - defined, 228
  - development framework, 205
  - Helpers, 243
  - methods for JavaScript
    - operations, 254
  - migrations in, 238–239
  - options for installing, 228
  - viewing application, 230–231
  - web resources, 260
- Rails projects
  - Album Controller, 258
    - creating, 241
    - dissecting, 242–243
    - layout, 256–257
    - views, 251–254
  - Application Controller, 244
    - creating application, 237–241
  - Feed Controller, 244–245
    - creating, 241
    - images View, 254–256
  - Helpers, 243, 245–251
    - Album Helper, 245–247
    - Application Helper, 248
    - Feed Helper, 248–249
    - Footer Helper, 249–251
  - Photo Model
    - creating, 240
    - dissecting, 241–242
    - using, 257–259
- rails\_link\_to\_top method
  - (FooterHelper), 250–251
- rake db:migrate command, 240
- rake rails: update, 227
- rand method (Array), 18, 27
- random character String, mutating
  - into target String, 168–182

- random number
  - for Array element, 18
  - generating, 177
- random signature generator, 16–20
- random variations, impact of, 176
- random\_element method (Array), 28
- Range class, 66
- .rcss file extension, 213
- RDoc (Ruby Documentation), 13, 226
  - comments, 22
- read-eval-print-loop (REPL)
  - environment, 2
- readlines method (IO), 60
- reciprocal power, 72
- recursion, 68, 69, 74
  - for factorials and Fibonacci series, 121–128
  - for roman numeral conversion, 85–86
  - tracking depth, 202
- Reenskaug, Trygve, 229
- refactoring, 124, 139, 247
  - testing during, 140
- Refactoring: Improving the Design of Existing Code* (Fowler), 124, 247
- regular expressions (regexes), 53
  - ? (question mark) for optional expressions, 144
  - | (pipe) in, 56
  - /\d+/ for digits only, 79
  - \W for whitespace, 66
  - {x} in, 79
  - + (plus sign) within, 62
  - backslash (\) for literal characters, 144
  - Perl and, 264
  - testing Strings against, 53–54
- repeated spaces, converting to single space, 59
- REPL (read-eval-print-loop)
  - environment, 2
- replace method (Array), 28
- report method
  - Benchmark, 129
  - Meta\_Mutator, 181
- report\_progress method (String), 173
- report\_success method (String), 173
- representable\_in\_english.rb file, 194–195
- representable\_in\_spanish.rb file, 195–196
- require keyword, 40
- rescue keyword, 158
- reset\_params method (ELS\_Parser), 165
- Respect Sextet, The, 30
- return values, 8
  - Arrays for, for factorial or Fibonacci test, 125
  - of puts method, 18
- return\_proc.rb script, 108–111
- reusable code, 40
- rexml/document library, 150
- .rhtml file extension, 213
- Roman numerals, 81–87
- roman\_numeral.rb script, 81–87
- root element, 148
- rotate method (String), 69
- rotate! method (String), 69
- rotate.rb script, 68–70
- rotating characters in String, 68–70
- round\_to\_base method (Integer), 86
- row\_class\_from\_index method (AlbumHelper), 246
- RSS feed, 238, 244–245
  - Feed Controller for, 255
  - viewing, 257, 259
- rss\_icon\_links method (FooterHelper), 250–251
- rss\_url\_for\_image method (FeedHelper), 249
- Ruby
  - displaying version, 10
  - flags, 56
  - vs. other languages, 261–266
    - summary, 266
  - running interpreter in webserver, 211
  - for web programming, 205
  - web resources, 13
- ruby command, 13
- Ruby Documentation (RDoc), 13, 226
  - comments, 22
- Ruby Extensions Project, 203
- Ruby for Rails* (Black), 227
- Ruby Standard Library
  - Documentation site, 140
- RubyGems, 223–227
  - installing, 224
- RubyInline project, 262
- .rxml file extension, 255

## S

- SameTimeSamePlace class, 113–115
- save\_rates\_in\_local\_file! method  
(CurrencyConverter), 95–96
- Schwartzian Transform, 27
- scramble method (String), 174
- scramble! method (String), 174
- script directory for Rails, 230
- scripts
  - 99bottles.rb, 20–25
  - array\_join.rb, 36–39
  - boolean\_golf.rb, 33–36
  - check\_payday.rb, 14–16
  - commify.rb, 75–81
  - currency\_converter1.rb, 87–90
  - currency\_converter2.rb, 90–98
  - demo\_els\_parser.rb, 167
  - dos2unix.rb, 51–56
  - els\_parser.rb, 161–168
  - factorial1.rb, 122–124
  - factorial2.rb, 124
  - factorial3.rb, 125
  - factorial4.rb, 125–126
  - factorial5.rb, 126–127
  - fibonacci1.rb, 122–124
  - fibonacci2.rb, 124
  - fibonacci3.rb, 125
  - fibonacci4.rb, 125–126
  - fibonacci5.rb, 126–128
  - html\_tidy.rb, 141–148
  - line\_num.rb, 57–59
  - make\_incrementer.rb, 100–102
  - matching\_compound\_members.rb, 103–108
  - matching\_members.rb, 102–103
  - most\_common\_words.rb, 65–67
  - palindrome.rb, 45–48
  - power\_of.rb, 72–75
  - radio\_player1.rb, 186–190
  - radio\_player2.rb, 190–193
  - random\_sig.rb, 16–20
  - random\_sig-windows.rb, 16–20
  - return\_proc.rb, 108–111
  - roman\_numeral.rb, 81–87
  - rotate.rb, 68–70
  - shuffle\_play.rb, 25–31
  - simple\_cgi.rb, 207–210
  - softwrap.rb, 59–62
  - symbol.rb, 203–204
  - temperature\_converter.rb, 132–137
    - testing, 137–140
  - test\_lang.rb, 201
  - to\_lang.rb, 193–202
  - word\_count.rb, 62–64
  - xml\_tag\_counter.rb, 148–154
  - xml\_text\_extractor.rb, 154–156
- search method (ELS\_Parser), 165
- select\_fittest method (Children),  
171, 174, 175
- self, 68, 107
- send method (Object), 129, 200, 203
- ServerAccessController class, 233
- setup.rb program, 224
- shebang (#!), 47
- short options, 39
- show method (AlbumController), 243
- show View in Rails project, 252
- show\_def\_list method  
(Simple\_CGI), 209
- show\_footer method  
(FooterHelper), 250
- show\_listing\_header\_columns method  
(AlbumHelper), 246, 252
- show\_mems method (Integer), 128
- show\_photo method (AlbumHelper),  
246, 254
- show\_thumbnail\_for\_list method  
(AlbumHelper), 247
- shuffle method (Array), 27–28
- shuffle! method (Array), 27–28
- ShufflePlayer class, 27, 28
- shuffle\_play.rb script, 25–31
- sibling HTML tags, 209
- side effects, methods with, 61
- simple\_cgi.rb script, 207–210
- SimpleCLI class, 40
  - parse\_opts method, 40, 43
- simple\_cli.rb script, 39–45
- Simula, 265
- sing method (Wall), 23
- single-word Arrays, creating, 116
- skip value, for equidistant letter  
sequences (ELSes), 162
- Smalltalk, 2–3, 265–266
  - as Ruby ancestor, 99



- softwrap method, 60
- softwrap.rb script, 59–62
- sort method (Array), 5*n*, 85, 103
- sort method (Hash), 150
- sort\_by method (Array), 27, 145, 175
- sort\_by\_tag\_count method (Hash), 150
- sorting, <=> method of Comparable
  - and, 145
- sound file player, 25–31
- source, installing Rails from, 228
- spaces, converting repeated to
  - single, 59
- spell checker, and DocBook, 154
- split method (String), 17–18, 47
- square brackets ([])
  - as alternative to Proc.call, 110
  - for Array, 5–6
- standard error, special message
  - for, 165
- static typing in C, 262
- Steele, Guy, 263
- String class
  - cv method, 84
  - downcase method, 47
  - gsub method, 54–55
  - gsub! method, 53
  - mutate method, 173
  - mutate\_char method, 173
  - mutate\_until\_matches! method, 173, 175
  - num\_matches method, 64
  - propagate method, 173–174
  - report\_progress method, 173
  - report\_success method, 173
  - scramble method, 174
  - scramble! method, 174
  - well\_formed\_xml? method, 156–158
- Strings, 2
  - comparing, 145
  - expression value appearing
    - inside, 23
  - instantiating with %, 23, 108–109, 215–216, 219, 239, 245, 248–250
  - multiplying by Integers, 86
  - mutating, 168–182
  - rotating characters in, 68–70
  - testing regular expressions against, 53–54

- strip\_tags method, 155
- strong typing in C, 262
- stubs, 40
- stylesheet2.rcss, 218–221
- stylesheet\_link\_tag method (Rails), 257
- stylesheet.rcss, 215–218
- subexpressions, in regular
  - expression, 56
- subtraction method (Hash), 93
- subtractive approach for Roman
  - numerals, 82
- SUBTRACTIVE\_TO\_ROMAN Hash, 84
- superclasses, 34
- Symbol class, 35
- symbol.rb script, 203–204
- Symbols, as Hash keys, 78
- syntactic sugar, 199

## T

- tag\_count method, 152
- tags in HTML, counting, 148–154
- tail recursion, 121*n*
- temperature\_converter.rb script, 132–137
  - testing, 137–140
- ternary operator, 23–24
- test directory for Rails, 230
- Tester class, defining, 139–140
- testing
  - code coverage, 139
  - code execution speed, 128–132
  - temperature\_converter.rb script, 137–140
- test\_lang.rb script, 201
- test\_temps method (Tester), 139
- Test::Unit library, 137
- Test::Unit::Assertions
  - assert\_instance\_of method, 140
  - assert\_nil method, 140
  - assert\_raise method, 140
  - assert\_respond\_to method, 140
- Test::Unit::TestCase, 139–140
- text manipulation
  - counting words in file, 62–64
  - displaying line numbers, 57–59
  - end-of-line conversion, 51–56
  - extracting from XML, 154–156
  - rotating characters in String, 68–70
  - word histogram, 65–67
  - wrapping lines of text, 59–62

text, Procs for, 112–119  
 Thomas, Dave, *Agile Web Development with Rails*, 227  
 Time class  
   local method, 15  
   new method, 15  
 title\_with\_thumbnail method  
   (AlbumHelper), 247  
 to\_b method (Object), 33, 35  
 to\_i method (String), 5, 15  
 to\_lang.rb script, 193–202  
   representable\_in\_english.rb file, 194–195  
   representable\_in\_spanish.rb file, 195–196  
 Torah Codes, 161  
 to\_roman method (Integer), 81–87  
 to\_s method (Integer), 5  
 true, 6  
   items evaluating to, 7  
 true? method (Object), 35  
 TypeError exception, 4

**U**

underscore ( \_ ), in names, 3  
 United States, notation for numbers, 78  
 units\_converter.rb script, downloading, 132  
 Unix-like operating systems, end-of-line marker, 51  
 Unix, starting irb on, 2  
 :unless Symbol key, 116  
 update\_params\_by\_number\_of\_mutations! method (Meta\_Mutator), 180  
 url\_for method (Rails), 249  
 URLs, opening, 95  
 uses\_cli.rb script, 39–45

**V**

validating XML, 156–158  
 values  
   absence of, 6  
   of Hash, 42  
   returning Procs as, 108–111  
 van Rossum, Guido, 265

variables, 9–10  
   defining, 15–16  
   free, 111  
 version of Ruby, displaying, 10  
 View file, content in, 247  
 -w option, for ruby command, 13

## W

%w for instantiating Arrays, 47, 113, 115  
 W3C (World Wide Web Consortium), 142  
 WAI (Web Accessibility Initiative), 144  
 walk method (RadioPlayer), 187–188  
 Wall, Larry, 264  
 warn method, 165  
 warnings, turning on, 13  
 wc command (Unix), 62  
 Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI), 144  
 web programming  
   CGI for, 206  
   preparation and installation, 206–207  
   Ruby for, 205  
 web resources, 13  
   for Apache webserver, 206, 213  
   Concurrent Versions System (CVS), 188  
   on ELSes, 162  
   HTML, 142  
   on lazy evaluation, 127  
   libraries of software, 224  
   online XML tutorial, 90  
   Rails, 260  
   packaged versions, 228  
   on regular expressions, 55  
   Ruby Extensions Project, 203  
   Ruby Standard Library  
     Documentation site, 140  
   RubyGems, 224  
   XML (eXtensible Markup Language), 87  
   XML::DOM::Builder library, 157  
   YAML (YAML Ain't Markup Language), 87  
 WEBrick, 231  
 webserver, 206

- websites, stylesheets for, 215–221
- `well_formed_xml?` method (File; String), 156–158
- whitespace, 9
  - `\w` in regular expression for, 66
- `willow_and_anya.rb` script, 112–119
- Winamp player, 25
- Windows, starting irb on, 2
- word histogram, 65–67
- `word_count` method, 64
- `word_count_for_file` method, 64
- `word_count.rb` script, 62–64
- words in file, counting, 62–64
- World Wide Web Consortium (W3C), 142
- wrapping lines of text, 59–62

## X

- XHTML (eXtensible HyperText Markup Language), 142
- XML. *See* eXtensible Markup Language (XML)

- XML::Builder project, 255
- XML::DOM::Builder library file, 157
- `xml.instruct!` method, 255
- XMLParserError exception, 158
- `xml_tag_counter.rb` script, 148–154
- `xml_text_extractor.rb` script, 154–156

## Y

- YAML (YAML Ain't Markup Language), 87, 90
  - getting rates from stored file, 96
- YAML.dump, 96
- YAML.load, 97
- `yield_block` method, 117

## Z

- zero, index of, 68
- `zero?` method (Numeric), 22

## **UPDATES**

Visit **<http://www.nostarch.com/ruby.htm>** for updates, errata, and other information.



# A HANDS-ON EXPLORATION OF PROGRAMMING IN RUBY

There may be no better way to learn how to program than by dissecting real, representative examples written in your language of choice. *Ruby by Example* analyzes a series of Ruby scripts, examining how the code works, explaining the concepts it illustrates, and showing how to modify it to suit your needs.

Baird's examples demonstrate key features of the language (such as inheritance, encapsulation, higher-order functions, and recursion), while simultaneously solving difficult problems (such as validating XML, creating a bilingual program, and creating command-line interfaces). Each chapter builds upon the previous, and each key concept is highlighted in the margin to make it easier for you to navigate the book.

You'll learn how to:

- Use the interactive Ruby shell (irb) to learn key features of the language
- Extend Ruby using RubyGems, the Ruby package manager
- Create numerical utilities, as well as utilities that process and analyze HTML/XML

- Implement purely functional and metaprogramming techniques to save time and effort
- Optimize, profile, and test your code to make sure that it not only does its job, but does it well
- Create web applications using Rails

Ruby is the fastest growing programming language today, and for good reason: Its elegant syntax and readable code make for prolific and happy programmers. But it can be difficult to understand and implement without a little help. *Ruby by Example* shows you how to take advantage of Ruby as you explore Ruby's fundamental concepts in action.

## ABOUT THE AUTHOR

Kevin C. Baird received his Ph.D. from the State University of New York at Buffalo. He originally wrote his dissertation in Python but rewrote the project after discovering Ruby, and he hasn't looked back since. He has presented at RubyConf and written articles for *Linux Journal*, *Music & Computers* magazine, and the New Interfaces for Musical Expression conference proceedings.



THE FINEST IN GEEK ENTERTAINMENT™

[www.nostarch.com](http://www.nostarch.com)

RepKover  
"I LAY FLAT."

This book uses RepKover—a durable binding that won't snap shut.

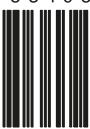
Printed on recycled paper

ISBN: 978-1-59327-148-0



9 781593 271480

5 3 4 9 5



\$34.95 (\$43.95 CDN)



6 89145 71484 5

SHELF IN:  
PROGRAMMING/RUBY